



Presented to The Library of the Hniversity of Toronto by

Dr. John Henderson June 12, 1888











INTRODUCTION.

(For Reference only.)

THE GERMAN ALPHABET.

Characters.	Name.	. Sound.	Observe the dif- ference between
A a	ah .	like a in father; never as in ball, hat, care.	and u.
8 b	bay »	as in Eng., except at end of word or syll., when pron. like p.	B and B; b, h, v and y.
C c	tsay	before ä, e, i, and n, like ts; otherwise like k; in words from French, before e and i, like ss.	© and ©; c and e.
D b	day	as in Eng., except at end of word or syll., when pron. like t.	D and D.
€ t	ay Ł	long, like a in game; short, like e in pen; when final or in unaccented prefixes, like short ă in Louisă.	© and ©; e and c.
3 f	eff:	as in English.	f and f.
€ .g	gay	always hard, before all vowels and before I, m, n, r, like g in give; at end of words and sylls., or before other con- sonants, like Germ. th; in words from French, before e and i, like s in pleasure.	(§ and S.

Characters. N		Name.	Name. Sound.		
ø	ħ	hah	always aspirated before vowels, as in hat; silent before consonants, after t, between vowels, and when final.	b, h, v and	
3	i	ee .	long, like e in he; short, like i in sken.		
3	j	yot \	like y in yet; in words from French, like s in pleasure.		
S.	t 1	kah K		R and R.	
M	m	em		M and M; m and w.	
N		en	as in English.	N and R.	
P		pay	•	15	
۵		koo			
R	r	err	like Eng. r with strong guttural roll; formed by making the tongue convex, and checking the breath by gently pressing the middle of the tongue against the roof of the mouth.	R and R;	
8	Íŝ	ess	before vowels, like z in zone, or s in daisy; before consonants, and when final, like s in yes; but see fth, ft, fp, below. 3 is used at the end of words, otherwise f.	f and f.	

Charac	ters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the dif- ference between
T	t	tay	as in Eng.; th also like t; ti in foreign words, preceding another vowel, like tse.	
u	u.	00	long, like oo in boot; short, like oo in foot.	u and u.
23	b	fow .	like Eng. f in Germ. words; in foreign words, like Eng. v.	B and B;
203	w	vay	like Eng. v, except after st and 3, when pron. like Eng. w.	-
X	ţ	iks	like ks, even when initial.	g and r.
P	ŋ	ypsilon	like the Germ. vowel \mathfrak{i} ; or like \mathfrak{u} .	
3	3	tset	like ts.	

MODIFIED VOWELS (UMLAUTS).

Characters.	Sound,				
Ä (Ne) ä	like the Germ. vowel e. (The forms Me, etc., are replaced by M, etc., in modern orthography.)				
Ö (Oe) ö	about like u in murder; nearly like French eu, but with lips rounded and nearly closed.				
Ü (Ue) ü	nearly like French u; there is no corresponding sound in Eng. Pronounced with lips rounded and pointed, as for whistling.				

DOUBLE VOWELS.

Characters.		Sound.
U a	aa	like long a (a in farm).
E e	ee	" " e (a " care).
Oo	00	" " p (never like Eng. 00).

DIPHTHONGS.

Characters.		Sound.	
Ni	ai		
Ei	ei	like <i>i</i> in f <i>i</i> re.	
Nu	au	like ou in hour.	
Au (Aeu)	äu	h	
Eu ·	eu	like oy in joy.	
	ie	like ie in field (not found at the beginning of words); in the unaccented sylls. of foreign words, i and e are pronounced separately.	

CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

Characters.		Sound.		
Ch	ф	after a, v, u, au, like ch in Scotch loch; softer after ä, e, i, ö, ü, äu, eu; it does not occur at the beginning, except in foreign words, where it is pronounced like k before a, v, u, and like final ch before e, i. In French words it has the sound of th, as in French; ch when in one syll. = x.		

Characters.		Sound.		
	đ	like Eng. ck; when divided between two lines, is written f-t; not found at beginning.		
B f	pf	pronounce both p and f distinctly.		
Ph	ph	as in Eng.; in foreign words only.		
Sá ·	ſģ	like sh in Eng.; but when the & is in a distinct syll., pron. separately.		
Sp	ĺÞ	like soft shp in Eng. at the beginning; otherwise like sp.		
St -	ft	like soft sht in Eng. at the beginning; otherwise like st.		
	ती है	like ss; ß replaces ff after long vowels in the middle of a word, and always when final. Hence Fuß (long u), gen. Fußes; but Fluß (short u), gen. Flußes; and beißen, biß, gesbiffen. Diphthongs are always followed by ß. Not found at the beginning.		
	ţ	like ts. It stands for 33. Not found at the beginning.		

EXAMPLES OF PRONUNCIATION.

SIMPLE VOWELS.

M long: gar, bat, fam; short: falt, Mann, Kamm.

E long : her, ben, bem ; short : Berr, benn, Bett.

In formative sylls. foll. by a consonant shorter still: Fenster, haben, Efel.

In final syll. not foll. by a consonant, like ă in Louisă: Ende, Habe, Gabe. Also in prefixes, as in the first syll. of gehangen, gefallen, Gedanten, befallen, bebenken.

3 long: mir, bir, Mine; short: ftill, mit, bitten.

D long: Ton, loben, holen; short: Tonne, kommen, foll.

u long: Hut, du, Blutes; short: Mutter, bumm, unter.

P long: Dynami't, Bolh'p; short: Myrte, Syste'm.

Double Vowels (all long).

Ma : Saar, Mal, Staat. | Ge : Rlee, leer, Beet.

Oo: Boot, Moos, Loos.

MODIFIED VOWELS (UMLAUTS).

A long : Bar, tame, pragen ; short : hatte, Ramme, fallt.

Ö long : Öl, Töne, Ströme ; short : fonnte, Götter, öffnen.

il long : Bute, für, Ubel; short : Butte, fullen, muffen.

DIPHTHONGS (ALL LONG).

Mi : Mai, Hain, Main.

Gi : mein, heiter, bleiben.

Mu : Saut, Aue, blau.

Au: Saute, Baume, lauten.

Gu: heute, neu, Leute.

Je: bie, hier, tief (in some foreign words, pron. i-e: Familie, Spanien,

Linie).

SIMPLE CONSONANTS.

	ab, Grab, ob.
\mathfrak{e} soft $(=ts)$	Cafar, Ceremonie, Cicero.
\mathfrak{d} final $(=t)$	
$\mathfrak{g} \begin{cases} (= g \text{ in give}) & \dots & \dots \\ (= ch) & \dots & \dots \\ (= zh \text{ in French words}) & \dots \end{cases}$	
ħ mute	
$ \mathbf{j} \begin{cases} (= y) \dots \dots \\ (= zh \text{ in French words}) \dots \end{cases} $	jeber, jemand, Jakob. Zalousie, Zournal.
r	{ rede, murren, Baar, Stern, Grbe, Prediger.
initial and medial (= s in	
	Sonne, dieser, Sattel, Häuser.
\mathfrak{g} final (= s in yes)	
t in foreign words before i	
(=ts)	
$ \begin{cases} \text{in Germ. words} (=f) . \\ \text{in foreign words} (=v) \end{cases} $	von, Bater, Better. November, dividieren, Abvokat.
$\mathbf{w} \left\{ (= \text{Eng. } v) $	wenn, wer, wo, wie. Schwester, schwer, zwei, Zweck.
\mathbf{x} initial $(=ks)$	
$\mathfrak{z} \ (=ts) \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ .$	Bierde, zu, zwanzig, Zorn.

REMARK. — In the above list, only those consonants are given, which differ in pronunciation from their equivalents in English. Below are given also certain consonantal combinations, most of which do not occur in English.

CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

initial (= k) Character, Chor, Christ.
initial $(=k)$ Character, Chor, Christ. " $(=\mathfrak{G})$ guttural) Chiru'rg, Chemie'.
medial and final (guttural) { acht, Loches, hoch, Buch, Blech, bleich, ich, Löcher, Bücher.
in French words $(= sh)$. Charlatan, Chicane. (in same syll. $= x$) . Dahs, Ohs, Lahs.
(in same syll. $= x$) . Dachs, Ochs, Lachs, Achse.
pf
fc (= sh)
ft initial (= sht softened) Stand, stehen, Stengel, Stube.
sp initial (= shp softened) spuren, Spruche, Sporn.
ff (preceding vowel short) muffen, kuffen, laffen, Deffe.
medial (preceding vowellong) größer, stoßen, fraßen.
final (preceding vowel long) Maß, groß, Fuß (gen. Fußes).
final (preceding vowel short) { Faß (gen. Fasses), Noß (gen. Nosses), Fluß (gen. Flusses).

A. GENERAL REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION.

- 1. The acquisition of a correct and pure pronunciation of the vowels is the most important point to be attended to; especially that of the vowel a, which must never have a shade of the sound of the Eng. a in hat, ball, or cane. Look after your vowels, and the consonants will look after themselves.
- 2. The most difficult vowel-sounds are the *Umlauts*, or *modified vowels*, especially **i** and **i**, which must be learned from the teacher.

- 3. The only difficult consonant-sounds are:
 - r, with strong guttural roll.
 - f, initial, and medial before vowels, which is like s in daisy, or z in zone.
 - final = ss in English.
 - **a** (and **g** final), which must be learned from the teacher.
- 4. The pronunciation of the following consonants, though not difficult, differs from the English pronunciation:

b final = p.

e before a, e, i = ts.

b final = t.

g never like g in gesture.

a final see above.

 $\mathbf{i} = y$ in yet.

 $\mathfrak{b} = f$ in Germ. words.

 $\mathbf{w} = v$, except after $\int dt$ and \mathbf{x} .

z = ts.

5. There are no silent letters in German, except h before consonants, after t (see below), and between vowels; thus e is never silent. Hence End-e, Gab-e are dissylls.; and g, t in Gnade, Anabe must be heard.

B. QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

Long: Double vowels and diphthongs are always long. Simple vowels are long before a single consonant; before a consonant preceded by \$\hat{h}\$; when not followed by a consonant; also before and after \$\hat{th}\$.

EXCEPTIONS: Articles, pronouns, prepositions, and other unaccented monosylls., also unaccented prefixes, and inflexional sylls. in e and i, have the vowel short before a single consonant.

SHORT: Vowels followed by a double consonant (but see note 2 below), or by more than one consonant, vowels of unaccented words and prefixes, and of formative and terminal sylls, are short; also most vowels before in.

EXCEPTIONS: Long vowels before several consonants: Abler, eagle; erft, 'first'; Geburt, 'birth'; Herb, 'hearth'; Herbe, 'herd'; Husteu, 'cough'; Rloster, 'convent'; Rrebs, 'crab'; Magh, 'maid'; Moud, 'moon'; nebst, 'besides'; Obst, 'fruit'; Ost, 'east'; Ostern, 'Easter'; Bapst, 'pope'; Bserd, 'horse'; Brobst, 'prebendary'; Schuster, 'shoemaker'; Schwert, 'sword'; stets, 'continually'; tobt, 'dead' (now spelt tot); Trost, 'consolation'; Bogt, 'governor'; Büste, 'desert'; also Stadt, 'town,' which has the vowel short in the sing., lengthens it in the plur. Städte. Long vowels before \$\frac{a}{a}\$: fluchen, 'to curse'; hoch, 'high' (but short in Hochselt, wedding); Schmach, 'disgrace'; Sprache, 'speech.'

Notes.—r. Long radical vowels remain long even before two or more consonants; thus: 10ben, (bu) 10b-ft, (er) 10b-t, ge-10b-t, all with long vowel, according to the quantity of the stem.

2. Before ¶ all vowels are short; before § medial, long; before § final, a, a, u are sometimes long, sometimes short; e and i always short.

3. The vowel a is always long before r.

Exercise in Quantity of Vowels.

(Accent on first syll. of dissylls.)

Haare, Art, essen, loben, lobt, Art, Klee, Bier, thun, dumm, Moos, Nebel, Ofen, Ösen, öde, öster, uett, näht, kann, los, Kahn, Blätter, ähnlich, Liebe, über, dünn, Düne, Loos, dann, Däne, Ohr, geworden, Uhr, Beere, während, mehr, der, das, es, denn, Kern, gerne, munter, Stadt, Städte, Statt, Staat, Bett, Beet, müssen, Füße, Flüsse, hören, hehr, her, Heer, Kämme, käme.

C. ACCENTUATION.

The principal accent is on the *radical* syll. in simple Germ. words, whether primitive or derived.

EXCEPTIONS: -1. Substantives in -ei have the principal accent on the termination.

- 2. The following adjectives are accented on the last syll. but one: lebendig, wahrhaftig, balfamifd, lutherifd; also verbs in -ieren.
- 3. Most foreign substantives which have undergone a change of form are accented on the last syll., unless they end in -e, -el, -er, -or, when they are generally accented on the last syll. but one. Those in -ie are accented on the last syll., except those which, like Famili-e, Tragöbi-e, Romöbi-e, Lini-e, are directly from the Latin, the i-e being pron. separately.

Notes. - 1. With these few exceptions, formative sylls are always unaccented.

2. In compound substantives, adjectives and verbs, the first component generally has the principal accent; in other compounds (prepositions, adverbial conjunctions, etc.), generally the last component.

3. The following prefixes are never accented: be-, er-, emp-, ent-, ge-, ber-, ser-.

Exercises in Accentuation.

1. Simple words: Reinigung, Ehrlichteit, Efel, Finsternis, gütig, sparsam, Sparsamfeit, Heimat, Reichtum, reinlich, Reinlichteit, Tugend, tugendshaft, Arzuei.

2. Compound words: Ausgang, aufstehen, Augenblick, entgehen, Aufenthalt, aufbehalten, Berbieust, Gejelle, Sisenhammer, merkwürdig, heraus, hincingehen, Schwarzwald, daher, anfänglich, Bettelstab, Montag, Mitleid, ausaegangen.

3. Foreign: Student, Professor, Professoren, Melodic, Familie, Instrusment, Altar, Kardinal, Nation, national, Universität, Soldat, marschieren, religiös. Wonument, monumental.

D. ORTHOGRAPHY.

Use of Capitals. The following words are written with capital letters:

- 1. Words beginning a paragraph or sentence (after a period), and the first word of each line in poetry.
- 2. All substantives and words used as such, as: ber Beise, 'the wise man'; bas Sterben, 'dying,' etc.

NOTE. — Substantives used as adverbs are not written with capitals, as: morgens, abends.

3. The personal pronoun and possessive adjective of the third plur, when used in address.

NOTE. — The pronouns of the second person (sing. and plur.) are often written with a capital, and must be so in writing to persons.

4. Ordinal numerals and pronouns in titles, as: Friedrich der Große, 'Frederick the Great'; Karl der Fünfte, 'Charles

the Fifth'; Ihre Majesty'; Seine Durch= laucht, 'His Serene Highness.'

5. Adjectives from names of persons, as: bie Goetheschen Gebichte, 'Goethe's poems.'

Notes. — 1. Adjectives, with the above exceptions, are never written with capitals, as: prensision, 'Prussian'; english,' English.'

2. The numeral cin, 'one,' is sometimes spelt with a capital, to distinguish it from the indef. art. cin, 'a,' 'an.'

E. RECENT CHANGES IN ORTHOGRAPHY.

These changes relate chiefly to the rejection of lengthening h after t, which takes place:

- 1. in derivative sylls.: Königtum, Ungefüm, etc.
- 2. after i medial and final: Atem, Rat, rot, wert, etc.
- 3. before diphthongs : Tier, teuer, Zeil, etc.
- 4. before short vowels: Zurm, etc.

Note.—In the majority of text-books, the pupil will still meet with the old orthography; but in the High School German Reader, and in the present senior author's editions of texts, the is invariably rejected after t.

F. ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

- r. The use of Italics being unknown in German print, an emphasized word is printed with larger spaces between the letters, as: ich habe nur einen Sohn, 'I have but one son.'
- 2. The double vowels never take Umlaut; hence: Boot, plur. Böte.
- 3. The modified vowels as capitals are always written $\ddot{\mathbf{u}}$, $\ddot{\mathbf{D}}$, $\ddot{\mathbf{u}}$, not (as formerly) \mathbf{Ae} , \mathbf{De} , \mathbf{Ue} .

THE GERMAN SCRIPT.

SIMPLE LETTERS.

A a	Jj	PfB
Lb.	D'A	TA
LN	L.l	Win
D'S	Min	N so
6 m	Ol m	M no
Sof	0.0	A E
If of	Pg	My
G.f.	of of	33
Fi	Rin	

UMLAUTS.

Üä Öö Üü

DOUBLE VOWELS.

Aci cica Cu un Oo oo

DIPHTHONGS.

Ai ai bi ni in Air air Air áir bri nir

CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

If if it If if

Of If If If

Observe carefully the Difference between:

A and U; L and L; G and G;

E" B

SMALL LETTERS.

and is a and see; y and y; y and to; m and m

SPECIMEN OF GERMAN SCRIPT.*

I. Lin Duhan in finis Bird find find judy finn. 2. Line Milhan inst ifu Bird finn. 3. Main Beril, whom an fick nin Musham Sunind warm Langua Linfus Offiland. 5. Winfu Sunind fin if I'm Lucia if main Offica Milham, will fin if I'm Milham Linfus Milifum. 6. Whin fin Milham Linfus Milifum. 6. Whin fin Milham Linfus Milifum. 6. Whin find Milham Linfus Milifum. 6. Whin find Milham Linfus Milifum. 6. Whin

^{*} These sentences, with the exception of the last two, are identical with those of Ex. IV., A.

fan Lafann ift millen, ilmen faine Diffelan find fafa hnign. 8. Unfann Deult
ift fafa fifin, when fin ift nisht fafa
ynop. 9. Win fuhun dinfab yninsthign
Pfand was ilmen Innered infan so Orlabo ynlwift. 10. Win mummen din=
fan fifiwagan Doyal ninni Buban.

REMARKS. — 1. Observe the angularity of the small letters.

- 2. Observe the manner in which the letters are joined to each other.
- 3. The strokes connecting the different letters should be made longer than those connecting the different parts of the same letter. This is particularly necessary where several *M*'s or *M*'s follow each other.
- 4. Never omit the hook over \mathcal{W} , which alone distinguishes it from \mathcal{W} .
 - 5. The most difficult letters to make neatly are

R, D, OOL, J, D, OO; n, k, n, n, n, f, f.

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PART FIRST.

LESSON I.

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF haben, to have.

Sing. ich habe, I have
bu haft, thou hast
er hat, he has
fie hat, she has
es hat, it has

Plur. wir haben, we have
ihr habt, ye have

fie haben, they have

hast bu, hast thou hat er, has he hat sie, has she hat es, has it haben wir, have we habt ihr, have ye haben sie, have they

habe ich, have I?

- 2. Rule 1. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person, as: ich habe, I have; er hat, he has; sie haben, they have.
- 2. Words used in a partitive sense, i. e., indicating only a part, not the whole, of anything, have no article before them in German, and the English some or any remains untranslated, as:

Has he (any) bread?
Sat er Brot?

I have (some) gold. Ich habe Gold.

VOCABULARY

bread, Brot meat, Fleisch gold, Gold flour, Mehl milk, Milch silver, Silber water, Wasser wine, Wein and, und or, ober

also, auch
what, was?
but, aber
yes, ja
no, nein
not, nicht

EXERCISE I.

- A. 1. Hat er Brot? 2. Ja, er hat Brot, aber wir haben Fleisch. 3. Haben sie Milch? 4. Nein, aber sie haben Mehl. 5. Hat sie Gold? 6. Sie hat Gold und sie hat auch Silber. 7. Er hat Wasser, aber ich habe Wein.
- B. 1. Have we any bread? 2. No, but she has some bread. 3. Have they any gold or silver? 4. They have some silver. 5. Has he water and wine? 6. He has only wine; he has not water. 7. I have milk and flour, but I have not meat.

ORAL EXERCISE I.

(The pupils will supply the answer to each question, with books closed.)

1. Was hat er? 2. Was haben wir? 3. Was haben sie? 4. Was hat sie?

LESSON II.

USE OF CASES. - DEFINITE ARTICLE.

3. Use of the Cases. — Every declinable word in German has two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*, and in each number four cases, viz.: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative.

The Nominative is the same as the English Nominative, or Subjective, and answers the question who? or what? as: Who (or what) is there? The boy (the book).

The Genitive corresponds to the English Possessive, or Objective with of, and answers to the question whose? of whom? or of what? as: Whose book? The boy's book, the book of the boy.

The *Dative* corresponds to the Indirect Object in English, and answers the question to whom? as: To whom does he give the book? He gives you (dat.) the book, he gives the boy (dat.) the book, he gives it to the boy (dat.).

The Accusative corresponds to the Direct Object in English, and answers the question whom? or what? as: Whom (what) do you see? I see the man (the house).

4. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Singular	·_ T		Plural.
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.		ALL GENDERS.
Nom. ber	bie	bas.	•	bie, the
Gen. des	ber	bes		ber, of the
Dat. bem	ber	bem		ben, (to, for) the
Acc. ben!	die	bas		bie, the

5. RULE 1. The Definite Article, like every determinative word, agrees with its substantive in Gender, Number, and Case, as: ber Mann, 'the man' (masc.); bie Frau, 'the woman' (fem.); bas Rinb, 'the child' (neuter).

2. Articles and other determinative words should be repeated before each substantive in the singular, as: Der Mann und die Frau; ber Lehrer und der Schüler.

VOCABULARY.*

(N. B. Always learn the definite article with each German substantive.)

flower, die Blume horse, das Pferd book, das Buch girl, das Mädchen girls, die Mädchen knife, das Messer knives, die Messer who, wer? only, nur

[•] The article is omitted in the English portions of all Vocabularies, being indeclinable.

EXERCISE IL

- A. 1. Hat sie das Buch ober die Feder? 2. Wir haben das Buch, aber sie hat die Feder. 3. Der Lehrer hat die Messer ber Schüler. 4. Dem Lehrer der Mädchen. 5. Die Schüler haben den Hund, aber sie haben nicht das Pferd. 6. Ich habe den Stock, das Buch und die Feder; aber der Knabe hat nur das Buch und die Keder.
- B. 1. Have we not the book of the mother? 2. We have the book of the mother. 3. Have the pupils the dog and the horse, or have they only the horse? 4. They have the horse, but they have not the dog. 5. Has the mother of the girls the flower? 6. She has not the flower, but she has the book of the girls, and they have the pen. 7. To the mother and to the teacher.

ORAL EXERCISE II.

1. Was hat der Hund? 2. Wer hat den Hund? 3. Wer hat Schüler? 4. Was haben die Lehrer? 5. Was hat das Mädchen? 6. Hat er den Stock?

LESSON III.

Diefer MODEL. - IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF haben, to have.

6. Declension of diefer, this, that.

Singular. Plural. ALL GENDERS. MASC. FEM. NEUTER. Nom. biefer biefe biefes, this biefe, these Gen. diefes biefer biefes, of this biefer, of these biefer biefem, (to, for) this biefen, (to, for) these Dat. biefem Acc. diefen diefe biefes, this biefe, these

In the same way decline jener, that; jeber, ewery; welcher, which?

REMARK. — The accusative of declinable words differs in form from the nominative in the masculine singular only.

7. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF haben, to have.

Sing. ich hatte, I had
bu hattest, thou hadst
er hatte, he had
sie hatte, she had
es hatte, it had

Plur. wir hatten, we had
ibr battet, ve had

fie batten, they had

hatte ich, had I? hattest bu, hadst thou hatte er, had he hatte sie, had she hatte es, had it hatten wir, had we hattet ihr, had ye hatten sie, had they

VOCABULARY.

brother, der Bruder, garden, der Garten gardens, die Gärten bone, der Knochen bones, die Knochen reader, der Leser readers, die Leser man, der Mann son, der Sohn father, der Bater

woman, die Frau sister, die Schwester daughter, die Tochter daughters, die Töchter newspaper, die Zeitung house, das Haus two, zwei three, drei four, vier

EXERCISE III.

- A. 1. Ich hatte diese Zeitung. 2. Dieser Hund hatte Knochen. 3. Dieser Lehrer hat vier Schüler, aber jener Lehrer hat nur drei. 4. Der Bruder dieser Frau hatte jenes Haus, und er hatte auch jene Gärten. 5. Jedes Buch hat Leser. 6. Welches Buch hatten diese Mädchen? 7. Der Schwester und dem Bruder.
- B. 1. Which newspaper had the father of these girls?2. The dog had these bones, but he had not this stick.3. Which stick has this man?4. Which man has this stick?5. This father had three daughters, but that woman had only

two. 6. The son of that woman had this dog and horse. 7. We had the book of those pupils. 8. To the brother of those girls.

ORAL EXERCISE III.

Welches Mädchen hatte die Zeitung?
 Welches Buch hatten die Mädchen?
 Wer hatte das Buch dieser Schüler?
 Welche Feder hatte dieser Knabe?
 Welchen Hund hatte jener Mann?
 Was hat dieser Lehrer?

LESSON IV.

Mein MODEL.—INDEFINITE ARTICLE.—PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF fein, to be.

8. Declension of mein, my.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.		
Dat.	meines meines meinem meinen	meine meiner meiner meine	mein es mein es mein em mein	meiner, my meiner, of my meinen, (to, for) my meine, my		

9. The following words are declined like mein: fein, 'no'; fein, 'his, its'; ihr, 'her, its, their'; unser, 'our.'

The indefinite article ein, eine, ein is also declined in the same way, but has no plural, thus:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	ein	eine	ein
Gen.	eines	einer	eines
Dat.	einem	einer	einem
Acc.	einen .	eine	ein

REMARK. — This model differs from the biefer model only in having no distinctive ending in the nom. sing. masc. and neuter, or in the acc. neuter. Thus, while we say biefer

Mann, but biefes Buch, we say ein (fein, mein, etc.) Mann, and also ein (fein, etc.) Buch.

10. Present and Imperfect Indicative of fcin, to be.

Present. Imperfect. Sing. ich bin. I am ich war, I was bu bift, thou art bu warft, thou wast er ift, he is er war, he was . fie ift, she is fie war, she was es ift, it is es war, it was Plur. wir find, we are - wir waren, we were ihr feid, ve are ibr waret, ye were . fie find, they are fie waren, they were bin ich, am I? etc. mar ich. was I? etc.

11. Time before Place. RULE. — In German sentences, expressions of time always precede those of place, as:

This man was here to-day. Diefer Mann war heute hier.

12. Place of the Negative nint. Rule. — The negative nint precedes that member of the sentence which it negatives. Hence:

Er war gestern nicht bier, he was not here vesterday.

13. Agreement of Pronouns. RULE. — Pronouns agree in gender, number and person with the substantive to which they refer, as:

Der Hut (masc.) ist nicht groß, er ist klein, the hat is not large, it is small; but bie Zeitung (fem.) ist nicht groß, sie ist klein, the newspaper is not large, it is small.

The English pronoun it must therefore be rendered by er when it refers to a masc. substantive, by fic when it refers to a fem., and by es when it refers to a neuter.

14. OBSERVE: In the sentence 'the boy is good,' good is a predicative adjective.

Rule. - Predicative Adjectives are not declined.

15. A substantive following the verb to be is of course subject, not object, and must therefore be put in the nominative, and not in the accusative, as: Er ift ein (not einen) Mann, he is a man.

VOCABULARY.

friend, ber Freund pretty, hübsel gentleman, der Herr cold, falt small, little, tarriage, der Wagen wagon, ber Wagen beautiful, fir carriages, die Wagen strong, stark city, die Stadt idle, träge dress, garment, was Kleid warm, warm windy, windi weather, das Wetter very, very myesterday, great, large, big, tall, groß still, yet, nod

pretty, hübsch cold, falt small, little, flein tired, mübe beautiful, fine, schön strong, starf idle, träge warm, warm windy, windig very, very much, sehr yesterday, ge'stern to-day, heute still, yet, noch (referring to time)

for, benn

EXERCISE IV.

A. 1. Ein Bater und sein Kind sind jett hier. 2. Eine Mutter und ihr Kind waren gestern hier. 3. Mein Bruder hat kein Buch, aber er hat ein Messer. 4. Unser Freund war der Lehrer dieser Schüler. 5. Diese Frau ist meine Schwester, und sie ist auch die Mutter dieser Mädchen. 6. Wir sind klein, aber sie sind groß. 7. Unser Lehrer ist müde, denn seine Schüler waren sehr träge. 8. Unsere Stadt ist sehr schön, aber sie ist nicht sehr groß. 9. Meinem Bater und meiner Mutter.

B. 1. I am the sister of those girls. 2. Where are my books and newspaper? 3. Our brother and his dog are big and strong, but our sister and her bird are small and pretty. 4. Which gentleman was here yesterday? 5. The friend of our brothers was here to-day, but he was not here yesterday. 6. My sister had her book, but she had not her pen. 7. Our father and mother have still their carriage, but they have no horse. 8. The weather was cold and windy, but it is now warm and pleasant. 9. To my brother and sister.

ORAL EXERCISE IV.

1. Wo ist unsere Mutter? 2. Wann war sie hier? 3. Wer war gestern hier? 4. Was ist sein Vater? 5. Wer ist die Mutter dieser Schüler? 6. Wer sind diese Mädchen?

LESSON V.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES: - Maler MODEL. OR -1, -m, -n, -r STEMS.

16. DECLENSION OF ber Maler, the painter.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. ber Maler, the painter Gen. des Malers, the painter's, of the painter Dat. bem Maler, (to, for) the

painter Acc. ben Maler, the painter

bie Maler, the painters ber Maler, the painters', of the painters ben Malern, (to, for) the painters bie Maler, the painters

OBSERVE: The only changes are additional -\$ in the gen. sing., and -n in the dat. pl.

17. In the same way are declined:

- 1. Masc. and neuter substantives ending in -el, -em, -en, -er, and diminutives in -fpen and -lein (these last being always neuter).
- 2. Neuters beginning with Ge- and ending in -e, as: bas Gemälbe, the painting.
- 3. Two feminines: die Mutter, the mother, and die Tochter, the daughter.
 - 4. Der Rase, the cheese.
- (a) But many masculines with a, o, u in the root, the two feminines Mutter and Todyter, and one neuter, bas Moster, 'the convent,' take also Umlaut (modified vowel) in the plural, as:—

Sing. N. D. A. Bruber, G. Brubers; Plur. N. G. A. Brüber, D. Brübern.

- (b) Substantives in -n do not add n in the dat. plur., as: Sing. N. D. A. Mädchen, G. Mädchens; Plur. N. G. D. A. Mädchen.
- (c) In feminine substantives all cases are alike in the sing. Hence, Mutter and Tochter are thus declined:

Sing. N. G. D. A. Mutter; Plur. N. G. A. Mütter, D. Müttern. Sing. N. G. D. A. Tochter; Plur. N. G. A. Töchter, D. Töchtern.

Further examples:

Der Bogel, the bird: Sing. N. D. A. Bogel, G. Bogels; Plur. N. G. A. Bögel, D. Bögeln.

Der Wagen, the carriage: Sing. N. D. A. Bagen, G. Bagens; Plur. N. G. D. A. Bagen.

Das Fenster, the window: Sing. N. D. A. Fenster, G. Fensters; Plur. N. G. A. Fenster, D. Fenstern.

Das Gemälbe, the painting: Sing. N. D. A. Gemälbe, G. Gemälbes; Plur. N. G. A. Gemälbe, D. Gemälben.

Decline with Umlaut: ber Bater, the father; ber Schwager, the brother-in-law; ber Apfel, the apple; ber Garten, the garden; ber Mantel, the cloak.

NOTE. — For a complete list of Substantives of this declension that take Umlaut in the plur., see App. A.

Decline without Umlaut: ber Lehrer, the teacher; ber Schüler, the scholar; ber Abler, the eagle; das Messer, the knife; ber Sommer, the summer; ber Winter, the winter; ber Onkel, the uncle.

NOTE. — The preposition in is contracted with the dat. sing. masc. and neut. of the def. art., when not emphasized, thus: in dem = im; in bem Garten, contr. im Garten; in bem Basser, contr. im Basser.

18. RULE OF CONSTRUCTION. — If the verb is in a simple tense, the predicate adjective comes at the end.

VOCABULARY.

tree, ber Baum
fire, das Feuer
spring, der Frühling
autumn, der Herbst
stove, der Ofen
diligent, industrious, sleißig
poor, arm
hot, heiß
ill, frant
rich, reich

ripe, reif
weak, schwach
satisfied,
contented,
quickly, schnell
not at all, gar nicht
not yet, noch nicht
with, mit (gov. dat.)
in, in (gov. dat.)
whose, wessen

EXERCISE V.

A. 1. Die Bäter biefer Mädchen waren mübe. 2. Es war gestern kalt, aber wir hatten kein Feuer im Ofen. 3. Die Gemälbe bieses Malers sind gar nicht schön. 4. Unsere Gärten sind schön, benn das Wetter ist warm. 5. Die Mutter bieser Schüler war arm. 6. Mit den Flügeln dieser Bögel. 7. Die Schüler

bieses Lehrers waren frank. 8. Die Mäntel meiner Töchter sind alt. 9. Die Gärten in bieser Stadt find fehr schön.

B. 1. The father of this girl was my teacher. 2. Our father and mother are old and weak. 3. The gardens of my brother-in-law are very beautiful, but his carriages are not at all beautiful. 4. My uncle is not at all satisfied with his daughters. 5. These apples are not yet ripe. 6. The teacher of these boys was not very rich. 7. With the wings of this bird. 8. The weather is hot in the summer, but it is cold in the winter. 9. The eagle is a bird.

ORAL EXERCISE V.

1. Wann ist das Wetter kalt? 2. Mit welchen Schülern sind die Lehrer zufrieden? 3. In wessen Haus sind die Brüder dieses Mädchens? 4. Wo waren sie im Herbst? 5. Sind diese Mädchen träge oder fleiszig? 6. Ist die Blume schön?

LESSON VI.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT OF werben, to become. - CON-STRUCTION OF PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

19. Present and Imperfect of werden, to become.

Present Indicative.

Present Subjunctive.

Sing. id werde, I become
bu wirst, thou becomest
er wird, he becomes

Plur. wir werden, we become ihr werden, ye become fie werden, they become

ich werde bu werdest er werde wir werden ihr werden sie werden

fie würden

20

Imperfect Indicative.	Imperfect Subjunctive.
Sing. ich wurde or ward, I became	ich würde
bu wurdest or wardst, thou becar	nest du würdest
er wurde or ward, he became	er würde
Plur. wir wurden, we became	wir würden
ihr wurdet, ye became	ihr würdet

OBSERVE: 1. the persistent e in the subjunctive endings;

2. the Umlaut in the imperfect subjunctive;

fie wurden, they became

3. the second form (warb, etc.) in the singular only of the imperfect indicative.

20. Construction of Principal Sentences. — Place of Verb and Subject.

RULE. — In principal sentences containing a statement, the verb is the second idea in the sentence, as:

SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE
Зф	bin	hier.	Er	ift	frant.
I	am	here.	He	is	ill.

OBSERVE: 1. The verb is the second *idea*, not necessarily the second *word*, in the sentence. Thus the subject with its attributes and enlargements constitutes but one idea, as:

1	2	3
SUBJECT AND ATTRIBUTE.	VERB.	ADVERB.
Der Bater biefes Lehrers	war	hier.

2. The *subject* (or subjects) with attributes and enlargements may come either in the first or in the third place, as:

subject. verb. adverb. adverb. verb. subject.

3. The *predicate adjective* is placed last, when the verb is in a *simple* tense, as:

I am satisfied with my daughters. Ich bin mit meinen Töchtern zufrieben.

Remarks. — τ . Any other member of the sentence may occupy the first place, but in that case the subject is thrown after the verb, which still occupies the second place. Thus:

adv. phrase. verb. subject. predicate. Im Frühling sind die Gärten schön.

2. In English, on the contrary, the subject precedes the verb, which is, in such cases, in the *third* place, as:

ADV. PHRASE. SUBJECT. VERB. PREDICATE. In the spring the gardens are beautiful.

- 3. This fixed position of the verb as the second idea in every German principal sentence should never be forgotten.
- 4. The conjunctions und, aber, oder, benn do not count as members of the sentence.

VOCABULARY.

sleigh, der Schlitten
thunder-storm, das Gewitter
attentive, aufmerksam
green, grün
new, neu
young, jung
inattentive, unaufmerksam
unpleasant,
disagreeable,

dissatisfied, unaufrieden
after, nach (with dat.)
therefore, on that account,
beshalb
never, nie
so, so
why, warum?
again, wieder
well, wob!

EXERCISE VI.

A. 1. Nach bem Gewitter wurde das Wetter schön und warm. 2. Gestern wurden meine Mutter und ihre Schwester krank, aber jetzt sind sie wohl. 3. Sein Vater hat ein Haus und einen Garten und er hat auch Wagen und Schlitten. 4. Das Wetter ward gestern unangenehm und windig; aber es ist heute wieder gang schon und warm. 5. Der Lehrer wird unzufrieden, benn feine Schuler werben unaufmerkfam. 6. Warum wird unfer Bater jest fo fcmach? 7. Er wird fehr alt, und wird beghalb auch schwach. 8. Unsere Mutter ist nicht jung, aber fie ift noch icon. 9. Waren bie Brüber biefer Lehrer in Berlin ober in Samburg? 10. Sie waren in Samburg, aber fie waren nie in Rerlin.

B. 1. The brother of these pupils became our teacher. 2. Teachers often become dissatisfied with their pupils. 3. In the spring our garden becomes beautiful. 4. Our brothersin-law were in Paris; they are now in London. 5. This tree becomes green very quickly. 6. The pupils of this teacher became very attentive. 7. My daughters are not contented with their cloaks. 8. In the autumn (the)* apples become ripe, 9. The father of these girls becomes old and weak. 10. With the feathers of an eagle. 11. We became rich, but he became 12. The eagle is a bird; it is large and strong. The cloaks of those girls were new, but now they are getting (say: become) old.

ORAL EXERCISE VI.

1. Wer ist in dem Schlitten? 2. Wer hat das Messer ihres Onkels? 3. Wann waren seine Brüder in Hamburg? 4. Wann werden die Äpfel reif? 5. Wird der Baum im Sommer grün? 6. Wann wird das Wetter kalt?

^{*} Words in () are omitted in English, but not in German; words in [] are omitted in German, but not in English.

LESSON VII.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES: - Cohn MODEL. -

(a) With Umlaut in the plural:

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. ber Sohn, the son die Sohne, the sons

Gen. bes Sohn(e)s, the son's, ber Söhne, the sons', of the

Dat. dem Sohn(e), (to, for) den Söhnen, (to, for) the sons

Acc. ben Sohn, the son bie Sohne, the sons

OBSERVE: 1. The -cs of the gen., and -c of dat. sing.

- 2. The Umlaut and -e of the plur.
- 3. The additional -n of the dat. plur.
- 4. The -t may be dropped in the dat. sing., and (except after sibilants) in the gen sing., but is usually retained in monosyllables.
 - (b) Without Umlaut:

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. ber hund, the dog bie hunde, the dogs

Gen. bes Hund(r)s, the dog's, ber Hunde, the dogs', of the of the dog

Dat. bem hunb(e), to the dog ben hunden, (to, for) the dogs

Acc. ben hund, the dog bie hunde, the dogs

22. In this way are declined:

r. Most masculine monosyllables: generally add Umlaut (see App. B.)

- 2. Masculines in -at, -id, -ig, -ing, -ling: never add Umlaut.
- 3. Many feminine monosyllables with a, u, or au in the root: always add Umlaut (for list, see App. C.)
 - 4. Substantives in -nis and -fal: never add Umlaut.
- 5. Many neuter monosyllables (all those in -r): never add Umlaut, except Flog, Chor, Boot (Böte or Boote) App. E.
- 6. Foreign masculines, with accent on last syll., in -a1, -an, -ar: generally without Umlaut; in -ast, with Umlaut; in -icr, -on, -or, and foreign neuters in -at: never with Umlaut (for exceptions, see App. D.)

Further examples:

Die hand, the hand: Sing. N.G.D.A. Hand; Plur. N.G.A banbe, D. Handen.

(Observe again: Feminines have all cases of the sing. alike.)

Das Begräbnis, the burial, funeral: Sing. N. A. Begräbnis, G. Begräbnisses, D. Begräbnisses, Plur. N. G. A. Begräbnisse, D. Begräbnissen.

(Observe the doubling of the final -# when a termination is added.)

Der Monat, the month: Sing. N. A. Monat, G. Monat(e)\$, D. Monat(e); Plur. N. G. A. Monate, D. Monaten.

Das Jahr, the year: Sing. N. A. Jahr, G. Jahr(e)s, D. Jahr(e); Plur. N. G. A. Jahre, D. Jahren.

Der Apfelbaum, the apple-tree: Sing. N.A. Apfelbaum, G. Apfelbaum(e)8, D. Apfelbaum(e); Plur. N.G. A. Apfelbaume, D. Apfelbaumen.

(Observe that in compounds only the last component is varied, and is declined as when standing alone).

23. CONSTRUCTION OF DIRECT QUESTIONS.

Examples:

1. Has the dog meat? 2. Which man is old? Has ber Hund Fleisch? Welcher Mann ist alt?

- 1 9
 - 2 1 2
- 3. Who is in the garden? 5. What has the teacher? Wer ist in dem Garten? Was hat der Lehrer?
 - 1 2 8 1 2 8
- 4. Where is my father? 6. When was the pupil here? Bo ist mein Bater? Bann war ber Schüler hier?

OBSERVE from these examples:

- r. That the construction of Direct Interrogative Sentences is exactly the same in German as in English, as far as the position of Verb and Subject is concerned.
- 2. That in both languages the question-word always begins the sentence.

VOCABULARY.

(An Asterisk (*) after a word signifies that the plural has Umlaut.)

Tuesday, Diens'tag enemy, ber Feind finger, ber Finger Friday, Frei'tag foot, ber Fuß * general, ber Beneral' young man, youth, ber Süng'ling thirty, breißig emperor, ber Raifer acquirements, die Renntnisse king, ber König Wednesday, ber Mitt'woch Monday, ber Mon'tag officer (military) ber Offizier' town, city, bie Stadt * Sunday, ber Sonn'tag Saturday, { ber Sonn'abend, or Sams'tag

marsh, swamp, der Sumpf *
day, der Tag
carpet, der Teppich
curtain, der Bor'hang *
week, die Boche
room, das Zimmer
thirty, dreißig
five, fünf
long, lang
new, neu
magnificent, prächtig
red, rot
seven, sieben
white, weiß
where, wo?
twelve, zwölf

EXERCISE VII.

- A. 1. Ein Jahr hat zwölf Monate und in jedem Monat sind breißig Tage. 2. Die Hände dieser Mädchen sind klein. 3. Die Gärten in diesen Städten wurden im Frühling schön. 4. Die Tage sind im Sommer lang, aber im Winter werden sie kurz und kalt. 5. Die Mutter meines Freundes war gestern in der Stadt. 6. Die Kenntnisse des Lehrers sind groß. 7. Die Borhänge dieses Zimmers sind weiß, aber die Teppiche sind rot. 8. Die Schwäger dieser Offiziere sind Generale.
- B. 1. The horses and dogs of this young man are handsome. 2. We have two feet and two hands, and each hand has five fingers. 3. The emperor and the king were enemies, but now they are friends. 4. These trees are old, but they are still beautiful. 5. The curtains and carpets in this room are new and magnificent. 6. Every week has seven days: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday. 7. The sons are tall, but the father is not quite so tall. 8. The funeral of the king was magnificent. 9. My father has two apple-trees in his garden. 10. Where are the frogs? In the spring they are in the marshes.

ORAL EXERCISE VII.

1. Wo waren die Brüder seiner Mutter gestern? 2. Sind die Vorhänge weisz oder rot? 3. Was hat sein Vater im Garten? 4. Wer war. gestern in der Stadt? 5. Wessen Schwäger sind Offiziere? 6. Welche sind die Tage der Woche?

LESSON VIII.

CONJUGATION OF haben, to have. — PLACE OF PARTICIPLE AND INFINITIVE.

24. PARADIGM OF haben, to have.

Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. haben IMPF. INDIC. hatte PAST PART. gehabt

Indicative.

PRESENT.

ich habe, I have
bu hast, thou hast
er hat, he has
wir haben, we have
ihr habt, ye have
sie haben, they have
sie haben, they have
sie haben

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

ich habe, I (may) have, etc.
bu habet
er habe
sir haben
ich haben
sie haben

IMPERFECT.

ich hatte, I had ich hätte, I had (might have), bu hattest, thou hadst er hatte, he had ich hättest wir hatten, we had ihr hattet, ye had sie hatten, they had is hätten

PERFECT.

(Pres. of haben + P. Part.)

I have had, etc. I (may) have had, etc. ich habe ich habe du haft du habest er hat er habe gehabt gehabt wir haben wir haben ihr habt ihr habet fie haben fie haben

Indicative. Subjunctive. PLUPERFECT. (Imperf. of haben + P. Part.) I had had, etc. I had (might have) had, etc. ich hatte ich hätte du battest bu hättest er hatte er hätte achabt gehabt wir hatten wir bätten ihr hattet ihr hättet sie batten fie hätten FUTURE. (Pres. of merhen + Infin. of haben.) I shall have, etc. I shall have, etc. ich werbe ich werbe du wirft du werbest er mirb er werbe haben haben wir werben mirmerben ihr werdet ihr merbet fie werden sie werden FUTURE PERFECT. (Future of haben + P. Part.) I shall have had, etc. I shall have had, etc. ich werbe ich werde du wirft du werdest er wird er merbe gehabt haben gehabt haben wir werben wir werben ihr werdet ihr werbet fie werben sie werben Conditional. SIMPLE. COMPOUND. (Impf. Subj. of werden + Infin. (Simple Cond. of haben + Past of haben.) Part.) I should have, etc. I should have had, etc. ich würde ich würde gehabt haben baben bu würbeft bu würdeft

Conditional.

er würde wir würden ihr würden ihr würden ihr würden le würden le

habe (du), have (thou) habt (ihr), have (ye) (zu) haben, (to) have gchabt (zu) haben, (to) have had

Participles.

PRES. habend, having

Past. gehabt, had.

25. Use of Auxiliaries of Tense. — 1. Some forms the perfect tenses of all transitive and most intransitive verbs precisely as above.

In any verb not conjugated with sein (see 4, below):

The Present of haben + P. Part. of any verb form the Perfect of that verb.

The Imperfect of haben + P. Part. of any verb form the Pluperfect of that verb.

2. Merben forms the Future and Simple Conditional thus:

The Present of werden + Infin. of any verb form the Future.

The Imperf. Subj. of werben + Infin. of any verb form the Simple Conditional.

3. The Future of haben + P. Part. of any verb (not conjugated with sein) form the Future Perfect.

The Simple Conditional of haben + P. Part. of any verb (not conjugated with sein) form the Compound Conditional.

4. Sein replaces haben in the Perfect Tenses of many Intransitive Verbs. (See § 53.) Compare the English 'He is come.'

26. CONSTRUCTION OF COMPOUND TENSES. — PLACE OF PARTICIPLE AND INFINITIVE.

Rule of Construction. — In every principal sentence the Participle and Infinitive come at the end; but if both be present, the Participle precedes the Infinitive, which is always last, as:

SUBJECT. VERB. PART. OBJECT. (Engl.) My teacher has had money. SUBJECT. VERB. OBJECT. (Germ.) Mein Lehrer hat Gelb aebabt. SUBJECT. VERB. ' INFIN. OBJECT. (Engl.) We shall have a storm. SUBJECT. VERB. OBJECT. INFIN. (Germ.) Bir werben einen Sturm haben.

SUBJECT. VERB. INFIN. PART. OBJECT. (Engl.) The beggars would have had no shoes:

subject. verb. object. part. infin. (Germ.) Die Bettler würden keine Schuhe gehabt haben.

REMEMBER: In compound tenses, the auxiliary is the verb, and occupies the second place in a principal sentence (see § 20, Rule 1, above).

VOCABULARY.

evening, der A'bend
beggar, der Bettler die koulle
holiday, der Fei'ertag
fish, der Fisch
fruit, die Frucht * die Friche
fox, der Fuchs * die Friche
money, das Gel
guest, der Gast
harbour, der Harb
glove, der Hand
basket, der Kort
nut, die Nuß *

money, das Gelb guest, der Gast* die Kasti harbour, der Hafene glove, der Hand'schuh basket, der Korb* die Kaste to be right, Recht haben
sailing-ship, das Se'gelschiff
chair, der Stuhl* du Artike
storm, der Sturm* bad, schlecht
stocking, der Strumps*
shoe, der Schuh
table, der Tisch
animal, das Tier
to be wrong, Un'recht haben
pleasure, das Vergnügen
wolf. der Wolf **
when, wann
wolf, der Wolf **
when, wann

out of, auß (gov. dat.)
to become of, auß... werben
poor, arm
bad, schlecht
to-morrow, morgen
the day after to-morrow, ü'ber=
morgen
much, viel
already, schon
when, wann?

EXERCISE VIII.

- A. 1. 3ch habe viel Geld gehabt, aber jest bin ich arm. 2. Die Früchte werben im Berbft reif. 3. Wird ber Rnabe einen Tifch und Stühle in feinem Zimmer haben.? 4. Ihre Sandichuhe wurden schlecht, benn fie waren schon alt. 5. Es ift angenehm, Freunde zu haben. 6. Bas murbe aus bem Sohne bes Lehrers? Er wurde auch Lehrer. 7. Ich werde Feinde und auch Freunde haben. 8. Die Gafte in unferer Stadt murben mube, benn bas Wetter war fehr heiß. 9. Werden wir Teppiche und Borhange in unferm Rimmer haben? 10. Er batte Freunde gehabt. 11. Gie werben in biefem Sahre viel Bergnügen gehabt haben. 12. Die Sohne bes Rönigs haben Pferbe und Wagen, aber bie Töchter bes Bettlers haben feine Schuhe und feine Strumpfe. 13. Wir hatten Recht gehabt, aber er hatte Unrecht gehabt. 14. Mit meinen Freunden habe ich viel Beranugen gehabt. 15. Unfere Freunde werben geftern viel Bergnügen gehabt haben, benn bas Wetter war schön und warm.
- B. 1. The sailing-ships are in the harbour. 2. We had thirty fishes in our baskets. 3. He would have friends. 4. The evening was fine, but the weather became cold. 5. We have had two storms. 6. Where are our guests? They became tired and are now in the garden. 7. To-morrow we shall have

a holiday, for it is Saturday. 8. We were in the garden yesterday, and the trees are already green. 9. What has he had? He has had apples and nuts. 10. Dogs, wolves, and foxes are animals.

ORAL EXERCISE VIII.

1. Wer hatte Recht und wer hatte Unrecht? 2. Wann werden wir einen Feiertag haben? 3. Wo sind die Segelschiffe? 4. Wessen Söhne haben Wagen und Pferde? 5. Warum wurden die Gäste müde? 6. Welche Gemälde sind schön?

LESSON IX.

WEAK CONJUGATION: Inter. - DEPENDENT SENTENCES. - PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

- 27. The stem of a verb is what is left when the termination of the Present Infinitive (-en or -n) is dropped, as: hab-en, stem hab; lob-en, stem lob.
- 28. The Principal Parts of a verb are the Present Infinitive, Imperfect Indicative, and Past Participle.
- 29. Any verb, when these principal parts are given, may be conjugated throughout, by using the auxiliaries, precisely as in the paradigm of haben in Less. VIII.
- 30. Weak verbs are those which form the Imperfect by adding -te, and the Past Participle by prefixing ge- and adding -t to the stem, as: lob-en, to praise (stem lob), Imperfect lob-te, P. Part. ge-lob-t; tabel-n, to blame (stem tabel), Imperf. tabel-te, P. Part. ge-tabel-t.

NOTE. - Weak verbs are also called Regular or Modern.

31. PARADIGM OF loben, to praise.

Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. loben IMPF. INDIC. lobte PAST PART. gelobt

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

ich lobe, I praise (am praising, ich lobe, I (may) praise do praise)

bu lob(c)ft, thou praisest, etc. er lob(e)t, he praises wir loben, we praise ihr lob(e)t, ye praise

fie loben, they praise

bu lobest, thou (mayest) praise er lobe, he (may) praise wir loben, we (may) praise ihr lobet, ye (may) praise fie loben, they (may) praise

IMPERFECT.

(Same form for both moods.)

id lobte, I praised (was praising, etc.) bu lobicit, thou praisedst er lobte, he praised wir lobten, we praised ihr lobtet, ve praised fie lobten, they praised

PERFECT.

(Pres. of haben + P. Part of loben.)

ich habe gelobt, I have praised (been

ich habe gelobt

praising) bu hast gelobt, thou hast praised, etc.

bu habest gelobt, 2c.

PLUPERFECT.

(Imperf. of haben - P. Part. loben.)

ich hatte geloht, I had praised (been ich hätte geloht, 2c. praising), etc.

FUTURE.

(Present of werden + Infin. of loben.)

ich werde loben. I shall praise (be

ich werde loben

praising)

bu wirst loben, thou wilt praise, etc.

bu werdest loben, 2c.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

FUTURE PERFECT.

(Future of haben + P. Part. of loben.)

ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have ich werde gelobt haben praised.

bu wirst gelobt haben, thou wilt have bu werbest gelobt praised, etc. haben, 2c.

Conditional.

SIMPLE.

(Impf. Subj. of werben + Infin. of lohen.)

ich würde Inben. I should praise(be praising) etc.

Imperative.

lobe (bu), praise (thou) lobe er, let him praise loben wir, let us praise lobt (ibr), praise (ye) loben fie, let them praise

COMPOUND. (Simple Cond. of haben + P. Part.

of loben.)

ich würde geloht haben, I should have praised, etc.

Infinitive.

(zu) loben, (to) praise. gelobt (zu) haben, (to) have praised

Participles ()

Pres. lobent, praising Past. gelobt, praised

REMARKS. - 1. e is sometimes found in the terminations of the following parts: Pres. Ind. bu lob(e)ft, er lob(e)t, ihr lob(e)t; Impf. (Ind. and Subj.) id (ob(e)te, etc.; P. Part. gelob(e)t, etc.; and is always retained in certain verbs. (See § 35, Rem. 2, below.)

- 2. Note again the persistent c of the Pres. Subj.
- 3. English periphrastic forms of the verb are to be avoided in German; thus:

I praise I am praising ich lobe I do praise

(praise I?) am I praising? { lobe id; ? do I praise? (he praised not)
he was not praising he did not praise

er lobte (praised he not?)
was he not praising?
did he not praise?

lobte er
nicht?

I have been praising, etc., ich habe gelobt, etc. Had I been praising? hatte ich gelobt?

4. The only true Imperative forms are those of the 2. sing. and 2. plur., lobe, lobt. For the other persons, the pres. subj. is used, as: lobe er, let him praise; loben wir, let us praise; loben fie, let them praise;—the verb preceding the pronoun.

CONSTRUCTION OF DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

32. The Verb in a Dependent Sentence comes last, as:
3th glaube, daß er Geld hat,
I believe that he has money.

REMEMBER: that the auxiliary is the verb in compound tenses.

33. In compound tenses the Participle and Infinitive immediately precede the verb; if both be present, the Participle precedes, as in principal sentences, thus:

Ich glaube, daß er Geld gehabt hat,
I believe, that he has had money.
Ich glaube, daß er Geld haben wird,
I believe that he will have money.
Ich glaube, daß er Geld gehabt haben wird,
I believe that he will have had money.

NOTE.—The place of the Subject, in a Dependent Sentence, is usually the same as in English.

34. Prepositions governing the Accusative only.

Bis, burch, für, gegen, ohne, um, wiber.

bis, (1) till, until (time), as: I shall not come until tomorrow (bis morgen).

- (2) up to, as far as (place), as: He travelled with us as far as (bis) Montreal.
- burd, through; as: He rode through the forest (burd) ben Wald).
- für, for; as: That is for my friend (für meinen Freund); the scissors are not a toy for children (für Rinder).
- gegen, towards, against (not necessarily denoting hostility), as: The enemy advanced towards (or against) the bridge (gegen bie Brüde).
- shne, without; as: We cannot travel without money (shne Geld).
- um, (1) around, about; as: We drove around the town (um die Stadt).
 - (2) at, about (time), as: He came at four o'clock (um vier Uhr); it happened at (or about)
 Christmas (um Beihnachten).
- wider, against (opposition, hostility), as: He swam against the stream (wider ben Strom); the soldiers were fighting against the enemy (wider ben Feind).

REMARK. — Durch, für, and um are generally contracted with the Neuter of the unemphasized Definite Article, thus:

burch das = burchs (durch's) für das = fürs (für's) um das = ums (um's)

VOCABULARY.

believe, glauben hope, hoffen buy, faufen laugh, lachen live, leben learn, lernen love, lieben make, do, machen say, sagen send, schicken play, spielen sell, verkausen weep, cry, weinen
bishop, ber Bi'schof *
German, Deutsch
servant, ber Diener
industry, diligence, ber Fleiß
young lady, Miss, das Fräulein
cardinal, ber Karbinal
noise, ber Lärm
Latin, das Latein
palace, ber Pala'st*
pope, ber Papst*

place, square, der Plat *ring, der Aing
walk, der Spazier'gang *
time, die Zeit
good, kind, gut
merry, merrily, lustig
sad, traurig
that (conj.), daß
because, weil
if, wenn
why, warum'?

Idiom: to take a walk, einen Spagiergang machen.

Note. - A past tense after wenn ('if') is put in the subj. mood.

EXERCISE IX.

- A. 1. Die Rardinale und Bischöfe waren gestern im Palaste bes Papstes. 2. Das Fräulein wird diese Ringe kaufen, denn sie sind schön. 3. Der Maler würde dieses Gemälde nicht verkausen. 4. Ich würde diesen Ring kausen, wenn ich reich wäre. 5. Hat er es geglaubt? Er hat es geglaubt, weil sein Later es gesagt hat. 6. Die Schüler haben viel Lärm gemacht. 7. Wir loben den Jüngling, weil er sleißig ist. 8. Der König wird seine Generale gegen den Feind schiefen. 9. Meine Schwester wird Handschuhe fausen, denn ihre Handschuhe sind schwester wird Handschuhe sinen Spaziergang durch die Stadt machen, wenn das Wetter schwen wäre. 11. Sie würden auch einen Spaziergang gemacht haben, wenn sie Zeit gehabt hätten. 12. Sie wird sagen, daß ich Recht habe. 13. Ich habe immer gehosst, daß er lernen würde. 14. Sie liebt ihren Bater und ihre Mutter, denn sie sind gut. 15. Er würde das Gemälde nicht gelobt haben, denn es war nicht schön.
- B. 1. What were they doing yesterday? They were playing in the garden. 2. This gentleman will praise his servants, for they are industrious. 3. We have taken a walk about

the town. 4. The squares in those cities are very fine. 5. Where were the daughters of the officers? They were living in a convent. 6. Without industry we shall not learn much. 7. The boy was playing with the dog. 8. The gentleman has sold his horses and carriages. 9. What are the young ladies doing now? 10. Why was she crying? She was crying because she was sad. 11. They are laughing because they are merry. 12. We shall have learned much in a week. 13. I am laughing because the child is playing so merrily. 14. To-day we are learning German, to-morrow we shall learn Latin. 15. We have bought shoes and stockings for the beggars.

ORAL EXERCISE IX.

Weshalb hat sie gelacht?
 Wer machte so viel Lärm?
 Wo haben die Fräulein einen Spaziergang gemacht?
 Was hat die Frau gekauft?
 Weshalb hat seine Schwester Handschuhe gekauft?
 Was werden wir morgen machen?

LESSON X.

WEAK VERBS (continued). DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:

- Dorf MODEL, OR PLURAL IN -tr.

35. ENDINGS OF WEAK VERBS IN SIMPLE TENSES.

Present.		Imperfect.	Imperative.
Indicative. *	SUBJUNCT.	Ind. and Subj.	Sing. 2. —e
Sing. 1. —€	—е	—(e)te	Plur. 2(e)t
.2. —(e)ft	-eft	-(e)teft	Infinitive.
3. —(e)t	—е	—(e)te	—en
Plur. 1. —en	—en	—(e)ten	Participles.
2. —(e)t	-et	—(e)tet	Pres.—end
3. —en	—en	—(e)ten .	Past. ge-(e)t

REMARKS. - 1. Observe the following endings:

- (a) Final -t of the 3. sing. occurs only in the Pres. Indic.
- (b) The 2. sing. has -it except in the Imperative.
- (c) The 2. plur. has -t throughout.
- 2. Verb-Stems in -b or -t (th), or in -m or -n preceded by another consonant, retain -c throughout after the stem, as:

reden, to speak.

PRES. IND.	IMPERFECT.	Imperative.
Sing. 2. du redest	Sing. 1. id, redete	Plur. 2. redet (ihr)
3. er redet	2. du redetest	
Plur. 2. ihr rebet	etc.	

Thus: arbeiten, to work: ich arbeitete; atmen, to breathe: bu atmest; regnen, to rain: es regnet.

3. Verb-Stems in a sibilant (\$, \$\int, \$, \$, \$) retain -e in the 2. sing. Pres. Ind. and Subj. only, as:

tangen, to dance: bu tangest; reisen, to travel: bu reisest.

4. Verb-Stems in -el and -er drop e of the stem before terminations in -e (i. e. in 1. sing. Pres. Ind., 1. and 3. sing. Pres. Subj., and 2. sing. Imper.), and, except in the Subjunctive, never insert e after 1 or n, as:

tadeln, to blame.

Pres. Ind.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERFECT.
ich table	table	ich tadelte, etc.
du tabelft	tablest	* IMPERATIVE.
er tabelt	table	table
wir tadeln	tablen	tabelt
ihr tadelt	tablet	P. PART.
sie tadeln	tablen	getad el t

5. Foreign verbs in -ieren (-iren) do not take the prefix ge- in the P. Part., as: stud-ieren, to study: P. Part. studiere

(not ge-studiert); bombardieren, to bombard: P. Part. bom=

6. Verbs with the prefixes be-, er-, emp-, ent-, ge-, ber-, ger- also omit the prefix ge- in the P. Part., as: bezahlen, P. Part. bezahlt; verschwenden, verschwendet.

36. Declension of bas Dorf, the village.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. bas Dorf, the village Gen. bes Dorf(e)s, of the

bie Dörfer, the villages ber Dörfer, of the villages

village

Dat. dem Dorf(e), (to, for)

the village

ben Dörfern, (to, for) the villages

Acc. bas Dorf, the village bie Dörfer, the villages

REMARKS.— 1. The Singular is formed precisely as in the

REMARKS.—1. The Singular is formed precisely as in the Sohn model. (See § 21.)

- 2. Observe -er of the Plural, with the additional -n of the Dative.
- 3. All Substantives of this Declension with a, o, u or au in the stem take Umlaut.
 - 37. In this way are declined:
 - 1. Most neuter monosyllables (exceptions in App. E.).
 - 2. Substantives ending in $-i(\mathfrak{h})um$.
 - 3. Five neuters with prefix Ge-, viz.:

bas Gemach, the apartment bas Gemüt, the temper, disposition

bas Gespenst, the spectre bas Gewand, the garment (also Gesicht; see § 64)

das Geschlecht, the sex

4. Two foreign neuters, viz.: das Regiment, the regiment; das Hospital (or Spital), the hospital.

5. The following nine masculines:

ber Bösewicht, the villain
ber Geist, the spirit
ber Gott, the God
ber Leib, the body
ber Mann, the man,
husband (Lat. vir)
ber Kand, the edge, margin
ber Kormund, the guardian
ber Bormund, the forest
ber Wurm, the worm
(also Dorn, Ort; see App.
E.)

Further examples (Sing. like Sohn):

Das Schlös, the castle, palace: Plur. n. g. a. Schlösser, D. Schlössern.

Das Buch, the book: Plur. N. G. A. Bücher, D. Büchern.
Der Mann, the man, husband: Plur. N. G. A. Männer, D.
Männern.

Das Kind, the child: Plur. N.G.A. Kinder, D. Kindern. Das Haus, the house: Plur. N.G.A. Häuser, D. Häusern.

VOCABULARY.

to row, rubern
shake, schütteln
waste, verschwenden
exercise, task, die Aufgabe
leaf, das Blatt
egg, das Ei
possession, property, das
Eigentum
earth, die Erde
gardener, der Gärtner

fowl, das Huhn

child, das Kind
dress, das Kleib
clothes, pl. of Kleib
song, das Lieb
courage, spirit, der Mut
woman, wife, das Beib
yellow, gelb
enough, genug
well (adv.), gut
a long while, lange
too, zu

EXERCISE X.

A. 1. Im Herbst werden die Blätter gelb, denn das Wetter ist kalt. 2. Ich tadle diese Mädchen, weil sie ihre Aufgabe nicht studiert haben. 3. Im Winter studierten die Jünglinge; im

Sommer arbeiteten sie. 4. "Du ruberst nicht schnell genug, mein Bruber," sagte ich. 5. Diese Männer lieben ihre Weiber und Kinder. 6. Der Lehrer sagte, daß die Kinder zu viel Lärm machten. 7. Der König redete mit den Generalen, und lobte den Mut ihrer Regimenter. 8. Die Bormünder dieser Kinder sind Bösewichter, benn sie haben das Eigentum der Kinder verschwendet. 9. Die Bürmer leben in der Erde, aber die Fische leben im Wasser. 10. Bo sind die Sier der Hühner? Sie sind in unseren Körben. 11. Ich werde müde, weil ich gegen den Strom rudre. 12. Der Kaiser hat die Generale getadelt, aber ihre Regimenter hat er gelobt.

B. 1. The general has bombarded the town. 2. The woman was buying books and clothes for her children. 3. The gardener is shaking the apple-tree. 4. The children were learning songs. 5. The boy is industrious; he has studied well. 6. The apartments of the palaces are magnificent. 7. It rained yesterday, but it will not rain to-day. 8. We have rowed a long while against the stream. 9. These men travelled through towns and villages. 10. The hospitals in London are large and fine. 11. The leaves of these trees are large and beautiful. 12. This gentleman would buy my houses, if he had money enough.

ORAL EXERCISE X.

Weshalb werden die Blätter gelb?
 Wessen Regimenter hat der König getadelt?
 Was sagte der Lehrer?
 Wo leben die Würmer?
 Was lernten die Kinder?
 Würde dieser Herr das Haus kaufen?

38.

G. ihrer (ihr), of them

D. ihnen, (to, for)

them

A. fie, them

LESSON XI.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS. Declension of Personal Pronouns.

First Person. Second Person. Sing. N. ich, I bu, thou G. meiner (mein), of me beiner (bein), of thee D. mir, (to, for) me bir, (to, for) thee A. mid, me bich, thee Plur. N. wir, we ihr, ye, you G. unser (unfrer), of us euer (eurer), of you D. uns, (to, for) us euch, (to, for) you A. ung, us euch, you Third Person. Singular. MASC. FEM . NEUTER. REFLEXIVE fie, she (ALL GENDERS). N. er, he es, it G. feiner (fein), ihrer (ihr), feiner (fein, of her of him es), of it D. ihm, (to, for) ihr, (to, for) ihm, (to, for) fith, (to, for) himself, herself, itself him her it fich, himself, herself, A. ihn, him sie, her es, it itself Plural. N. sie, they

REMARKS. — 1. The forms mein, bein, sein, ihr, unster, eurer are poetical or archaic.

FOR

ALL GENDERS

sid, (to, for) them-

fich, themselves

selves

2. The form es of the 3. sing. gen. neuter is only used in certain phrases, as: 3th bin es mude, I am tired of it.

- 3. The gen. and dat. of the 3. sing. neuter do not occur, except when referring to persons (e. g. Mänchen, Fraulein).
- 4. The Pronouns of the 3. sing. must agree in gender with the substantive to which they refer, as:

Hast thou the hat? Hast thou the hat? Hast thou the flower? Hast thou the flower? Bo ift das Mädchen? Where is the girl? Ja, ich habe ihn. Yes, I have it. Nein, ich habe sie nicht. No, I have it not. Es ist im Garten.

She is in the garden.

5. The Pronouns of the 3. person are not used after Prepositions, when referring to inanimate objects, but are replaced by the adverb **ba(r)**, there, before the Preposition, the **r** being inserted if the Preposition begins with a vowel, as:

Bist bu mit diesem Buche zufrieden? Ja, ich bin damit zufrieden. Art thou satisfied with this book? Yes, I am satisfied with it (therewith).

How much did you pay for this hat? I paid two dollars for it, bafür (therefor).

What have you in your purse? I have money in it (barin, therein).

39. IDIOMATIC USES OF cs.

1. Before the verb, representing the real subject, which follows the verb, and with which the verb agrees, as:

Who is it? It is my cousin; it is my cousins:

Ber ift es? Es ift mein Better ; es find meine Bettern.

68 leuchtet die Sonne, the sun shines, i. e., it is the sun that shines.

Es leuchten die Sterne, (it is) the stars (that) shine.

REMARK. — & in this construction is often rendered by 'there' in English, as:

There is a bird in this cage. Es ift ein Bogel in biefem Bauer.

There are three books on this table. Es find brei Bucher auf diesem Tisch.

(See also es giebt, Less. XXXVII.)

2. When the real subject represented by cs is a personal pronoun, with the verb to be, cs follows the verb, which agrees with the real subject in person and number, as:

It is I,	Ich bin es.
	(Du bift es.
It is you,	3hr feid es.
	Gie find es.
It is we,	wir find es.
It is they,	fie find es.
Is it you?	find Sie es?

3. After the verb, representing a predicate or a clause, and corresponding to the English 'one' or 'so,' as:

Is your father a soldier? Yes, he is one (es). We are free, and you shall be so (es) too.

40. Use of Pronouns in Address.

1. Du is used only in addressing persons with whom we are very intimate, or towards whom we use no ceremony; also in addressing the Supreme Being, as:

Where are you, dear friend?

Where are you, dear friend?

Bas machst bu, mein Kind?

What are you doing, my child?

Bir loben Did, o Gott! We praise Thee, o God!

2. 3hr (plur. of bu) is used in addressing a number of persons, each of whom we should address by bu, as:

Bas macht ihr, Kinder? What are you doing, children?

- 3. In all other cases we use for 'you' in German, whether sing or plur., the pronoun of the Third Plural: Sie, Ihrer, Ihren, Sie, distinguished by a capital letter. (See also § 43.)
 - 41. PARADIGM OF loben with Reflexive Pronouns.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

Plur. 1. wir loben uns.

2. ihr lobt euch.

we praise ourselves ye praise yourselves

they praise themselves

3. sie loben sich, the So throughout the verb, as:

PERFECT: Ich habe mich gelobt, bu hast bich gelobt, er hat sich gelobt, etc.

42. REFLEXIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS - felbft.

- 1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons express reflexive action without a special form, as shown by the above paradigm, but those of the Third Person have the form sid.
- 2. These pronouns are also used in the Plural to express reciprocal action, as:

We met each other; they will see each other again. Wir begegneten uns; fie werden sich wiedersehen.

But when, to prevent ambiguity, it is necessary to distinguish reciprocal from reflexive action, we use **einander** as the reciprocal pronoun for all persons, thus:

We love each other (one another), Bir lieben einander.

(Bir lieben uns might mean 'we love ourselves.')

3. To emphasize and strengthen the reflexive pronouns, and give them an exclusive sense, as well as further to distinguish them from reciprocal pronouns, the indeclinable word felbst (or felber) is used, as:

Know yourselves, Erkennet euch felbst. (Erkennet euch might mean 'know one another.')
He has injured himself, Er hat sich selbst beschäbigt.

REMARK. — This word felbst is in apposition to the subject (or object, as the case may be), as:

Der König selbst ist nicht immer glücklich. The king himself is not always happy.

It is also used adverbially (= Eng. 'even '), as

Even the king is not always happy.

Selbst ber König ist nicht immer glüdlich.

VOCABULARY.

behave one's self properly (of children), artig sein meet, begegnen (dat.) visit, besuchen pay, bezahlen have finished (with), fertig sein mit belong (to), gehören (dat.) be ashamed of, sich schmen (gen.)

seat one's self (sit down), sich segen
punish, strasen
work, labour, die Arbeit
parents, die Eltern (no sing.)
patience, die Gedulb
gentleman, master, Mr., der
hat, bonnet, der Hut* [Herr
John, Johann
Charles, Karl

artist, ber Rünftler Mary, Marie uncle, ber D'heim dollar, ber Thaler away, gone, fort here, hier ever, at any time, je, jemals never, nie, niemals

EXERCISE XI.

- A. 1. Sei artig Rarl, bu machft zu viel garm. 2. Jene Manner find febr reich, benn biefe Säufer gehören ihnen. 3. Gehört bas Bferd Ihnen? Nein, es gehört mir nicht, es gehört bem Offigier. 4. Unfer Dheim hat uns Bucher gefauft. 5. Sabt Gebuld, Rinber, ich werbe euch morgen Apfel und Ruffe taufen. 6. Ich werbe morgen einen Spaziergang mit Ihnen machen. 7. Er glaubt, daß ich mir bas Bferd gefauft habe. 8. Morgen werben wir einen Feiertag haben, und wir werben unfre Eltern befuchen. 9. Sch merbe ihr fagen, daß ihre Mutter fort ift. 10. Waren Sie jemals in biefer Rirche? 3ch war nie barin. 11. Karl und Johann begegneten fich geftern im Balbe. 12. Ift Ihr Bater noch frant? Rein, mein Bater ift jest wohl. 13. Marie, liebft bu beine Eltern? Sa, und fie lieben mich auch. 14. Ich wurde einen Spaziergang mit Ihnen machen, wenn ich Zeit hatte. 15. Sat ber Lehrer Marie getabelt? Ja, er hat fie getabelt. 16. Die Schüler loben fich felbft, weil fie ihre Aufgabe fo fchnell gemacht haben. 17. Wir würden uns felbst auch loben, wenn wir unfre Aufgabe gemacht hatten. 18. Er wurde fich schamen, wenn er mit feiner Aufgabe nicht fertig ware. 19. Weshalb loben biefe Runftler einanber? Sie loben einander, weil ihre Gemälde ichon find. 20. Sind Sie mit meiner Arbeit gufrieben? Rein, ich bin nicht bamit gufrieben.
- B. 1. Is the table large? No, it is small. 2. Her father has bought her a ring. 3. Were the fishes in your basket? Yes, they were in it. 4. Who has told it [to] her? 5. John, have you my shoes? No, I have them not. 6. We sit down because we are tired. 7. Even the beggars of this city have shoes and stockings. 8. Who has bought this hat? 9. I bought it myself in the city, and paid four dollars for it. 10.

Charles and his teacher love each other very much. 11. Mother, have you bought me apples or nuts? 12. Mr. A., here is a chair for you; sit down. 13. Has the teacher blamed him? Yes, he had not done his exercise. 14. Do you believe that this milk is good? Yes, it is very good. 15. The teacher is ashamed of her, because she has not finished (with) her work.

ORAL EXERCISE XI.

1. Würden sie einen Spaziergang mit mir machen? 2. Weshalb loben Sie sich so viel? 3. Was sagten Sie mir? 4. Sind Sie mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden? 5. Was werden wir morgen machen? 6. Werden Sie morgen Ihre Eltern besuchen?

LESSON XII.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. - USE OF ARTICLES.

43.

Possessive Adjectives.

First Person.

Sing. mein, my

Plur. unfer, our

Second Person.
bein, thy
euer, your

Third Person.

MASC.

FEM. NEUTER.

ALL GENDERS.

Sing. sein, his (its) ihr, her (its) sein, its Plur. ihr, their Poss. Adj. of Polite Address: 3hr.

REMARKS. — 1. The Possessive Adjectives are the Genitive Cases of the respective Personal Pronouns, declined after the mein Model. (See § 8, above.)

- 2. Unser and euer may drop e of the stem when inflected; or they may drop e of the termination, unless the termination is -e or -er, as: unsere or unsere; unseres, unseres or unseres.
 - 3. Observe the correlatives of the Pronouns of Address:

bu - bein

ihr — euer

Sie- 3hr

Thus we say:

```
bu haft beine Aufgabe gelernt, you have learnt your ihr habt eure " " lesson
```

NOTE. — The last example shows the use of the Pers. Pron. and Poss. Adj. of *Third Plural* as Pronoun of Address.

4. Observe also the correlatives of the Third Person:

```
Referring to subst. masc. sing. fein whether animate

""" fem. "ihr or inanimate

"" neuter " fein

to substs. plur.(all genders) ihr
```

Thus we say:

Der hund hat seinen Knochen verloren (lost) Die Blume " ihre Blätter "

Das Buch " seine " "

5. The possessive adjectives agree in gender with both the possessor and the thing possessed. The termination will depend on the gender (number and case) of the substantive they qualify (the thing possessed); the stem (as above) on the gender of the substantive to which they refer (the possessor).

NOTE.—Feminine diminutives, such as: Mädden, girl, Fräulein, young lady, generally take the possessive adjective referring to them in the feminine, agreeing with the sex rather than the gender, as:

Das Mädchen liebt ihre Mutter. The girl loves her mother.

For Possessive Pronouns, see Less XXIII.

44. Use of the Articles.

The Definite Article is required in German, contrary to English usage, in the following cases:

r. Before all substantives used in the full extent of their signification (i. e. in a general as well as in a particular sense); hence:

(a) Before nouns (sing. or plur.) denoting a whole class, as:

Der Mensch ist sterblich, Man is mortal; Die Bögel haben Rester, Birds have nests.

(b) Before names of materials, abstract nouns, etc., used in their unlimited sense, not partitively, as:

Das Glas ift burchsichtig,
Glass is transparent;
Das Gold ift wertvoller als das Silber,
Gold is more valuable than silver; but:
Gold und Silber habe ich nicht,
Gold and silver I have not (have none of).
Die Not ist die Mutter der Ersindung,
Necessity is the mother of invention;
Die Music is an art; but:
Er studiert Music,
He studies music (limited sense).

Note. - In Proverbs and Enumerations this article is omitted, as:

Not fennt fein Gebot, Necessity knows no law; Musit und Malerei sind schöne Künste, Music and painting are sine arts.

2. Before names of mountains, lakes, seas, rivers, forests, streets, seasons, months and days of the week, as:

Der Besub, Mount Vesuvius. Der Ontario, Lake Ontario. Die Themse, the Thames. Der Spessart, the (forest of) Spessart. Die Friedrichstraße, Frederick Street.

but:

Im Frühling, in spring. Der Januar ist kalt, January is cold. Um Montag, on Monday.

Also before himmel, Erde, hölle, as:

3m himmel, in heaven;

and before places of public resort, as:

Bur Schule gehen, to go to school. Ich war in ber Kirche, I was at church.

3. Before names of countries when not neuter, or when preceded by an adjective, as:

Die Schweiz, Switzerland.

NOTE. — Further information on the article with Proper Names is given in §§ 73, 74, 76.

4. The English *Indefinite* Article is replaced by the *Definite* Article in German when used distributively (= each), as:

Zweimal des Jahres, twice a year. Drei Thaler die Elle, three dollars a yard.

5. The Indefinite Article is omitted before the unqualified predicate after sein.or werden, as:

Er ist (wurde) Solbat, he is (became) a soldier;

Er ist ein tapferer Solbat, he is a brave soldier.

6. (a) The Definite Article replaces the Possessive Adjective when no ambiguity would result as to the possessor, as:

Er stedte die Hand in die Tasche, He put his hand into his pocket; Er schüttelt den Kopf, He shakes his head. Geben Sie mir die Sand, Give me your hand.

(b) With parts of the person, clothing, etc., the **Dative** of the **Personal** Pronoun + Definite Article replace the Possessive Adjective, as:

Ein Stein fiel ihm auf ben Ropf, A stone fell on his head; Ein Nagel hat mir ben Rod zerriffen, A nail has torn my coat.

NOTE. — If the *subject* is the possessor, the *reflexive* pronoun is used, as:

Er hat fich in den Finger geschnitten, He has cut his finger.

VOCABULARY.

to cost, kosten
hurt, wound, verlegen
cry, weep, weinen
draw, zeichnen
doctor, physician, der Arzt *
axe, die Art *
mountain, hill, der Berg
lead-pencil, der Bleistift
iron, das Eisen
window, das Fenster
wing, der Flügel
purse, der Gelbbeutel
hope, die Hoffnung
merchant, der Kausmann
farewell, (das) Lebewohl

master, der Meister
Mont Blanc, der Mont Blanc
music, die Musit'
coat, der Rod *
Schiller-street, die Schillerstraße
tailor, der Schneider
cloth, das Tuch
exercise, practice, die Übung
hot, heiß
light, leicht
dear, teuer
as, when, als
often, oft

EXERCISE XII.

A. 1. Übung macht ben Meister. 2. Die Musik und die Malerei sind Künste. 3. Kinder, habt ihr eure Aufgaben gemacht? Ja, wir haben sie gemacht. 4. Der Mont Blanc ist ein Berg in der Schweiz. 5. Ist dieses Tuch teuer? Ja, es kostet drei Thaler

vie Elle. 6. Die Mutter schieft ihre Kinder zur Schule. 7. Haben Sie Gold in Ihrem Geldbeutel? Ich habe kein Gold, aber ich habe Silber. 8. Was lernt das Mädchen? Sie lernt ihre Aufzgabe. 9. Der Bater schüttelte seinem Sohne die Hand und sagte ihm Lebewohl. 10. Die Flügel der Bögel sind sehr leicht und stark. 11. Hat der Schneider Ihren Rock nach Hause geschickt? 12. Nein, er hat ihn noch nicht geschickt, aber er wird ihn morgen schiefen. 13. Unsere Eltern reisten in Deutschland und in der Schweiz. 14. Im Juli ist das Wetter oft sehr heiß. 15. Das Eisen wird rot, wenn es heiß wird. 16. Glauben Sie, daß ich Recht habe? 17. Karl verletzte sich die Hand, als er mit einer Urt arbeitete. 18. Ich würde Soldat werden, wenn ich alt genug wäre. 19. Wir würden Freunde gehabt haben, wenn wir reich gewesen wären.

B. 1. Gold is yellow, but silver is white. 2. Mary is studying music and painting. 3. Are your parents still living in Frederick-Street? 4. No, they are now living in Schiller-Street. 5. Mont Blanc is a mountain in Switzerland. 6. The girl is crying; she has hurt her hand. 7. Is your father a doctor? No, he is a merchant. 8. Glass is transparent, and we make windows of it. 9. What are you doing with your lead-pencil? Tam drawing a flower with it. 10. The emperor is satisfied with his generals. 11. I blame you, because you are not industrious. 12. What are you drawing now? I am drawing a bird. 13. Why are you crying, my child? 14. The doctor shook his head, for he had no hope. 15. Would you buy a horse, if you were rich? 16. Miss B. has sent her mother a present. 17. The girl will visit her parents.

ORAL EXERCISE XII.

Ist das Gold weisz?
 Weshalb weint das Mädchen?
 Werden Sie sich ein Haus kaufen?
 Sind Sie Soldat?
 Wo wohnen Sie jetzt?
 Was machen Sie mit Ihrem Gelde?

LESSON XIII.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES: PLACE OF OBJECTS, AD-VERBS, etc. — INDIRECT NARRATION. — PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE ONLY.

45. Rules for Position of Objects, Adverbs, etc.

RULE 1. (a) Pronouns first of all, unless governed by a preposition, when they come after all other objects, adverbs, etc.

(b) Adverbs or Adverbial Expressions of Time precede everything except Pronouns without Prepositions, thus:

(Germ.) Id fchickte ihm gestern (diese Woche) einen Brief,

(Engl.) I sent him a letter yesterday (this week); but:

(Germ.) Ich ichidte geftern einen Brief an ihn,

Engl.) I sent a letter to him yesterday:

1 2 3 4 5 . 6

(Germ.) Ich habe es heute meiner Schwester geschickt,

(Engl.) I have sent it to my sister to-day.

Rule 2. Of Nouns, persons (unless governed by prepositions) before things, as:

(Germ.) Ich ichidte gestern meinem Bater einen Brief,

(Engl.) I sent my father a letter yesterday; but:

(Germ.) 3ch fchidte geftern einen Brief an meinen Bater,

(Engl.) I sent a letter to my father yesterday.

RULE 3. Of Pronouns, Personal before all other Pronouns, as:

I have given him that.

RULE 4. Of Personal Pronouns, Direct Object before Indirect Object, as:

(Germ.) Ich habe es ihm gegeben,

(Engl.) I have given it to him.

RULE 5. Adverbs of place, cause and manner follow objects in the order named, as:

(Germ.) Er hat das Buch zu Hause sehr fleißig ftudiert,

(Engl.) He has studied the book very diligently

at home.

REMEMBER: 1. That in compound tenses all these objects, adverbs, etc., come between the auxiliary and the participle or infinitive.

2. That any of these members of a sentence may occupy the *first* place instead of the subject, especially an adverb of time, etc., and that the subject (see § 20, Obs. 2) is then thrown after the verb, as:

Geftern schickte ich ihm einen Brief.

2 3 4 5
Diese Woche schiefte ich einen Brief an ihn.

46. Prepositions governing the Dative only.

Aus, außer, bei, mit, govern the Dative Case.

aus, (1) out of (motion), as: He came out of the house (aus bem Hause).

- (2) of (made of), as: This house is built of wood (aus Solz).
- (3) from (origin), as: He comes from England (aus England); from the town (aus der Stadt).
- (4) from (cause), as: I did it from fear (aus Furcht).
- außer, (1) outside of (rest), as: The table is standing outside of the room (außer bem Zimmer).
 - (2) except, besides, but, as: I had nothing except (besides, but) my stick (außer meinem Stock).
- bei, (1) (near) by, as: The chair stands (near) by the table (bei dem or beim Tische).
 - (2) at (the house, etc., of, = Fr. chez), with, as: He lives at the house of (or: with) his uncle (or: at his uncle's), er wohnt bei seinem Onfel.
 - (3) about (one's person), with, as: I have no money about (with) me (bei mir).
- mit, with, as: He is coming with (along with) his friend (mit seinem Freunde); he struck the dog with a stick (mit einem Stocke).
- nach, (1) after (time, order), as: He arrived after his brother (nach seinem Bruder).
 - (2) to (with names of places), as: He is going to Quebec (nach Quebec); to England (nach England); home-(wards) (nach Hause).
 - (3) according to (often follows its case in this sense), as: This is wrong according to my opinion (nan) meiner Meinung, or meiner Meinung nach).
 - since, as: He has not been here since the war (seit dem Rriege); seit hundert Jahren, for the last hundred years.

- bon, (1) from, as: He has just come from dinner (von dem, vom Mittagsessen).
 - (2) of, as: We were speaking of our mother (bon unserer Mutter).
 - (3) by (with personal agent after the passive voice), as: Children are loved by their parents (von ihren Eltern).
- zu, (1) to (persons), as: He went to his friend, or to his friend's (zu seinem Freunde); he spoke to me (zu mir).
 - (2) to (places, if not proper names; see nach, above), as:

 He was going to the town (zu ber, or zur Stabt).
 - (3) at (with proper names of towns only), as: He lives at Ottawa (zu Ottawa); at home (zu Hause).

REMARKS.— 1. Bei, bon and zu (and sometimes außer) are contracted with the Dative Sing. Masc. and Neuter of the unemphasized Definite Article, thus: bei dem — beim, bon dem — bom, zu dem — zum; zu is also contracted with the Dat. Sing. Fem., thus: zu der — zur.

- 2. The -e of the Dat. Sing. is never used when a preposition (except zu) stands before a substantive without an article, pronoun or adjective preceding, as: aus Holz, of wood; mit Fleiß, on purpose; but nath Hauf, home; zu Haufe, at home.
 - 3. Observe the following:

(Germ.) Der Brief meines Ontels,

(Engl.) The letter of my uncle = My uncle's letter.

(Germ.) Der Brief bon meinem Onfel,

(Engl.) The letter from my uncle.

The English preposition of with a substantive must generally be rendered in German by a Genitive case without a preposition, whenever it can be turned into the English Possessive case, as above; otherwise by won, as:

He was speaking of his mother (von feiner Mutter).

4. Observe also the following:

(Engl.) Show the book to me = Show me the book,

(Germ.) Beigen Sie mir das Buch (Dat. without Preposition). The English preposition to with a substantive must be

The English preposition to with a substantive must be rendered in German by the *Dative without a preposition* whenever the subst. can be turned into the English Indirect Objective, as above; otherwise (generally) by the preposition \mathfrak{gu} , as:

He spoke to me (ju mir).

VOCABULARY.

to answer, antworten honour, ehren show, zeigen picture, das Bild letter, der Brief Germany, Deutschland present, das Geschenk glass, das Glas war, der Krieg

dinner, das Mit'tagsessen journey, die Reise Roman, der Römer aunt, die Tante thankful, grateful, dankbar (gov. dat.) ready, finished, fertig quiet, still, still there, da

Idiom : It is I, 3ch bin es.

EXERCISE XIII.

A. 1. Seit dem Kriege sind meine Schwäger sehr arm. 2. Wir haben uns zwei Häuser in der Stadt gekauft. 3. Wo ist deine Aufgabe? Hier ist sie. 4. Wir machten nach dem Mittagsessen einen Spaziergang mit unseren Gästen. 5. Mein Bater hat mir ein Geschenk geschickt und ich din ihm dafür sehr dankbar. 6. Bist du mit deiner Arbeit fertig? Nein, ich bin noch nicht damit fertig. 7. Wir werden morgen mit Ihnen nach Montreal reisen. 8. Karl lernt seit vier Monaten Deutsch. 9. "Setzt euch und seid still," sagte die Mutter zu ihren Töchtern. 10. Würden Sie viel für diese Bücher bezahlen? Ich würde fünf Thaler dafür bezahlen. 11.

Sind die Mädchen zu Hause? Ja, ihre Mutter schickte sie um fünf Uhr nach Hause. 12. Ehre deinen Bater und deine Mutter. 13. Bei meinem Onkel redeten wir immer viel vom Kriege. 14. Sind Sie es, Herr Schmidt? Ja, ich bin es. 15. Haben Sie in Deutschland viel Bergnügen gehabt? Sie sagen nicht viel von Ihrer Reise. 16. Bei Ihnen haben wir immer viel Bergnügen. 17. Dieser Mann lobt sich zu viel. 18. Meine Tante ist jetzt bei mir; ich werde ihr die Stadt zeigen. 19. Mein Bruder und meine Schwester sind zu Hause. 20. Was würden Sie sür diese Gläser bezahlen? Ich würde nicht viel dafür bezahlen.

B. 1. Here is my uncle's letter. 2. Is he for me or against me? 3. Our servant is from Germany. 4. 'Buy me an apple,' said the child to its mother. 5. Have you sold your horses? 6. The teacher speaks of the gods of the Romans. 7. Charles, you have answered well, sit down. 8. My son always sends me the newspaper from Chicago. 9. My friend showed me his pictures. 10. Buy me this ring; it is magnificent. 11. Who is in the garden? It is she. 12. I believe that Charles has bought himself a hat. 13. Here is the letter from my uncle. 14. I am ashamed of you, because you are not industrious. 15. My father would send me to the city, if I were old enough.

ORAL EXERCISE XIII.

1. Weshalb schämen Sie sich meiner? 2. Ist es Karl oder sein Bruder? 3. Seit wann lernen Sie Deutsch? 4. Wer hat mir diese Zeitung geschickt? 5. Was machte ich nach dem Mittagsessen? 6. Wo hat mein Vater dieses Buch gekauft?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON A.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND PREPOSITIONS.

47. Pronouns in Address.

1. The pronouns **du** and **ihr** are the usual pronouns of address in poetry and the drama, ihr being used for one person or more, as:

Der Becher ist dein, Und diesen Ring noch bestimm' ich dir, The goblet is thine, And this ring too I'll keep for thee.

(Schiller, "Der Taucher.")

Laßt, Bater, genug sein das grausame Spiel. Er hat euch bestauten, was keiner besteht, Und könnt ihr des Herzens Gesüssen nicht zähmen, u. s. w., Enough, father, of this cruel sport. He has ventured for you what none will venture, And if you cannot subdue the desire of your heart, etc. (Ibid.)

2. (Fr and Sin (3. sing.) were formerly regularly used as pronouns of address towards inferiors, with the verb agreeing in 3. sing., and they are often found so used in the classics, being spelt with a capital. Their use may imply contempt; so Faust says to his servant Wagner, who is otherwise addressed as "ihr":

Sei Er fein ichellenlauter Thor,

Don't be a jingling fool. (GOETHE, "Faust.")

- 3. Er and Sie, also ihr, are still used in complimentary address, corresponding to the polite use of Sie (3. plur.), by people of the lower orders.
- 48. The forms meine gleichen, beine gleichen, etc., = 'a person, or persons, like me, you,' etc. (vulg. 'the like of me'), are used as indeclinable substantives, either as object or as predicate, as:

Bir werden feinesgleichen nie wirder feben, We ne'er shall look upon his like again.

Du bift nicht meinesgleichen,

You are not (a person) like me (my equal).

(For the use of desgleichen, dergleichen, see §§ 97, 139.)

49. In addressing persons of rank, the proper title, as: Ifre Gnaden, 'Your Honour'; Eure (abbrev. Ew.) Excellenz, 'Your Excellency'; Eure

Durchlaucht, 'Your Serene Highness'; Eure Majesta, 'Your Majesty,' etc., is used, also without the poss. adj., and with the verb in the plur. It was this plur. use of complimentary titles that gave rise to the use of Sir as the pronoun of polite address. The old forms Ihro, Dero, are now obsolete.

50. Prépositions with Accusative.

- 1. The preposition fonder takes the accusative, but is of rare occurrence.
- 2. Gegen has an obsolete form gen, now used only in certain phrases, as: gen Himmel, heavenwards; gen Norden, northwards, etc.
 - 3. Ohne has a dative in the phrase ohnebem, 'at any rate.'
- 4. Bis may be followed by another preposition, indicating motion or direction to (110d), 311, 011, 011, etc.); if this preposition is one governing dat. or acc., it will always take the accusative when combined with bis, as:

Er ging bis an's Thor, he went as far as the gate.

51. Prepositions with Dative.

The following additional prepositions take the Dative only:

- 1. Binnen, within (of time), as: Binnen zwei Tagen, within two days.
 - 2. Binnen is used of time only; innerhalb (see § ') of space and time.
- 2. Entge'geu Contrary to, as: { Meiner Neigung entgegen (zuwider), 3. Zuwi'der } Contrary to, as: { Contrary to my inclination.
- 4. Gegenüber, opposite (to), follows the case, as:

Dem Thore gegenüber, opposite the gate.

NOTE. — The case is sometimes placed between the two parts of the preposition, as: gegen bem Thore fiber; but this is not to be imitated.

- 5. Gemäß, according to, agreeably to, precedes or follows its case, as: Seinem Bunsche gemäß (or gemäß seinem Bunsche), Agreeably to his desire.
- 6. Gleich, like, precedes or follows its case, as:
 Sie lächelte gleich einem Engel (einem Engel gleich),
 She smiled like an angel.
- 7. Nachft, or } next to (1) of proximity (= neben), as :

Er fak nächst mir (or mir junächst). He sat next to me.

(2) of succession, as:

Rächft bem Leben liebt er die Ehre. Next to life he loves honour.

Note. - Bunachst usually follows its case; nachst is the commoner of the two as preposition, especially in the senses under (2),

8. Rebft 9. Samt together with, along with, as:

Der Berr fam nebft feinem Freunde.

The gentleman came along with his friend.

Der Bater famt feinen Rindern.

The father together with his children.

Note 1. Distinguish nebft, along with, and neben (alongside of, near). 2. Samt is used of objects naturally belonging together, as above.

10. Oh is poetical and obsolete for liber, and denotes:

- (1) above (of position), as: Db bem Altare, above the altar.
- (2) about, concerning, as: Entruftet ob diefem Frevel, indignant about (at) this outrage.

NOTE. - In the latter sense it also takes a genitive.

LESSON XIV.

CONJUGATION OF fein, to be .- DECLENSION OF SUBSTAN-TIVES. - WEAK OR -n STEMS: - Anabe MODEL.

52. PARADIGM OF fein, to be.

Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. fein IMPF. INDIC. mar Past Part. geweien Indicative. Subjunctive.

PRESENT. ich bin. I am ich sei, I (may) be, etc. bu bift, thou art bu feieft er ift, he is er fei wir find, we are wir feien ihr feid, ye are ibr feiet fie find, they are fie feien

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

IMPERFECT.

ich war, I was

ich wäre, (if) I were (might be), etc.

bu warft, thou wast er war, he was wir waren, we were ihr waret, ye were he waren, they were be), etc.
-bu wärest, thou wert
er wäre, he were
wir wären, we were
ihr wäret, ye were
sie wären, they were

PERFECT.

(Pres. of fein + P. Part.)

I have been, etc.	I (may) have been, etc.
ich bin	ich sei
du bist	du seiest
er ift	er sei
wir sind gewesen	wir seien gewesen
ihr feid	ihr seiet
fie find	sie seien

PLUPERFECT.

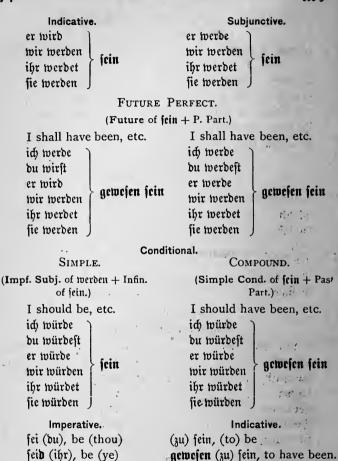
(Imperf. of fein + P. Part.)

I had been	, etc.	I had (mig	ght have) been,
ich war)	ich wäre	[etc.
bu warft		bu wärest	
er war wir waren	gewesen	er wäre wir wären	gewesen
ihr waret		ihr wäret	-
fie waren	1	fie wären	

FUTURE.

(Pres. of werden + Infin. of fein.)

I shall be, etc.	I shall be, etc.
ich werde } sein	ich werde
du wirst	ich werde } jei



Participles.

Pres. seiend, being

Past. geweien, been

REMARKS. — 1. Observe the absence of the Subjunctive -e in the 1. and 3. sing. Pres.

- 2. The above paradigm shows the use of fein in forming its own perfect tenses, in precisely the same way as haben is used with most verbs. Sein is used in the same way with the verbs mentioned in the following Section.
 - 53. Use of fein as Auxiliary of Tense.

Sein replaces haben as auxiliary of the perfect tenses with the following neuter verbs:

(a) With those expressing a change of condition, as:

sterben, die wachsen, grow genesen, recover (from illness) werden, become.

(b) With neuter verbs of motion when a change of place is specified or implied, as:

fahren, drive, go (in a conveyance) fommen, come gehen, go, walk diehen, move, go, proceed.

- (c) Sein, to be; bleiben, to remain; begegnen, to meet; folgen, to follow.
- (d) The impersonal verbs: gelingen, glüden, to succeed; geschehen, to happen.

REMARKS.— r. The proper auxiliary to use with such verbs is always given in the dictionary.

- 2. Other verbs of this sort only take sein when the change of place is specified.
- 3. Most of them (except fommen) take haben when they denote an action merely, and not a specific change of place, as:

Er hat viel gereift, he has travelled a great deal.

4. Compounds do not necessarily take the same auxiliary as the simple verb. Thus, begehen, being transitive, takes haben, the prefix changing the nature of the verb.

Declension of der Anabe, the boy. 54.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	der Knabe, the boy	die Anaben, the boys
Gen.	bes Knaben, the boy's, of	ber Anaben, the boys', of
	the boy	the boys
Dat.	bem Anaben, (to, for) the	ben Knaben, (to, for) the
	boy ·	boys
Acc.	den Anaben, the boy	die Anaben, the boys

OBSERVE: 1. All cases end in -n, except Nom. Sing.

- 2. No Umlaut added in Plural.
- 3. The only change is the addition of -n.

Plural

REMARK. — The Plural ox-en is a remnant of the -n declension in English.

55. Substantives ending in a consonant add -en, as:

	•	
Nom.	ber Graf, the count	die Grafen, the counts
Gen.	des Grafen, of the count	der Grafen, of the counts
Dat.	bem Grafen, (to, for) the	ben Grafen, (to, for) the
	count -	counts
Acc.	ben Grafen, the count	die Grafen, the counts

56. Feminines do not vary in the singular as:

00	· I diministrate as not vary	in the singular, as.
	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	die Blume, the flower	bie Blumen, the flowers
Gen.	ber Blume, of the flower	ber Blumen, of the flowers
Dat.	der Blume, (to, for) the	den Blumen, (to, for) the
	flower	flowers
Acc.	die Blume, the flower	die Blumen, the flowers.

57. In this way are declined:

Singular.

1. All masculines ending in -e, except ber Rafe, cheese (see § 17), and the doubtful ones in § 61.

2. Certain masculines which have dropped the final -e, as:

ber Bar, bear ber Held, hero
ber Bauer, peasant ber Herr, gentleman, master
ber Christ, christian ber Hirt(e), herdsman, shepber Gesell(e), fellow, companion,
journeyman ber Mensch, man (human beber Graf, count ing = Lat. homo)

A full List of these Substantives is given in App. F.

- 3. All feminines, except Mutter, Tochter (§ 17, 3), the monosyllables under § 22, 3, and those in -nis and -al (22, 4).
 - 4. No Neuters (but see §§ 62, 63).
- 5. Foreign Masculines accented on the last syllable, except those in -al, -an, -ar, etc. (§ 22, 6).

Further Examples:

Like Anabe:

	Singular.	٠.	Plural.
	N. ber Bote, messenger	G. D. A. Boten	N. G. D. A. Boten
٠	ber Hafe, hare	Hafen	5afen
	ber Riefe, giant	Riefen	Riefen
	der Russe, Russian	Ruffen	Ruffen

Like Graf:

n. der Bär, bear	G. D. A.	Bären	N. G. D. A.	Bären
ber Fürst, prince		Fürften	00.	Fürften
ber Held, hero		Helden	:	Helden
ber Mensch, man		Menfchen		Menschen
ben Student', student		Studenter	n	Studenten
ber Solbat', soldier		Soldaten	1 =	Goldaten

REMARK 1. Der Herr, gentleman, master, lord, adds -n only in the sing., but -en in plur.

Like Blume :

Singular.

Plural.

N. G. D. A. Blume

Blume N. G. D. Kirche

Schönheit That

Wisseuschaft

N. G. D. A. Blumen

Kirchen

Schönheiten Thaten

Wiffenschaften

REMARK 2. Feminines in -el, -er add -n only in the Plur., as:

Sing. die Feber, pen die Gabel, fork die Schwester, sister

Plur. Federn Gabeln Schwestern

REMARK 3. Feminines in -in double the n in the plur., as:

Sing. die Gräfin, countess Plur. Gräfinnen

VOCABULARY.

admire, bewundern
hasten, eisen
hunt, jagen
dwell, reside, live, wohnen
astrologer, der Aftrolog'
lady, die Dame
influence, der Ein'fluß*
heathen, der Heibe
comet, der Komet'
landscape, die Landschaft

monarch, der Monarch' news, die Nachricht nephew, der Neffe planet, der Planet' Prussian, der Preuße raven, der Rabe valley, das Thal happy, glücklich when, als, wenn when? wann?

58. When = wenn always with Present, Perfect and Future; and also with Imperfect and Pluperfect, of a habitual or repeated occurrence (= whenever), as:

I always rose, when (i. e. whenever, wenn) the sun rose.

When = als with Imperfect and Pluperfect only, of a single, definite occurrence, as:

I rose yesterday, when (als) the sun rose.

When? interrogative = wann? as:

When was your father here? Wann war Ihr Bater hier?

Note. - Remember that wenn also = "if."

59. When a conditional or "if" sentence precedes the principal sentence on which it depends, the principal sentence is usually introduced by the particle jo, which is not to be translated into English, or counted as a member of the sent.

Note. —A principal sentence preceded by a subordinate clause has the subject after the verb, the subord clause being reckoned as a single idea (see § 20), as: Wenn ich Gelb hätte, so würde ich Freunde haben.

EXERCISE XIV.

A. 1. Wir werben morgen zu unserer Tante in Ottawa reisen. 2. Die Boten bes Monarchen find mit ber Nachricht nach Baris geeilt. 3. Die Urme eines Riefen find febr lang und ftart. 4. Die Bäume in diefen Balbern find fehr ichon gewesen, aber jest find die Blätter gelb geworben. 5. Der Bater ift in ber Stadt gewesen und hat seinen Anaben Bücher gekauft. 6. Sch bewundre bie Schönheit biefer Lanbschaften. 7. Die Schüler und ihr Lehrer redeten viel von den Thaten der Selben. 8. Die Schüler werben gludlich fein, wenn sie mit ihrer Arbeit fertig find. 9. Sind die Ruffen Beiben? Rein, fie find Chriften. 10. Mein Neffe mar lange in Berlin gewesen und hatte bort die Wiffenschaften ftubiert. 11. Meine Schwester war mit ihrer Arbeit nicht fertig, als ich geftern bei ihr war. 12. Die Aftrologen redeten viel vom Ginfluß ber Rometen und Planeten. 13. Der Lehrer lobte seine Schüler und fagte ju ihnen : "Ihr feid fleißig gewefen." 14. Wenn ich nach Deutschland reife, werbe ich meine Oheime und meine Tanten befuchen. 15. Die Knaben hatten viel Bergnugen, als fie bie Safen und Rudfe burch Balber und Thaler jagten. 16. Die Gräfinnen waren fehr gludlich, als fie die Nachricht von ihrem Bater hörten. 17. Diese herren werben arm werben, wenn fie ihr

Geld so verschwenden. 18. Unsere Reffen sind lange bei uns gewesen.

B. 1. The castles of the count are magnificent. 2. The churches of this city are large and beautiful. 3. When will your brother be at home? 4. Are these soldiers Prussians? No, they are Russians. 5. The bears live in the forests. 6. The boys have two ravens and three hares. 7. The ladies have been in the church, but they are now at home. 8. Who was right? 9. For a boy of (von) five years he is very large. 10. I should be happy, if I were rich. 11. He has not been at home to-day. 12. When she was in the city she lived at her aunt's. 13. Would the girl be contented, if she were with her mother? 14. The students became tired, because they had studied too much.

ORAL EXERCISE XIV.

1. Was hat Ihr Neffe in Berlin gemacht? 2. Hatte ich Recht? 3. Wer eilte mit der Nachricht nach Paris? 4. Haben Sie jemals Hasen oder Füchse gejagt? 5. Wann wird mein Bruder zu Hause sein? 6. Würde ich glücklich sein, wenn ich reich wäre?

LESSON XV.

MIXED DECLENSION. — DOUBLE PLURALS. — PREPOSITIONS
GOVERNING DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

60. DECLENSION OF der Name, the name.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom. der Name, the name

Gen. des Namens, of the name

Dat. dem Namen, (to, for) the

Acc. ben Namen, the name

die Namen, the names

ber Namen, of the names ben Namen, (to, for) the

names

die Namen, the names

creed

OBSERVE: 1. -e in the Nom. Sing. and -ens in Gen. Sing.

2. -en all other cases.

3. No Umlaut, except in Schade (see below).

NOTE. - The Nom. Sing. sometimes has -n.

61. In this way are declined the following masculines:

ber Buchstabe, letter (of the Alphabet)
ber Friede, peace
ber Funke, spark
ber Glaube, faith, belief,

ber haufe, heap ber Same, seed ber Schabe, harm, injury [pl. Schaben]

ber Gebante, thought, idea

ber Bille, will

Also one neuter: bas Herz, the heart (Acc. Sing. Herz).

62. Some masculine and neuter substantives follow the model of Maler (§ 16) or Sohn (§ 21) in the singular, and that of Anne (§ 54) or Graf (§ 55) in the plural, as:

Der Nachbar, the neighbour: Sing. N. DA. Nachbar, G. Nachbars; Plur. Nachbarn.

Das Ohr, the ear: Sing. N. A. Ohr, G. Ohr(e)s, D. Ohr(e); Plur. Ohren.

63. In this way decline also:

1. Certain masculines, as:

ber Staat, state

ber Better, (male) cousin

ber Strahl, beam, ray

2. Certain neuters, as:

das Auge, eye das Bett, bed

bas Ende, end

(A full List of these substantives will be found in App. G.)

3. Foreign (Latin) masculines in unaccented -or, as: ber Brofessor: G. Brofessor; Plur. Brofessor: ber Dot tor, the doctor: G. Dottors; Plur. Dotto'ren.

64. Substantives with Double Plural.

The following have double forms of the Plural, with a different meaning for each:

Singular.	Plural.
bas Band, ribbon	Bänder
bas Band, tie, bond	Bande
(ber Band, volume	Bände)
bie Bank, bank (commercial)	Banten
bie Bank, bench	Bänke
das Gesicht, face, countenance	Gesichter
das Gesicht, vision	Gesichte
ber Laben, shop	Läden -
ber Laben, shutter	Laben
bas Land, land, country	Länder
bas Land, province	Lande .
San Mant (Börter, words considered	separately
word Borte, words considered	connectedly
(as making sense)	

REMARK. — The plural Lande is also used in poetical language; and in the compound die Niederlande, the Netherlands (= Lower Provinces).

65. Prepositions governing the Dative or Accusative.

The following nine prepositions govern the Dative when they indicate *locality* merely, or answer the question 'where?' or 'in what place?'; the Accusative when they imply *motion*, *direction* or *tendency* (figurative motion) towards, or answer the question 'whither?' or 'to what place or person?':

an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, por and gwifchen.

an, 1. (of place):

(a) With DAT., on, upon (adjacent to), as:

The picture hangs on the wall (an ber Banb).

surface nonhorizontal

- (b) With ACC., to, towards, on, as:

 I hang the picture on the wall (an bic Wanb).
- 2. (of time, date) with DAT. ONLY, on, upon, as:

I was born on the eighteenth of August (am achtzehnten August).

He will arrive on Monday (am Montag).

OBSERVE: that in this use the Prep. and Article are always contracted.

auf, (of place):

(a) With dat., on, upon (on top of), as:

The book lies on the table (auf bem Tijd).

surface horizontal

(b) With ACC., to, towards, on, as:

I lay the book on the table (auf
ben Tisch).

hinter, behind :

- (a) With DAT., as: The dog lies behind the stove (hinter bem Ofen).
- (b) With ACC., as: The dog goes behind the stove (hinter ben Ofen).

in. 1. (of place):

- (a) With DAT., in, as: The gardener is in the garden (im Garten).
- (b) With ACC., into, as: The gardener goes into the garden (in ben Garten).

2. (of time) in (with DAT. ONLY), as: God made the world in seven days (in sieben Tagen).

neben, near, alongside of, by:

- (a) With DAT., as: The chair stands near (by) the table (neben dem Tische).
- (b) With ACC., as: I place the chair near the table (neben den Tisch).

über, 1. (of place) over, above:

- (a) With DAT., as: The bridge is over the river ("there bem Huffe).
- (b) With ACC., as: I go over the river ("ther ben Fluß).
- 2. (of excess) over, above (with ACC. ONLY), as: He remained over (more than) two days (über zwei Tage).
- 3. about, concerning (with ACC. ONLY), as: He spoke with me about his journey ("uber seine Reise).

unter, 1. (of place), under, beneath, below:

- (a) With DAT., as: The cat lies under the chair (unter bem Stuhle).
- (b) With ACC., as: The cat creeps under the chair (unter den Stuhl).
- 2. (of number) among:
- (a) With DAT., as: The wolf is among the sheep (unter ben © chafen).
- (b) With ACC., as: The wolf mingles among the sheep (unter die Schafe).
- vor, 1. (of place) before, in front of:
 - (a) With DAT., as: The chair stands before the window (bor bem Fenster).

- (b) With ACC., as: Place the chair before the window (bors Fenfter).
- 2. (of order) before (with DAT. ONLY), as: He came before me (bor mir).
- 3. (of time) before, ago (with DAT. ONLY), as: He came before two o'clock (por zwei Uhr). He came two hours ago (bor zwei Stunden).

awijmen, between (of two objects):

- (a) With DAT., as: The chair stands between the door and the window (amifden ber Thure und bem Fenfter).
- (b) With ACC., as: Put the chair between the door and the window (amifchen die Thure und bas Fenfter).

REMARK. - Observe the following contractions with the unemphasized Definite Article:

> in bem = im an bem = am an bas = ans in bas = ins auf bas = aufs.

Also the following, which are of less frequent occurrence:

hinter bem - hinterm unter bem = unterm binter bas = binters unter bas = unters über bem = überm por bem = porm über bas = übers por bas - pors

VOCABULARY.

please, lit., (I) beg, (I) pray, lay, legen (ich) bitte put, place. set (down), seten hang (trans.), hängen put, place, set (upright), fetch, bring, get, holen ftellen hear, bören seek, look for, suchen kill, töten hunt, chase, pursue, jagen

wait (for), warten (auf + acc.) strawberry, die Erdbeere fire, das Feuer Netherlands, die Niederlande philosophy, die Philosophie' stove, der Ofen* school, die Schule door, die Thür(e) difference, der Unterschied university, die Universität dictionary, das Wörterbuch

open, offen
heavy, hard, schwer
ten, zehn
thereupon, on it, etc., barauf
first, not before, erst
if you please, gefälligst
no longer (lit., not more),
nicht mehr.
where, two
in order to, um (foll. by infin.
with zu at end of clause)

EXERCISE XV.

A. 1. Jener Mann fette sich gegen meinen Willen auf die Bant. 2. Der Neffe bes Brofeffors war lange Student, aber er ift jest Doktor der Philosophie. 3. Marum haben meine Bettern über (at) mich gelacht? 4. Mein Bater wird uns am Montag ober (am) Dienstag in die Schule ichiden. 5. Der Sohn und bie Tochter unser (e) & Nachbars suchten Blumen und Erdbeeren im Balbe. 6. Mein Bater und meine Mutter find feit brei Bochen auf bem Lande. 7. Die Banken werden erft morgen um gehn Uhr offen fein. 8. Legen Gie gefälligft biefe Banbe neben mich auf die Bank. 9. Der Rönig ber Niederlande reifte burch feine Staaten unter bem Ramen eines Grafen. 10. Der Friede bes Berrn fei mit euch. 11. Der Graf schickte seinen Gohn auf die Universität. 12. Das Kind ist sehr frank und die Mutter hat zwei Dottoren geholt. 13. Weshalb warten Sie fo lange bor ber Thure ? 14. Die Herren jagten ben Baren hinter ben Balb, wo fie ihn toteten. 15. Im Winter feten wir uns oft bor bas Feuer und bewundern die Funten. 16. Unfere Bergen werben immer traurig, wenn wir Nachricht vom Rriege hören. 17. Bas ift ber Unterschied zwischen ben Wörtern Banken und Banke? 18. Die Mugen bes Studenten find fdmad, weil er zu viel ftubiert hat. 19. Seten Sie fich auf biefen Stuhl, benn Sie find mube. 20.

Bitte, stellen Sie mir biefen Stuhl hinter ben Dfen. 21. Die Studenten lernen vom Brofessor die Namen ber Götter ber Römer.

B. 1. The children were playing before the house. 2. What is the name of this professor? His name is Schmidt. 3. Hang the picture of my father over the door. 4. Every human being has two eyes and two ears. 5. Why do the professors praise their students? 6. The professors praise the diligence of their students. 7. The difference between my brother and me is not great. 8. I laid the pens upon the table, but they are no longer there. 9. Our neighbours sent their children into the wood to search for flowers. 10. Our cousin lived happy and in peace with his neighbours. 11. The pupils would look for the words in a dictionary, if they had time. 12. Your eyes are tired, because you have studied too much. 13. These words are hard to learn, for every word has ten letters. 14. Place this chair, if you please, behind the stove for me. 15. If Charles is not ready, we shall go (reifen) without him to Germany.

ORAL EXERCISE XV.

1. Wann wird Ihr Vater Sie auf die Universität schicken?
2. Weshalb hat die Mutter die Doktoren geholt? 3. Was lernten die Studenten von den Professoren? 4. Werden Sie ohne mich nach Chicago reisen? 5. Wo reiste der König der Niederlande? 6. Wann werden die Kirchen offen sein?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON B.

ANOMALIES OF DECLENSION.

66. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT PLURAL.

The following classes of substantives are used in the singular only:

1. Proper names, unless they denote a class (as: die Rasaele, painters like Raphael), or several individuals of the same name (as: die bier ersten heirst four Henries, i. e., kings of that name).

- 2. Names of materials, etc., unless they denote different kinds of the same material (as: Gröfer, Salze, different kinds of grass, salt), or when they have a special meaning (as: Gelber, sums of money; Papiere, documents).
- 3. Abstract Substantives, unless they have a concrete (particular) meaning, as: Tugenden, virtues; Schöuheiten, beauties, etc.

Note. — Many nouns of this sort, when used in a concrete sense, use the plurals of other words, generally compound, as: ber Tod, death; bie Todesfülle, deaths (i. e. cases of death).

A list of these is given in App. H.

For the plural of nouns of measure, etc., see Less. XXX.

67. Substantives without Singular.

The following classes of substantives are used in the plural only:

- 1. Names of certain diseases: Die Blattern, the small-pox; die Masern or Röteln, the measles.
- 2. The following names of festivals, etc.: Beihnachten, Christmas; Fasten, Lent; Ostern, Easter; Pfingsten, Pentecost (Whitsuntide).
- 3. Those plural by meaning, viz.: Alpen, Alps; Beinkleiber, trousers; Briefschaften, documents; Einkünste, income, revenue; Eitern, parents; Ferien, holidays; Gliedmaßen, limbs; Hesen, dregs, yeast; Rosten, Unkosten, expenses; Leute, people; Mosten, curds.
- 68. Irregular Compounds. 1. Substantives having -mann as the last component form the plural:
- (a) Regularly, when denoting male individuals or occupations, as: Ehemänner, husbands; Ehrenmänner, men of honour; Staatsmänner, statesmen.
- (b) By changing -mann into -leute, when used collectively or in a general sense, or to include both sexes, as: Arbeitsleute, working-people; Encleute, married people; Handelsleute, trades-people; Landelsleute, country-people; Landelsleute, people of the same country; Mietsleute, lodgers (male and female).

Notes. — 1. With words of common occurrence, such as Raufmann, merchant, Hofsmann, courtier, the plur. with -leute only is used.

- 2. The form with -leute is the plur. of the fem. compound with -frau (e.g. Chefrau, married woman), as well as of that with -mann.
- 2. Die Ohnmacht, the fainting-fit, and die Bollmacht, the power-of-attorney (from Macht, pl. Mächte), have the pl. -machten; die Antwort, the answer (from das Bort, pl. Borte and Börter), has pl. -en.

- 69. Special Cases. 1. A few substantives in -m, viz.: Atem, Odem, Brodem, breath; Brosam, crumb; Eidam, son-in-law, follow the Maler model (§ 16) in the sing. The plur., if it occurs, ends in -e (Hund model, § 21, b, no Umlaut), except Brosam, which is more commonly weak in the plur. (-en).
- 2. Weak feminines are often found with the old weak gen. and dat. in -en, especially when used without article after a-preposition, as: auf Erben, on earth (but auf der Erde, on the earth); zu Ehren, in honour of; in Gnaden, in mercy, etc.

LESSON XVI.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:—RECAPITULATION.—PROPER NAMES.—PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

70. SUMMARY OF DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The following tables show the endings of the various forms of Substantive Declension:

A. Strong Declension.

I. Maler I				III. Dorf Model	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. —			—е		—er
Gen. ——§		—(e)s	—е	—(e)§	-er
Dat. —	—(n)	—(e)	—en	—(e)	-ern
Acc. —			—е		-er

REMARKS.—1. The term 'Strong Declension' is applicable to all the three forms given above.

2. The Sohn Model is sometimes called the Primary Form of the Strong Declension, and shows the -# of Gen. Sing. and -t of the Plur. From this are derived the other two forms, viz.:

- 3. By contraction (dropping -e of the termination), the Maler Model, hence called also the Contracted Form of the Strong Declension; and
- 4. By enlargement (adding -r in the Plur., the Sing. remaining the same), the Dorf Model, hence also called the Enlarged Form of the Strong Declension.
 - 5. Feminines remain unchanged in the Sing.
- 6. The Umlaut may occur in any of these forms, viz.: generally in masc. monosyllables, regularly in feminines and in Enlarged Form; never in neuter monosyllables of Primary Form. (See Lists, App. A., B., C., E.)

B. Weak Declension.

Knabe, Graf, Blume Model.

OBSERVE: 1. The persistent -n. 2. The absence of Umlaut. 3. Uniformity of Cases. 4. Feminines unchanged in Sing.

C. Mixed Declension.

REMARKS. - 1. All three follow the Anabe Model in the Plur.

- 3. The Nachbar Model follows the Maler Model in the Sing.
 - 4. The Ohr Model follows the Sohn Model in the Sing.
- 71. The Essential Parts for the Declension of a Substantive are:

The Nominative Singular, and The Nominative Plural.

These being given, the remaining cases of the noun can be formed from the above Tables, with the assistance of the following:

REMARKS. — 1. All Feminines are unchanged in the Sing.

- 2. The Nom. and Acc. Sing. are always alike, except in the Weak Declension (Anabe, Graf and Name models).
- 3. The Gen. Sing. ends in -\$ in Masculines (except in the Weak Declension) and in all Neuters.
 - 4. The Nom., Gen. and Acc. Plur. are always alike.
 - 5. The Dat. Plur. always ends in -n.

Decline the following substantives throughout:

Das Buch, die Schönheit, der Sturm, die Tochter, der Schwager, der Better, das Regiment, die Stadt, das Auge, der Mann, der Meusch, der Balast', der Planet', der Spaziergang, das Schaf, die Frau, das Fräulein, der Feiertag, die Schwester, der Glaube.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

72. Geographical Proper Names:

- 1. If never used without an article, etc. (see § 44, 2, 3), are declined like common nouns, as: der Rhein, G. des Rhein(e)s, D. dem Rhein(e); die Schweiz, G. der Schweiz, D. der Schweiz, etc.
- 2. If not generally used with an article, etc., they take no ending except -\$\xi\$ in the Gen. Sing. (unless they end in a

sibilant), as: Deutschland, Germany, G. Deutschlands; Frank-reich, France, G. Frankreichs; Rom, Rome, G. Roms.

92

- 3. If they end in a sibilant (3, sh, 3, \$, \$), the Gen. is replaced by the preposition von, as: Die Besestigungen von Paris, the fortifications of Paris.
- 4. **Bon** may replace the Gen. with other names also, and is always used after titles, as: Die Königin von England, the Queen of England; der Bürgermeister von Toronto, the Mayor of Toronto.
- 5. When the Name of a Place is preceded by a common noun, they are in apposition to each other, but the proper name is not inflected, as: Die Stadt London (not von London), the City of London, G. der Stadt London. Das Königreich Preußen, the Kingdom of Prussia, G. des Königreichs Preußen.
 - 6. Proper Names of Places are not used in the Plural.
- 73. Proper Names of Persons are now inflected in the Gen. Sing. only, as follows:
- 1. If preceded by an article, etc. (which shows the case), they remain unchanged, as: The letters of Cicero, die Briefe bes Cicero.
- 2. If not preceded by an article showing case, etc., those ending in a sibilant, and Feminines in -e, add -(e)ns in the Gen.; all others add -s only, as: Max, G. Maxens; Louise, G. Louisens; Karl, G. Karls.

REMARK. — Surnames and classical names in a sibilant now commonly take an apostrophe instead of -ens, as: Dpit's Werfe, Opitz's works.

74. Family Names are used in the Plural with added -\$, as in English, but without article, as: the Schmidts, Schmidts (meaning the members of the Schmidt family).

Further Remarks on the Declension of Proper Names and of Foreign Substantives will be found in Supp. Less. C., below.

75. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

1. Wegen, on account of, on behalf of, for the sake of (sometimes follows its case), as: I remained at home on account of (for the sake of) my child, (wegen meines Rindes).

Note. — Begen always follows the Gen. of the Pers. Prons., which are then written in one word with the preposition, and have special forms ending in -t, as: meintiwegen, for my sake; thretwegen, for her (their) sake; unfertwegen, for our sake, etc.; also with the Relative and Demonstr. her: here(n)twegen (Sing. Fem. and Plur. — 'for the sake of whom, which, that,' etc.).

- 2. Während, during, as: We went out walking during the rain (während bes Regens).
- 3. Statt, or anstatt, instead of, as: He will come instead of his friend (statt, or anstatt seines Freundes).

The other PREPS. with GEN. will be found in Lesson XXXVIII.

VOCABULARY.

give, present, make a present
of (foll. by dat. of person
and acc. of thing), schenken
library, die Bibliothek'
bookseller, der Buch'händler
cousin (fem.), die Cousine
Elizabeth, Elisabeth
Europe, Euro'pa
festivity, die Festlichkeit
Frederick, Friedrich
Fred, Freddy, Frist
poem, das Gebicht
George, Georg
Greece, (das) Griechenland
capital (city), die Hauptstadt*

Henry, Heinrich
Ireland, (das) Irland
Margaret, Margarete
speech, oration, die Rede
St. Lawrence, der St. (Sanct)
Lo'renz
Sarah, Sara
Scotchman, der Schotte
street, die Straße
Thames, die Themse
work, das Werf
William, Wilhelm
broad, wide, breit
high, hoch
clear, flar

turbid, muddy (of water), soon, balb trübe everywhere, überall'

Idioms: to be on a visit at (any one's), auf Besuch sein bei; as a birthday present, jum Geburtstag.

EXERCISE XVI.

- A. 1. Der Raiser von Deutschland ift auch König von Preußen. 2. Die Berge Englands und Irlands find nicht hoch, aber bie Berge ber Schweiz find hoch und prächtig. 3. Wir ftudieren bie Briefe bes Cicero. 4. Saras Coufine war bei ihr auf Befuch, aber jest ift fie fort. 5. Müllers waren geftern bei uns, aber wir waren nicht zu Saufe. 6. Bas ift ber Name bes Burger= meisters von London? 7. Mein Bater bat mir Lessings Berte und Beines Lieber jum Geburtstag gefchenkt. 8.- Auf meiner Reise besuchte ich bie Stabte London, Baris, Berlin und Rom. 9. Die Fluffe Canadas find groß, aber bie Fluffe Griechenlands find flein und furg. 10. Wir werben bie Blumen für Sophie auf ben Tifch ftellen. 11. Friedrichs Mutter ichenkt ihm Rlopftocks Berte, benn heute ift fein Geburtstag. 12. Das Baffer bes Sanct Lorenz ift flar, aber bas Baffer ber Themfe ift trube. Louife, hole Sophie und Elifabeth und wir werben einen Spazier= gang im Balbe machen. 14. Diefer Schotte rebet viel von Burns' Gedichten. 15. Beinrichs Freunde werden balb nach England reisen, und fie werden auch Frankreich besuchen. 16. Die Strafen Torontos maren mahrend ber Festlichkeiten febr fcon. 17. Beshalb ftudieren Sie die Reben bes Demofthenes? Um Freitag ober Sonnabend werden wir nach Ringfton reifen um Louise und Margarete ju besuchen. 19. Georg ift jest bei feinem Better Frit auf Befuch. 20. Um Sonntag waren wir wegen bes Sturmes zu Saufe. 21: 3ch habe in ber Schweiz nicht viel Bergnügen gehabt, weil ich auf ber Reise frank mar.
- B. 1. Charles, bring Freddy and Max, and we shall play in the garden. 2. We have looked for William's book everywhere. 3. The streets of Paris are wide and beautiful. 4.

Who has bought these gloves for Emma? 5. The city of Ottawa is the capital of Canada. 6. We live in Canada, but our parents live in Germany. 7. We have presented flowers to Elizabeth and Mary. 8. You have Goethe's works in your library. 9. I bought Schiller's William Tell at (bei) a bookseller's in Hamilton. 10. We learn in this book the names of the gods of the Romans. 11. The Schmidts visited us yesterday. 12. What is the capital of Switzerland? 13. My father sent me instead of Max, because Max was too tired. 14. The city of Berlin is the capital of the kingdom of Prussia. 15. Would you be happy, if you were rich?

ORAL EXERCISE XVI.

1. Wer ist König von Preussen? 2. Wo war Saras Cousine? 3. Was hat Ihr Vater Ihnen zum Geburtstag geschenkt? 4. Sind die Strassen Torontos immer schön? 5. Weshalb waren wir am Sonntag zu Hause? 6. Was ist die Hauptstadt Canadas?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON C.

PROPER NAMES. - FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

76. FURTHER REMARKS ON DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

- 1. Proper names of towns, governed by a preposition in the genitive, do not take -8, as: unweit hamburg, not far from Hamburg.
- 2. Names of persons, even if preceded by an article, etc., take -f in the genitive before a governing noun, as: des fleinen Karls Bücher (but die Bücher des fleinen Karl).
- 3. Feminine names frequently take -(e)n in the dat. and acc., especially if they end in -e, as: Louise, D. A. Louisen.
- 4. Family names (and even Christian names) formerly added -(e) in the dat. and acc., and are usually so found in the classics, as:

Goethe, D. A. Goethen Schiller, "Schillern Karl, "Rarln Lessing, "Lessingen

NOTE. - This inflection is now obsolete and not to be imitated.

- 5. In the case of proper names in the genitive, preceded by a common noun as title:
- (a) If the governing word follows, the proper name takes the genitive ending, the title remaining undeclined and having no article, as: Nönig Heinrich Söhne, King Henry's sons.
- (b) If the governing word precedes, the title has the article and the genitive ending, the proper name remaining undeclined, as: die Söhne bes Königs Heinrich.

Note. — The title herr takes -n in the genitive in both these cases, as: herrn Schmibts haus, or bas haus bes herrn Schmibt.

- 6. In the case of a Christian name without article, connected with a family name preceded by von (indicating noble rank):
- (a) When the governing word follows, the family name only is declined, as : Friedrich von Schillers Gedichte.
- (b) When the governing word precedes, only the Christian name is declined, as: Die Gebichte Friedrichs von Schiller.
- 7. The names of the Saviour, Jesus Christus, usually both follow the Latin declension, thus: N. Jesus Christus, G. Jesu Christi, D. Jesu Christo, A. Jesum Christum, Voc. Jesu Christe.

Note. — Other biblical names, if without article, also follow the Latin inflection, especially in the gen., as: Das Evangelium St. Matthüi, the Gospel of St. Matthew.

77. DECLENSION OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

- 1. Most foreign substantives follow one or other of the regular forms of declension, all feminines being weak.
- 2. Most masculines and neuters from the Latin, ending in -us, have the classical plural, but with no case-inflection in either number, as: ber Modus, the mood: N.G.D.A. Sing. Modus, Plur. Modi; ber Casus, the case: N.G.D.A. Sing. Casus, Plur. Casus; das Tempus, the tense: N.G.D.A. Sing. Tempus, Plur. Tempora.

Notes — 1. Others change -118 to -en in the plur., as: Globus, Plur. Globen (such forms as Globusse should be avoided as barbarous).

- 2. Der Atlas has pl. bie Atlanten.
- 3. The Hebrew words Cherub and Seraph have the Hebr. Pl. in -im and take -8 in the gen. sing.
- 3. Neuters in -a from the Greek, and in -um from the Latin, take -3 in the gen. sing., and change -a or -um into -en in the plur., as: das Drama, the drama, G. Sing. Dramas, Plur. Dramen; das Thema, the

theme, Plur. Themen; das Individuum, the individual, G. Sing. Individual

Note. - Das Rlima, the climate, has pl. Rlimata or Rlimaten.

4. Neuters from Latin Substantives with plur. in -ia add -f in the gen. sing., often dropping the Latin sing. termination, and form the plur. in -ien, as: das Abberb(ium), the adverb, G. Sing. Abberb(ium)s, Plur. Adverbien; das Barticip(ium), the participle, G. Sing. Particip(ium)s, Plur. Participien; das Fossil, Plur. Fossil, Plur. Fossil, Plur. Wineral, Plur. Mineralien.

NOTES. - 1. These words formerly followed the full forms of Latin declension, grammatical terms (e. g. Berbum, etc.) retaining these forms longest.

- 2. The German word bos Rleinob, the jewel, has Plur. Rleinobien as well as the regular Plur. Rleinobe.
- 5. Masculines and neuters of recent introduction from *modern* languages take -\$ in the gen. sing., and add -\$ to form the plur., as: Lord\$, Club\$, Sofa\$, Banquier\$, Portrait\$, Solo\$, etc.

NOTE. - Italian words are also found with their proper foreign plur., as Goli, Conti.

78. THE ARTICLE WITH NAMES OF PERSONS.

Besides the cases specified in § 73, I, above, the article is used with names of persons:

- 1. Colloquially and familiarly, as: Der Rarl, Die Louise.
- 2. When they denote a class, as: ein Bellington, a (man like) Wellington.
- 3. Before names of paintings, etc., named from a pers., etc, as: ein Rofael, a (painting by) Rafael; bie Benus von Milo, the (statue of) Venus of Milo.

LESSON XVII.

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES. — INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

- 79. The Gender of Substantives is determined in German:
 - I. by Meaning; or
 - II. by Form (Ending, etc.).
- 80. I. GENDER AS DETERMINED BY MEANING.
- I. Masculine are names of:
- (a) Males, as: ber Mann, the man; ber helb, the hero.

REMARK: But diminutives in -chen and -lein are neuter, as: bas Männlein or Männchen.

- (b) Seasons, months and days, as: ber Herbst, the autumn; ber Januar, January; ber Mittwoch, Wednesday.
 - (c) Points of the compass, as: ber Nord(en), the north.
- (d) Precious stones and mountains, as: ber Diamant, the diamond; ber Broden, the Brocken.

2. Feminine are names of:

(a) Females, as: bie Frau, the woman; bie Tochter, the daughter.

REMARK: But bas Beib, the woman, is neuter; also diminutives in -chen and -lein, as: bas Töchterchen, the little daughter; bas Mäbchen, the girl; bas Fraulein, the young lady.

- (b) Trees, plants, fruits and flowers generally, as: die Eiche, the oak; die Nessel, the nettle; die Birne, the pear (but der Apple); die Rose, the rose.
- (c) Cardinal Numerals used as substantives, as: bic Eins, the (number or figure) one; bie Sechs, the six (at dice, etc.).
 - 3. Neuter are names of:
 - (a) Metals almost always, as : das Blei, lead; das Eisen, iron. Note. Der Stahl, steel, is Masc.
- (b) Collectives almost always, as: das Bolf, the people; das heer, the army; especially when beginning with Ge-, as: das Gebirge, the mountain-chain.
- (c) Countries and provinces almost always, as: (bas) Europa, Europe; (bas) Canada; islands, cities, towns, villages, etc., always, as: (bas) Hamburg; (bas) Rom, Rome.

REMARKS. — 1. Names of countries and provinces in -ei, -au and -z are feminine, as: die Türkei, Turkey; die Schweiz, Switzerland.

- 2. Names of countries, etc., when not neuter, always have the definite article (see § 44, 3).
- (d) Infinitives, letters of the alphabet, and other parts of speech (except Adjectives used of persons, and Cardinal Numerals; see 2, c, above), used as Substantives, as: bas Lachen, the (act of) laughing; bas A, the (letter) A; bas Sch. the I; bas Wenn und bas Aber, (the) 'if' and (the) 'but.'

Give the gender of the following Substantives, assigning the rule in each case: April, Gold, Erdbeere, Tochter, Europa, Bifchof, London, Jura, Rubin (ruby), Ballachei (Wallachia), Unrecht, Guben (South), Gelb. Raufen, Sommer.

81. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives.

The Interrogative Pronouns are:

- 1. welcher? which? DEFINITE.
- 2. wer? who? } INDEFINITE.
 3. was? what?
- 82. Welcher? is declined after the biefer Model, but, as Pronoun, lacks the Gen., thus:

Singular.			Plural.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL	GENDERS.
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche,	which
Gen.	-	-			
Dat.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen,	(to, for) which
Acc.	welchen	welche	welches	welche,	which .

REMARKS. - 1. Welcher? asks 'which of a number?' of persons or things, and agrees in gender with the noun following it, as:

> Belder von diesen Männern ift hier gewesen? Which of these men has been here? Beldes von diesen Buchern haben Sie gehabt ? Which of these books have you had?

2. The neuter sing, meldies is used before the verb 'to be,' irrespectively of the gender or number of the subject (compare the similar use of es. § 39, 1), as:

> Which is your sister (brother)? Beldes ift Ihre Schwester (Ihr Bruber)? Which are the children of the count? Beldes find die Rinder des Grafen?

83. Wer? and was? are used in the Sing. only, and are declined as follows:

MASC. AND FEM.

NEUTER.

Nom. wer, who?

was, what?

Gen. wessen (or wes), whose, of wessen (or wes), of what whom

Dat. wem, (to, for) whom

mas, what

Acc. wen, whom REMARKS. - 1. Wer is used of persons only, for all gen-

ders and both numbers, as: Sing. M. Wer ift biefer Mann? F. jene Frau? N. biefes Rind? Plur. Ber find diefe Manner ? etc.

- 2. Mas is not used of persons.
- 3. Was is never used in the Dative. In the Dat. or Acc. with prepositions, mas is replaced by mo (mor before vowels), placed before the preposition (compare § 38, Rem. 5, for similar use of ba), as:

Borauf siten Sie? On what (whereon) are you sitting? Bovon sprechen Sie? Of what (whereof) are you speaking? NOTE. - Warum? = for what, wherefore, why? not worum.

- 4. With prepositions governing the Gen., mes is used before the preposition, as: weshalb, westvegen? on what account, wherefore, why?
 - 5. The neuter Gen. weffen? is rarely used, except as above.

- 6. Mas is sometimes used (as interrog. adv.) for marum, why? (For the use of was for etwas, see under etwas, § 140, 1.)
 - 84. The Interrogative Adjectives are:
 - 1. welder, weldes? which? what? DEFINITE.
 - 2. mas für ein, mas für eine, mas für ein?) what kind of? Plur. mas für? - INDEFINITE.
- 85. Melder, as Interrogative Adjective, follows the biefer Model throughout, as:

	Singular.			Plural.	
	- MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche, which	
Gen.	welches	welcher	welches	welcher, of which	
Dat.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen, (to, for which)	
Acc.	welchen	welche	welches	welche, which	

EXAMPLES:

Which man was here? Welcher Mann war bier ? What books have you? Belde Bücher haben Gie?

REMARKS. - 1. Belcher is also used in exclamatory sentences (= what!), sometimes without termination, as:

Beld (c8) Bergnügen! What pleasure!

2. The stem welch is also followed by ein, and is uninflected, as:

Beld ein Sturm! What a storm!

- 86. In declining was für ein, was remains unchanged, while ein agrees with the substantive, as:
 - N. M. Bas für ein Sut? A. Bas für einen Sut? What kind of (a) hat? D. Bas für einem Sut? To what kind of a hat?

G. F. Bas für einer Blume? Of what kind of (a) flower, etc.

In the Plur. mas für is used without article, as:

N. A. Bas für Kinder? What kind (sort) of children?

D. 2Bas für Kinbern? To what kind of children?

The ein is also omitted before names of materials and other words used partitively, as:

Was für Holz?

Was für Better?
What sort of weather?

87.

INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

Direct Statement or Quotation:
He said: 'I am tired.'

Indirect Statement or Quotation:
He said (that) he was tired.

- 1. An Indirect Statement is always a subordinate clause.
- 2. In Indirect Statements, the Verb is usually in the Subjunctive (especially if the verb of the principal clause be in the Impf.), and has the same *tense* which it would have, if statement were made *directly*, as:

Sie sagten, daß es wahr sei (i. e., sie sagten: "Es ist wahr," pres.), They said that it was true.

Er antwortete, daß er gestern angekommen sei (i. e., er antwortete: "Ich bin gestern angekommen," perf.), He answered, that he had arrived yesterday.

Note.—In English, on the other hand, a past tense is always followed by a past tense, as in the above examples.

3. The conjunction baß may be omitted in such clauses, which then have the construction of a principal sentence (i. e., verb in second place), as:

Er fagte, er fei geftern angefommen.

88.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

Direct Question:
Who is there?
Indirect Question:

He asked who was there?

- 1. In Indirect (or Dependent) Questions the construction is that of a dependent clause (verb last).
- 2. If the verb of the principal sentence be in the Impf., that of the question will be in the *subjunctive*, and have the same *tense* which it would have in the direct question, as:

Sagen Sie mir gefälligst, wo jener Herr wohnt (Dir. Qu.: Wo wohnt jener Herr? pres.), Tell me, if you please, where that gentleman lives?

Er fragte mich, welcher von diesen Herren mein Bruder sei, He asked me which of those gentlemen was my brother (Dir. Qu.: Belcher, etc., ist Ihr Bruder? pres.)

VOCABULARY.

*** The article will be supplied by the pupil, according to preceding rules, where not given.

to use, brauchen
march, marschieren
save, retten
answering, b— Antworten
paying, b— Bezahlen
jewel, precious stone, b—
Ebelstein
asking (of questions), b—
Fragen
Italy, Italien
sire-place, b— Kamin'
elm, b— Ulme
blue, blau
light, easy, leicht
useful, nühlich

buying, b— Raufen
life, b— Leben
learning (act of), b— Lernen
lily, b— Lilie
market, ber Markt
morning, ber Morgen
afternoon, ber Nachmittag
plum, b— Pflaume
emerald, b— Smaragb'
winter-month, ber Wintermo's
nat
valuable, precious, wertboll
generally, usually, gewöhnlich
etc., u. f. w. (= und so weiter,
i. e. "and so further")

Genitive with adverbial force. in the morning, morgens or bes Morgens in the afternoon, nachmittags or bes Nachmittags

The Cardinal Points of the Compass (= bie vier Himmels=gegenben): North, (ber) Norben; South, (ber) Süben; East, (ber) Often; West, (ber) Besten.

Names of the Months: der Januar, der Februar, der März, der April', der Mai, der Ju'ni, der Ju'li, der August', der Sepetember, der Oktober, der November, der Dezember.

Idiom: I saved his life, lit. I saved to or for him the life, 3ch rettete i hm bas Leben. See § 44, 6 (8).

EXERCISE XVII.

- A. 1. Wer hat das Bild von meinem Neffen über bas Ramin gehängt? 2. Was für einen Tisch hat Johann auf bem Martte gekauft ? 3. Auf welche Bank werben wir uns feten ? 4. Beldem Angben gehört biefes Meffer? Es gebort Wilhelm. 5. Jenes Mabden auf ber Strafe ift bas Töchterchen unferes Nachbars. 6. Bas machen Sie gewöhnlich, wenn Sie einen Feiertag haben? 7. Des Morgens studiere ich, und bes Nachmittags rubre ich auf bem Fluffe. 8. Belches find die Namen ber fieben Tage ber Boche ? Montag, u. f. w. 9. Wem schicken Sie biefen Brief? 10. Ich schicke ibn bem Buchhändler. 11. Worüber haben bie herren gelacht? 12. Wer ift bie Frau neben meiner Tante auf ber Bant? 13. Bas für Augen hat ber Student? Geine Augen find blau. 14. Woraus machen wir Schiffe? Wir machen fie aus Gifen und Stahl. 15. Rarl ift mit bem Lernen feiner Aufgabe nicht fertig. 16. Worauf haben bie Schuler fich gefest? Sie haben fich auf bie Brude gefett. 17. Bas fur Cbelfteine haben Sie ba? 18. Ich habe einen Diamant(en), einen Rubin, und einen Smaragd. 19. Das heer ift bon Frankreich nach Stalien marschiert. 20. Napoleon fchicte bem Grafen einen Dia= mant(en), weil ber Graf ihm bas Leben gerettet hatte.
- B. 1. Which of your sisters are learning German? 2. For whom is this diamond? It is for the countess. 3. Which

are your pens? 4. The asking of questions is very easy, but the answering is very difficult. 5. The north, the south, the east, and the west are the four cardinal points of the compass. 6. Which of these students is Mr. Braun? 7. The boy buys himself pears and plums in the market. 8. My uncle has three children — a girl and two boys. 9. June, July, and August are very hot in Canada. 10. Buying is pleasant, but paying is very disagreeable. 11. Iron and steel are very useful. 12. The rose and the lily are flowers, but the oak and the elm are trees. 13. I blame Mary because she wastes her money. 14. What would you do with your money, if you were rich? 15. We always hoped that William would learn German.

ORAL EXERCISE XVII.

1. Wo hängt das Bild von Ihrem Neffen? 2. Wer ist das Mädchen vor unserm Hause? 3. Weshalb schickte der König dem Bürgermeister einen Diamant(en)? 4. Was für Augen hat der Student? 5. Ist das Fragen leicht? 6. Was würden Sie machen, wenn Sie einen Feiertag hätten?

LESSON XVIII.

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES (concluded). — GENERAL REMARKS.
— DOUBLE GENDER.

89. GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES AS DETERMINED BY FORM.

1. Masculine are:

- (a) Substantives in -ig, -ig, -ing, -m, almost always, as: ber Kranich, the crane; ber Honig, the honey; ber Frembling, the stranger; ber Atem, the breath.
- (b) Those in -el, -en (not infinitives), -er, generally (names of agents in -er always), as: der Löffel,

- the spoon; der Garten, the garden; der Gärtner, the gardener.
- (c) Monosyllables generally (but with many exceptions), as: ber Krieg, the war; ber Tag, the day, etc.

2. Feminine are:

(a) Substantives in -ei, -heit, -feit, -schaft, -ung, -in, always, as: die Schmeichelei, flattery; die Schönsheit, beauty; die Dantbarkeit, gratitude; die Freundschaft, friendship; die Hoffnung, hope; die Gräfin, the countess; die Freundin, the (female) friend.

Note. — The termination -in is used to form feminine names from masculines, usually with Umlaut, always so in monosyllables.

- (b) Those in -t (especially after a consonant), -end, generally, as: die Kraft, strength; die Zutunft, the future; die Tugend, virtue.
- (c) Those in -e, generally (but with many exceptions), as: die Höhe, height; die Größe, size.
- (d) Some in -nis (see also under neuters), as: bie Wilbnis, the wilderness.
- (e) Foreign Substantives in -age, -ie (French); -if (Greek); -enz, -tät, -(t) ion, -nr (Lat.), always as: die Courage, courage; die Melodie', the melody; die Musit', music; die Audienz', the audience; die Universität', the university; die Nation', the nation; die Natur', nature.

3. Neuter are:

(a) Substantives in -hen and -lein (diminutives), always (without regard to sex), as: bas Männlein, bas Fräulein, bas Mäbhen.

- (b) Those in -tum, almost always, as: bas Christentum, Christendom, Christianity.
- (c) Those in -nis, -fal, -fel, generally, as: das Creignis, the event; das Schicfal, fate, destiny; das Ratefel, the riddle.
- (d) Those beginning with the prefix Ge-, unless otherwise determined by meaning, termination, or derivation, as: das Gemälde, the painting; das Gemach, the apartment; but: der Gevatter, the godfather; die Gevatterin, the godmother; die Gesellichaft, the company; der Gebrauch, the usage (from der Brauch, masc. monosyll.).

Give the gender of the following substantives, assigning the rule in each case: Beilchen, Hut, Kirche, Kinster, Landschaft, Essign (vinegar), Blume, Geschenk, Knäblein, Begräbnis, Furcht, Hafen, Gewitter, Finger, Apfel, Korb, Universität', Astrolog, Teppich, Philosophie.

90. GENERAL REMARKS ON GENDER.

- r. Gender agrees, as in English, with sex, except in bas Beib, in Diminutives in -hen and -lein, and in certain compounds (see below).
- 2. Inanimate objects, which in English are all alike neuter, may be of any gender in German, as determined by Meaning or Form, as: ber Sut, die Blume, das Buch.
- 3. Each substantive of which the gender is not determined by the rules should be learnt with the Definite Article as the sign of its gender.
- 4. Compounds are of the gender of the last component (hence has Frauenzimmer, the woman, is neuter), except

der Abscheu, disgust, from die Scheu. die Antwort, the answer, from das Wort. der Mittwoch, Wednesday, from die Woche. Also certain compounds of Mut, which are given in Appendix I.

5. The exceptions to the foregoing lists will be found in Appendix I.

91. Double Gender.

The gender of the following substantives (with others given in App. J.), varies with their meaning:

Singular.	Plural.
ber Band, volume	Bände)
bas Band, { ribbon bond, tie	Bänder See § 64, above.
ber Bauer, peasant	Bauern
bas Bauer, bird-cage	Bauer
ber Heibe, heathen }	Heiben
ber Schild, shield	Schilde
bas Schild, sign (of an inn, etc.)	Shilder
ber See, lake }	Seeen
der Thor, fool, c. des Thoren	Thoren
das Thor, gate, c. des Thores	Thore

VOCABULARY.

(The pupil will supply the article in German where not given.)

to visit, study (at a university), besuchen (+ Acc.)
collect, gather, sammeln
peasant, country-man, b-Bauer
bee, b-- Biene

relate, tell, erzähsen
paint, malen
(female) neighbour, b-- Nach=
barin
orator, b-- Redner
bedroom, b-- Schlafzimmer

boat, das Boot
friendship, d— Freundschaft
inn, d— Gasthaus
district, locality, d— Ge'gend
history, story, d— Geschichte
waiter, d— Rellner
piano, das Rlavier'
vice, das Laster
lesson, d— Lestion'
people, die Leute (pl.)
love, d— Liebe
mathematics, d— Mathematit
(sing.)

little son, b— Söhnchen sun, b— Sonne city-gate, town-gate, b— Stadtthor ingratitude, b— Undankbarkeit way, road, b— Beg wind, b— Bind rage, fury, die But sign, das Zeichen terrible, terribly, fürchterlich strong (heavily, of rain, etc.), ftark willingly, with pleasure, gern

so, fo

Idioms: 1. I like to learn German, 3ch lerne gern Deutsch.
2. A week ago to-day, heute vor a cht Tagen (Dat.).
3. A week from to-day, heute über acht Tage (Acc.).

EXERCISE XVIII.

A. 1. Ohne (die) Freundschaft, (die) Hoffnung und (die) Liebe würde das Leben sehr traurig sein. 2. Unsere Bettern waren heute vor acht Tagen bei uns. 3. (Die) Schmeichelei ist kein Zeichen der Freundschaft. 4. Wilhelm, Ierne deine Lektion. 5. Was für Bände sind auf dem Tische in Ihrer Bibliothek? 6. Es sind sünf Bände von Schillers Werken. 7. Die Wut des Sturmes ist sünchterlich, aber das Schiff ist schon im Hafen. 8. Lernt Ihr Bruder gern Mathematik? Nein, aber er Iernt gern Deutsch. 9. Welchem Mädchen gehören diese Ringe, der Marie oder der Sara? 10. Die Dankbarkeit ist eine Tugend, aber die Undankbarsleit ist ein Laster. 11. Karl Schmidt besucht im Winter die Universität, aber im Sommer wohnt er bei seinen Eltern auf dem Lande. 12. Zenes Fräulein hat ihrer Freundin ein Band zum Geburtstag geschenkt, und ihre Freundin ist damit sehr zusrieden. 13. Diese Kandschube gehören nicht mir, sie gehören meinem

- Schwager. 14. Der Maler hat ein Schild für das Gasthaus vor dem Thor gemalt. 15. Marie, hast du die Bänder für deine Mutter gekaust? Nein, aber ich werde sie morgen oder am Mitt-woch kausen. 16. Rellner, holen Sie mir gefälligst ein Messer und einen Löffel. 17. Er hat mir keine Antwort auf meinen Brief geschickt. 18. Was für eine Melodie spielt das Töchterchen unserer Wirtin auf dem Klavier? 19. Wenn ich Geld hätte, so würde ich einen Teppich und Vorhänge für mein Schlaszimmer kausen. 20. Wenn Marie ihre Lektion nicht lernt, so wird sie in der Schule nicht gut antworten.
- B. 1. This country-man lives on a heath near the lake. 2. The tempest is terrible, but the ship is already in the harbour. 3. The stranger praises this locality on account of the beauty of the landscape. 4. What kind of a flower is it? It is a violet. 5. We met a stranger on the way to the university. 6. Your aunt is my neighbour. 7. Who are these people? They are the parents of my cousin. 8. The mother relates to her little son the story of the little man in the wood. 9. Have you heard the words of the orator? 10. During the tempest the wind shook the house. 11. The girl hangs the bird-cage before the window in the sun (acc.). 12. The bees gather honey from the flowers upon the heath, and the peasant sells it in the town. 13. When we hastened home yesterday, it was raining heavily. 14. I shall not wait for George, because I have no time. 15. When I resided at (bei) my uncle's, I was always at home at ten o'clock in the evening.

ORAL EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Wer war heute vor acht Tagen bei Ihnen? 2. Was für Bücher haben Sie auf Ihrem Tische? 3. Lernen Sie gern Mathematik? 4. Was macht Karl Schmidt im Winter? 5. Wer spielt jetzt auf dem Klavier? 6. Was werden Sie heute über acht Tage machen?

LESSON XIX.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS. - IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS.

92.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Relative Pronouns are:

- 1. der, die, das, who (of persons), which (of
- 2. welcher, welche, welches, 5 things) Definite.
- 3. mer, who (= he who, whoever)
 4. mas, what (= that which, whatever)
 INDEFINITE.
- 5. desgleichen, the like of whom or which INDECLINABLE.
- 93. Der, bie, bas, as Relative Pronoun, is declined as follows:

,	Singular.			Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	ber	bie	das bessen	bie, who, which, that	
Gen.	bessen	beren		beren whose, of which	
Dat.	bem	ber	dem	benen, (to, for) whom, which	
Acc.	ben	bie	das	bie, whom, which, that	

OBSERVE. — These forms are the same as those of the Definite Article, except the added -en of the Gen. Sing., Gen. Plur., and Dat. Plur.

94. Belder, as Relative Pronoun, is declined after the biefer Model, but, like the Interrogative welcher, lacks the Genitive.

95. Remarks on der and welcher.

- 1: Der and welcher refer alike to both persons and things, and are interchangeable, except that:
- (a) In the gen., bessen, bessen, bessen, pl. beren (not welches, etc.), are always used (see § 82, above).
- (b) Der is used when the antecedent is of the First or Second Person, the relative being, in that case, always followed by the Personal Pronoun, as:

I, who am your friend, Jch, der ich Ihr Freund bin, (or: Ich, die ich Ihre Freundin bin).

- O God, (thou) who art in Heaven, D Gott, ber bu im Himmel bist.
- 2. Der and welcher, referring to inanimate objects, are usually replaced by we (wer-before a vowel) before a preposition (compare § 83, 3, above, for similar use of we for wee), as:

The table, on which (whereon) the book is, Der Tisch, auf welchem, or : worauf bas Buch ist.

3. The Gen. bessen, etc., always precedes its case, as:

A tree, the leaves of which are green, Ein Baum, bessen Blätter grün sind.

96. Remarks on wer and was.

- 1. Wer and was are declined like the Interrogative Pronouns wer? and was?
- 2. Wer is used of persons only, for all genders and both numbers; was never of persons.

3. Wer and was, as relatives, are indefinite and compound in meaning, and include the antecedent, as:

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen, (He) who will not hear, must feel.

Bas ich Ihnen geschickt habe, ift nicht viel,

What (= that which) I have sent you, is not much.

4. Wer never has an antecedent, since it includes the antecedent itself; therefore

never say: Der Mann, wer hier war, but: Der Mann, welcher hier war, (The man who was here).

5. Was never has an antecedent, unless the antecedent be a neuter adjective or pronoun, such as nichts, nothing; etwas, something; alles, everything; or a phrase, in which cases was always replaces bas, as:

Nothing (that) I say, etc., Nichts, was ich sage, etc.
All (that) I have, etc., Alles, was ich habe, etc.
The best (that) I have, etc., Das Beste, was ich habe, etc.
He does not learn his lessons, which (i. e. 'the not learning') is a great pity, Er lernt seine Lestionen nicht, was sehr schabe ist.

- 6. Ever = auch or immer after wer or was, as:
 Wer es auch (immer) gesagt hat, Whoever has said it.
- 7. The Relative mas, like the Interrogative, is not used after prepositions in the Dative or Accusative, but is replaced in the same way by ma(r); with prepositions governing the Genitive, mas is used (see § 83, 3, above).

OBSERVE. — The relative must never be omitted in German, as it so frequently is in English, hence:

(Engl.) The man I met,

(Germ.) Der Mann, welchem (bem) ich begegnete.

97. Desgleichen and bergleichen are indeclinable words, the former referring to a masc. or neuter noun in the sing., the latter to fem. or plural nouns, as:

Ein Mann, desgleichen (dat.) ich nie begegnete, A man, the like of whom I never met. Have you ever heard the like of that? Eine Frau, dergleichen, etc., A woman, the like of whom, etc. Kinder, dergleichen, etc., Children, the like of whom, etc.

98. CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Every relative sentence is of course a dependent sentence, and as such must have the verb at the end, as:

The wine, which I have sent you, is very good. Der Bein, ben ich Ihnen geschidt habe, ist sehr gut.

2. When the antecedent is subject, the relative immediately follows it (as in the sentence given above); but if the antecedent be object, the sentence in which the object occurs should be completed before the relative is introduced, as:

I have not used the book which you sent me, Ich habe das Buch nicht gebraucht, welches Sie mir schickten.

I would have bought the book you showed me yesterday, if I had had money, Ich wurde bas Buch gefauft haben, welches Sie mir gestern zeigten, wenn ich Gelb gehabt hatte.

3. In sentences with wer or was, the relative clause will be counted as the first member of the principal sentence, which will therefore begin with the verb, e. g.:

Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen, He who will not hear, must feel.

Note. — In German, every dependent sentence or clause is separated from the sentence on which it depends by a comma. The relatives welder and ber must therefore always be preceded by a comma.

99. IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS.

r. A Few Weak Verbs, besides adding the termination -te to form the Impf., and -t to form the P. Part., also change the Stem Vowel in the Impf. Indicative and P. Part., but not in the Impf. Subjunctive. They are:

Infinitive.	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.	P. Part.
brennen (intr.), to burn, be consumed with fire	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
fennen, to know, be acquainted with	fannte	fennte	gekannt
nennen, to name rennen, to run (at full speed)	nannte rannte	nennte rennte	genannt gerannt
senden, to send	{ fandte { fendete		gefandt gefendet
wenden, to turn	{ wandte wendete	wendete	gewandt gewendet

OBSERVE: 1. The double forms of the last two verbs, of which the shorter are in more general use.

2. The three following verbs have also a consonant change, with Umlaut in the Impf. Subj.:

Infinitive.	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.	P. PART.
bringen, to bring	brachte	brächte	geb rach t
benten, to think	dachte	dächte	ged ach t.
bünten, to seem (impers.) (beuchten, bäuchten)	deuchte (bäuchte) bünkte	deuchte (däuchte) dünkte	ged eucht (gedäucht) gedünkt

REMARKS.—1. Compare the English: bring, brought; think, thought.

2. The forms bäuchte, gebäucht, are as yet more common than beuchte, gebeucht, but the latter are according to the new official orthography.

3. Besides the Inf. beuchten, there is also a Pres. Ind. 3. sing. beucht.

NOTE. — The German Perfect often replaces the English Past or Imperfect (see also Less. XLIII.), as:

I sent you the book yesterday, In habe Thuen gestern das Buch geschick. I was working yesterday the whole day, In habe gestern den gangen Tag gearbeitet.

VOCABULARY.

consider, bedenfen (trans.)
order, bespeak, bestellen
think of, densen an (+ acc.)
or bensen (+ gen.)
recognize, ersennen
like to hear, gern hören
divide, share, teilen
burn, consume with fire
(trans.), berbrennen
wish, wünschen
apply to, sich wenden an
(+ acc.)

acquaintance, die Bekanntschaft postman, der Postwote title, der Titel all, everything, Alles unhappy, unfortunate, unsglücklich improbable, unwahrscheinlich just now, eben, soeben diligently, industriously, fleißig easily, readily, leicht really, wirklich

Idiom : It is a pity, Es ift ichade (adj.).

EXERCISE XIX.

A. 1. Der Kaiser sandte einen Boten mit der Nachricht nach Berlin. 2. Wer nicht für mich ist, ist wider mich. 3. Die Leute, bei denen ich auf Besuch gewesen bin, sind Schotten. 4. Hat der Kellner Alles gebracht, was wir brauchen? 5. Der Postbote hat mir die Nachricht gebracht, worauf ich wartete. 6. Ich erkannte wirklich den Herrn nicht, der gestern mit meinem Better in der Kirche war. 7. Das Pferd des Generals rannte um den Preis. 8. Der Fremdling, dessen Bekanntschaft ich zu machen wünsche, wird morgen hier sein. 9. Das Feuer brannte im Ofen und ver-

brannte das Holz. 10. Wenn er unglücklich war, wandte er sich immer an mich, der ich sein Freund war. 11. Ich dachte heute an die Geschichte, die Sie mir gestern erzählten, und ich habe sehr darüber gelacht. 12. Hat der Diener die Bücher nach Hause gebracht, die ich beim Buchhändler gesauft habe? 13. Mensch, hast du je bedacht, was du bist? 14. Wir haben das Holz schon verstrannt, das wir vor acht Tagen gesauft haben. 15. Dieses Kind erzählt immer zu Hause, was es in der Schule hört. 16. Alles, was er hat, teilt er mit mir, der ich sein Freund din. 17. Glauben Sie die Geschichte, die Herr Braun uns erzählt hat? 18. Die Frau, deren Töchterchen bei uns auf Besuch ist, wird morgen nach Hause reisen. 19. Was Sie in der Stadt gehört haben, ist sehr unwahrscheinlich. 20. Es regnete gestern, was sehr schae war, da wir auf dem Lande waren.

B. 1. Do you hear what I say to you? 2. My father always burnt the letters which were no longer useful. 3. He has not told me what he wishes. 4. The man, in whose house we lived, is the brother of our neighbour. 5. Here is the meat which you have ordered. 6. The honey which the countryman brought us yesterday is not good. 7. Do you know the artist who has painted this picture? 8. People who are not industrious do not become rich. 9. We readily believe what we hope and wish for. 10. What were you thinking of when you met me yesterday? 11. Have you all you need? 12. I believe that I know the man who is in front of the house. 13. I always burn the newspapers I do not need. 14. The students to whom these books belong do not study them diligently, which is a pity. 15. I do not know the song, the title of which you have just named. 16. What was burning? The gardener was burning leaves.

ORAL EXERCISE XIX.

1. Was machen Sie gewöhnlich mit den Zeitungen, die Sie nicht mehr brauchen? 2. Wer hat Ihnen diese Nachricht

gebracht? 3. Woran denken Sie? 4. Was machen Sie, wenn Sie einen Feiertag haben? 5. Glauben Sie jede Geschichte, die Sie hören? 6. Was erzählt das Kind?

LESSON XX.

DECLENSION OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES: - STRONG FORM.
- CONJUGATION OF STRONG VERBS.

100. Declension of Attributive Adjectives.

The boy is good — Predicative Adjective.

The good boy - Attributive

REMEMBER: That Adjectives used as *Predicates* are not varied (see § 14).

- 101. Every Attributive Adjective either is or is not preceded by a determinative word (i. e., article or pronominal adjective), which shows gender, number and case by distinctive endings.
- 102. First Form. If not preceded by any such determinative word, the Attributive Adjective follows the Strong Declension, which is the same as the biefer Model throughout, thus:

STRONG DECLENSION OF gut, good.

		Singular.		Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	guter	gute	gutes	gute
Gen.	gutes	guter	gutes	guter
Dat.	gutem	guter	gutem	guten
Acc.	guten	gute	gutes	i gute

SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Gen. Dat.	good wine guter Wein gutes (en) Wein(e)s gutem Wein(e)	good soup gute Suppe guter Suppe guter Suppe	good glass gutes Glas gutes (en) Glases gutem Glas(e)
Acc:	guten Wein	gute Suppe	gut es Glas

Plural.

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. gute Beine, Suppen, Gläser Gen. guter Beine, Suppen, Gläser Dat. guten Beinen, Suppen, Gläsern Acc. gute Beine, Suppen, Gläser

OBSERVE: In this form, where there is no other word to show the gender, etc., of the noun, this work must be done by the adjective, which therefore has as full a set of endings as possible.

REMARKS. — 1. The Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neuter generally has -en instead of -es before strong substantives, as: guten Beines, guten Brotes.

- 2. Adjectives in -e drop the -e of the stem in declension, as: mübe, tired: müb-er, müb-e, müb-es, etc.
- 3. If several Adjectives precede the same substantive, all follow the same form, as:

guter, alter, roter Bein, etc., good, old, red wine.

Decline throughout in German: siek child, high tree, long lesson, beautiful broad stream, young woman, lazy horse, tired boy.

Infin. fing-en

103. Conjugation of Strong Verbs.

Verbs in German are either Strong or Weak. The Weak Verbs, which indicate change of tense by the addition of a termination (usually without change of vowel), as: lob-en, lobte, gelob-t, have been treated in Lessons IX, X.

- 104. The Strong Verbs, on the other hand, indicate the change of tense by a change of the Root Vowel without adding a termination, as: sing-en, to sing, Imps. sang; bleiben, to remain, Imps. blieb.
- 105. The Past Participle in Strong Verbs ends in -en (not -et), usually also with change of Vowel, as: sing-en, P. Part. ge-sung-en; bleiben, P. Part. ge-blieb-en; but geben, P. Part. ge-geben.

REMARK. — This change of Root-Vowel is called 'Ablaut,' and is common to English and German. Compare Eng. sing, sang, sung; give, gave, giv-en.

106. Paradigm of Simple Tenses of fingen, to sing.
Principal Parts.

IMPF. fang

Indicative.	Subjunctive. PRESENT.
ich finge, I sing bu fing(e)ft, thou sing-est er fing(e)t, he sing-s wir fingen, we sing ihr fing(e)t, ye sing	ich finge, I (may) sing, etc. bu fingeft er finge wir fingen ihr finget
sie singen, they sing	fie fingen

IMPERFECT.

(Ind. Stem with Umlaut, where possible.)

P. Part. ge-fung-en

ich fang, I sang ich fänge bu fang(e)st, thou sangst bu fängest

Indicative.

er fang, he sang wir fangen, we sang ihr fang(e)t, ye sang fie fangen, they sang Subjunctive.

er fänge wir fängen ihr fänget sie fängen

Imperative.

fing(e) [bu], sing [thou] finge er, let him sing fingen wir, let us sing fing(e)t [ihr], sing [ye] fingen fie, let them sing

OBSERVE: The *Person* endings are the same throughout as in the paradigm of loben, in which -te of the Impf. is a **Tense** ending (see Lessons IX, X); this is shown by the following:

107. Table of Endings of Strong Verbs in Simple Tenses.

Prese	nt.	Imper	fect.	Imperative.
Indic.	Subj.	INDIC.	Subj.	•
Sing. 1. —e	—е		—е	•
2. —(e)ft	-eft	—(e)ft '	—eft	-(e) .
3. —(e)t	—е		-е	
Plur. 1. —en	—en	-en	. —en	—en
2. —(e)t	-et	—(e)t	—et `	-(e)t
3. —en .	-en	-en	—en ~	—en

OBSERVE: 1. The changed Vowel of the Imperfect, and absence of person endings in 1. and 3. sing.

- 2. The Umlaut of the Imperfect Subjunctive.
- 3. The persistent -e of the Subjunctive (Imperf. as well as Pres.)

REMARKS. — 1. The —c of the termination in the 2. Sing. of the Pres. and Impf. Ind. is only retained in Strong Verbs after b, t, or a sibilant, as: id) reit—e, bu reit—eft; id) preif—e, bu preif—eft; and in the 3. Sing. Pres. Ind., and 2. Plur. Pres. and Impf. Ind. after b, t, as: er reit—et, ihr reit—et, ihr ritt—et; but er preif—t, ihr preif—t, ihr preif—t.

- 2. The compound tenses of a Strong Verb are formed precisely like those of a Weak Verb, some being conjugated with haben, others with sein; hence it is only necessary to know the Inf., Impt. and P. Part., and in some cases the 2. Sing. Imper., in order to conjugate a Strong Verb throughout.
 - 108. PARADIGM OF COMPOUND TENSES OF fingen, to sing (with haben); fallen, to fall (with fein).

 Indicative.

 Subjunctive.

ich habe gesungen, I have sung ich habe gesungen bu hast gesungen, thou hast sung, etc. ich sein gesallen, I have (am) fallen, etc. ich sei gesallen, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte gefungen, I had sung, etc. ich hätte gefungen, etc. ich war gefallen, I had (was) fallen, etc. ich wäre gefallen, etc.

FUTURE.

(Pres. of werden + Infin. of { fingen })

ich werbe singen (fallen), I shall sing ich werbe singen (fallen) (fall)

bu wirst singen (fallen), thou wilt sing bu werdest singen (fallen), (fall), etc.

Indicative. FUTURE PERFECT.

(Future of { haben } + P. Part. of { fingen })

ich werde gefungen haben, I shall have ich werde gefungen haben sung

bu wirft gefungen haben, thou wilt have sung, etc.

bu werbest gefungen haben, etc. ich werbe gefallen fein.

ich werbe gefallen fein. I shall have (be) fallen, etc. Conditional.

etc. COMPOUND.

SIMPLE.

(Impf. Subj. of werben + Infin. of fingen, fallen)

ich würde fingen (fallen), T should sing (fall), etc.

(Simple Cond. of { haben } + P. Part. of fingen, fallen)

ich würde gefungen haben, etc.

ich würde gefallen fein, etc.

Infin. Perf.

(P. Part. of { fingen } + Pres. Infin. of { haben })

gefungen (zu) haben, to have sung gefallen zu fein, to have (be) fallen

- 109. Compound Verbs. Compound Verbs are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are derived; those having one of the inseparable particles be-, er-, emb-, ent-, ge-, ver-, zer-, do not take the prefix ge- in the P. Part., as: be-fingen, P. Part. be-fungen (compare be-gablen, P. Part. be-aubit, § 35, Rem. 6), and in the Inf. take zu before the prefix; other compounds take the prefix ge- and the particle au between the prefix and the verb (Part. or Inf. respectively).
- 110. The Strong Verbs are divided into classes, according to the 'Ablaut,' or Vowel-changes, of the root (see § 105, Rem., above). These classes, with the verbs belonging to each, are given in the following Lessons (XXII-XXXI).

111. SHORTER FORMS OF THE CONDITIONAL.

The Impf. and Plupf. Subj. are frequently used in all Verbs instead of the Simple and Compound Conditional respectively, thus:

ich hätte = ich wurde haben; ich fange = ich wurde fingen; ich hätte gehaht = ich wurde gehabt haben; ich hätte gefungen =

ich würde gefungen haben.

NOTE. — These shorter forms are always to be preferred in the Passive Voice (Less. XXI), and in the Modal Auxiliaries (Less. XXXIV).

VOCABULARY.

help (serve) one's self, sid hebienen acknowledge, confess, beten= nen catch cold, fich erfalten nominate, appoint, ernennen fill, füllen spread out, sich verbreiten bough, branch, ber Aft * ink, die Dinte or Tinte company, die Gefellichaft governor, der Gouverneur' concert, das Konzert' queen, die Königin paper, das Papier advice, counsel, ber Rat

singer, ber Ganger, bie Gan= aerin liberal, generous, freigebig friendly, kind, freundlich fresh, frisch glad, froh hard, hart hoarse, heifer bad, schlecht black, fdwarz brave, valiant, tapfer true, faithful, treu weighty, important, withtig at last, finally, enblich yes (emphatic), yes indeed, ia wohl

Idioms: To appoint (as) governor, jum Gouverneur ernennen; cheerfully, frohen Mutes (genitive with adverbial force); good morning, guten Morgen (i. e., 3ch muniche Ihnen einen guten Morgen).

EXERCISE XX.

- A. 1. Mein Meffer ift von gutem, hartem Stahle. 2. Hohe Bäume haben gewöhnlich große Afte. 3. Was für Pferbe haben

Sie gefauft? Ich habe schwarze und weiße Pferde gefauft. 4. Füllen Sie gefälliaft mein Glas mit frifchem Baffer. 5. Tapfere Solbaten eilen froben Mutes in bie Schlacht. 6. 3wei glüdliche Menschen wohnen in jenem Saufe. 7. Saben Gie etwas Neues in ber Stadt gehört? Ja wohl, viel Neues, aber nichts Intereffantes. 8. Bier ift auter Rafe und frifches Brob: bitte, bedienen Sie fich. 9. Wer bu bift zeigt beine Gefellschaft. 10. Guten Morgen, Berr Braun, ich hoffe, daß wir heute schönes Wetter haben werden. 11. In welchem Sahre ernannte bie Königin ben Grafen von Dufferin jum Gouverneur von Canada? 12 3d habe gutes Bapier, aber meine Feber ift fclecht. 13. Die Rinder liebten meinen Onfel, weil er nie mude wurde, ihnen ichone Gefdichten zu erzählen. 14. Sie haben endlich bekannt, bag Sie Unrecht haben. 15. Sch habe mich erfaltet; wenn ich jest fange, würbe ich heifer werben. 16. Ich habe schon oft bas Lied gehört, welches die Sangerin im Rongert gefungen bat. 17. Bute Bucher find treue Freunde, die immer Rat fur uns haben. 18. Wenn wir fleißig find, fo werben unfere Lehrer uns loben.

B. 1. Have you black ink or red? I have black. 2. Rich people are not always generous, and generous people are not always rich. 3. What kind of neighbours have you? We have friendly neighbours. 4. Please fill my glass with pure fresh water. 5. High mountains and beautiful valleys spread out before our eyes. 6. I have something important to say to you. 7. New friends are not always good friends. 8. This mother buys her children something useful. 9. Have you white paper or blue? I have white, but my brother has blue. 10. I like to hear the singer, who sang at (in) the concert yesterday. 11. My sister did not sing at the concert, because she was hoarse. 12. If she had not been hoarse, she would have sung.

ORAL EXERCISE XX.

1. Weshalb liebten die Kinder meinen Onkel? 2. Wer wohnt in jenem Hause? 3. Was hat die Mutter ihren Kindern gekauft? 4. Was für Papier haben Sie für mich gekauft? 5. Warum sangen Sie nicht? 6. Womit haben Sie mein Glas gefüllt?

LESSON XXI.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

112. The Passive Voice is formed by means of the various tenses of the auxiliary verb merorn, to become (see § 19) + the Past Participle of the Verb to be conjugated, as in the Paradigm below.

Principal Parts of werden:

Infin. werden Impf. wurde (ward) Past Part. geworden

Note. — The perfect tenses of werben are formed with sein (see § 53, a), Perf. 3d, bin geworben; Plups. id, war geworben, etc. For the formation of the suture and conditional, see sein (§ 52).

PARADIGM OF THE PASSIVE VOICE OF loben, to praise.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

(Pres. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I am (being) praised, etc. I (may) be praised, etc. ich werde ich werde du wirft bu werbeft er wird er merbe gelobt gelobt wir werben wir werben ihr werbet ihr werbet fie werben fie werben

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

IMPERFECT.

(Imperf. of werben + P. Part. of loben.)

I was (being) praise	d, etc.	I might be	(being) praised,
ich wurde (ward)) (ich würde	ſetċ.
du wurdest (wardst)		bu würdeft	-
er wurde (ward)	gelobt	er würde	
wir wurden	Reinni	wir würden	} gelobt
ihr wurdet		ihr würdet	
sie wurden	j	fie würden	0 - 4

PERFECT.

(Perfect of werden + P. Part. of loben.)
(Part. of werden omits ae-)

I have been praised, etc.		I (may) have been praised,		
ich bin		ich sei] [etc.	
du bift.		bu feieft		
er ist wir sind	gelobt worden	er fei wir feien	gelobt worden	
ihr feid		ihr feiet	-	
fie find	65.7	fie feien		

PLUPERFECT.

(Plupf. of werben + P. Part. of loben.)

I had been praised, etc. ich war gelobt worden du warst gelobt worden, etc.

I might have been praised, ich wäre gelobt worden [etc. du wärest gelobt worden, etc.

FUTURE.

(Future of werben + P. Part. of loben.)

I shall be praised, etc.
ich werde gelobt werden
du wirst gelobt werden, etc.

I shall be praised, etc. ich werde gelobt werden bu werdest gelobt werden, etc.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

FUTURE PERFECT.

(Fut. Perf. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I shall have been praised, etc. ich werde gelobt worden fein du wirst gelobt worden sein, etc.

I shall have been praised, etc. ich werde gelobt worden fein du werdest gelobt worden sein etc.

Conditional.

(Cond. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

SIMPLE.

COMPOUND.

I should be praised, etc. ich würde gelobt werden bu würdest gelobt werden, etc.

I should have been praised ich würde aclobt worden fein du würdest gelobt worden sein etc.

Infinitive. (Infin. of werben + P. Part of loben.)

Pres. to be praised

gelobt (zu) werben Perf. to have been praised gelobt worben (gu) fein

Participles. (Part. of werben + P. Part of loben.)

Pres. being praised aelobt werbend been praised Past. gelobt worden

Imperative.

(Imper. of merben + P. Part. of loben.)

be praised, etc. werbe gelobt werde er gelobt werden wir gelobt werdet aelobt werden fie gelobt

REMARKS. - 1. The shorter forms, i. e. Impf. and Plupf. Subj. (see § 111, and Note), are commonly used for the longer forms with wurde in the conditional.

- 2. Observe the omission of the ge- in the P. Part. of werden (worden for ge-worden) when used as auxiliary of the passive voice.
- 3. The personal agent with the passive voice (which is the *subject* of the active verb) is denoted by the preposition **bon** (Engl. by), as:

Der unartige Knabe wird von seinem Lehrer bestraft, The naughty boy is being punished by his teacher.

4. The auxiliary participle worden is omitted whenever the state of the subject may be regarded as still continuing, thus:

Das haus ift gebaut,

The house has been (is) built (and is still standing).

- 5. The Engl. 'I am,' 'I was,' etc., as part of the passive auxiliary 'to be,' must be rendered into German as follows:
- (a) By the proper tense of werden when they are equivalent to 'I am being,' 'I was being,' etc., as:

The child is (i. e., is being) punished by its parents, Das Rind wird von seinen Eltern bestraft;

The dinner was being served, when we arrived, Das Mittagseffen wurde ferbiert, als wir ankamen;

or when the verb, being turned into the active voice, is in the present or imperf. tense respectively, as:

Passive:

The boy is (was) always punished by the teacher, when he is (was) naughty,

Der Knabe wird (wurde) immer vom Lehrer beftraft, wenn er unartig ist (war);

Active :

The teacher always punishes (pres.) or punished (impf.) the boy, when he is (was) naughty,

(impt.) the boy, when he is (was) naughty, Der Lehrer bestraft (bestrafte) immer den Knaben, wenn er unartig ist (war).

(b) By the proper tense of fein (with or without worden, see last Remark), when they are equivalent to 'I have been,' 'I had been,' etc., or when the verb, being turned into the active, would be perf. or pluperf. respectively, as:

Passive: { I am (= have been) invited to the party, 3th bin zur Gesellschaft eingeladen (worden);

Active: { They have invited (perf.) me to the party, 3th mich zur Gesellschaft eingeladen.

Passive: { The dinner was (= had been) served, when we arrived, 3th Mittagsessen war serviert, als wir antamen;

Active: { They had served (plupf.) the dinner, etc., Man hatte bas Mittagsessen serviert, u. s. w.

The following examples will serve to show more clearly the proper use of the various forms of the passive:

> (a) Die Läden werden jest geschlossen, The shops are being shut now (present).

(b) Die Läden sind diese Woche früher geschlossen worden,

The shops have been shut earlier this week

(perfect).

(c) Die Läden sind jest geschlossen, The shops are (and remain) shut (past state, continuing in the

(a) Der Soldat wurde von einer Rugel verwundet, The soldier was wounded by a ball (a ball wounded him, impf.).

(b) Der Solbat war von einer Kugel verwundet worden,
The soldier had been wounded by a ball
(pluperf.).

(c) Der Soldat war schwer verwundet, The soldier was
severely wounded (and still suffered from his

wound: past state, continuing in the past).

(a) Diese Brücke wurde vor zehn Jahren gebaut, This bridge was built ten years ago (they built it then, that is the date of its being built, impf.)

3.

(b) Diese Brücke war vor zehn Jahren gebaut, This bridge was built ten years ago (and is still standing: past state, continuing in the present).

EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

- A. Turn the following sentences into German: 1. This house was built by my father. 2. My window is broken (gebrodien). 3. The child is washed (gewaschen). 4. This man is esteemed by everybody (jedermann). 5. The garden must be sold. 6. The enemy was beaten (gefchsagen).
- B. Turn the following sentences into the passive: 1. Woraus machen wir Messer? 2. Robert Stevenson hat die Victoria-Brücke bei Montreal gebaut. 3. Mein Bruder hat mir diese Uhr geschenkt. 4. Die Feinde bombarbierten die Stadt. 5. Der Lehrer hatte den Anaben bestraft, weil der Knabe sein Buch verloren (lost) hatte. 6. Dein Bater wird dich loben.

113. LIMITATIONS OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

r. Only the direct object of a transitive verb can become the subject of the passive verb; thus we say in the

Active: Mein Bater liebt mich; and in the Passive: 3ch werde von meinem Bater geliebt.

But the sentence:

'I have been promised help by him' = Sulfe ist mir von ihm versprochen (promised) worden, since in the

Active: Er hat mir Hülfe versprochen (promised), fülfe is the direct, but mir the indirect object. Hence it follows, that

2. Intransitive verbs can only be used *impersonally* in the passive, thus:

I am allowed = (68 wird mir crlaubt (Lat. mihi permittitur);

He has been helped = Es ist ihm geholfen worden.

This impersonal passive is also used in expressing an action without specifying any agent, as:

Es wurde geftern Abend viel getangt,

There was a great deal of dancing yesterday evening.

NOTE. — The pron. co in these constructions is omitted if any other member of the sentence precedes the verb, as:

Mir wird erlaubt ; Geftern Abend murde, etc.

114. Substitutes for the Passive Voice.

The passive voice is much less frequently used in German than in English, particularly in the longer forms. It is often replaced, especially with intransitive verbs:

(a) By the indefinite pronoun man (Fr. on, see Less. XXVII), with the verb in the active voice, as:

Man glaubt ihm nicht, He is not believed; Man kann ihm nicht trauen, He cannot be trusted.

(b) By a reflexive verb, as:

Der Schlüssel wird sich finden, The key will be found; and particularly with lassen, as:

Das läßt fich leicht machen, That can easily be done.

VOCABULARY.

to conquer, overcome, ero'bern believe, glauben (intr., + dat. of person) wait (for), warten (auf + acc.) workman, ber Ar'beiter visit, visitors, ber Besuch mill, die Mühle beef, das Rindsleisch courage, die Tapferkeit untruth, falsehood, die Un'= wahrheit as, als once, ein'mal this evening, heute Abend as soon as, sobald' carefully, forg'fältig severely, ftreng little, wenig

Idioms: As a child, when (I etc. was) a child, als Kind; This house is for sale (lit., to sell, to be sold), dieses have if zu verlausen; to have visitors. Besuch haben.

EXERCISE XXI.

- A. 1. Diefes Bild murbe von meiner Schwefter gemalt, und es ift viel gelobt worden, 2. Die Stadt ift vom General bombardiert und erobert worden. 3. Wir werden bestraft werden, wenn wir unsere Lettion nicht forgfältig lernen. 4. Die Läben find geschloffen, benn beute ift (ein) Reiertag. 5. Ift das haus neben ber Mühle verkauft? 6. Sawohl, es wurde gestern von Ihrem Neffen gefauft. 7. Bon wem wurde das Kind gerettet, als das haus brannte? 8. Es wurde von einem Arbeiter gerettet, welcher wegen feiner Tapferkeit von den Leuten gelobt wurde. 9. Wäre der Knabe nach Saufe geschickt worden, wenn er nicht unartig gewesen ware? 10. Neben bem Saufe unferes Nachbars wird eine Rirche gebaut. 11. Es wurde gestern Abend viel bei uns gesungen und gespielt, benn wir hatten Besuch. 12. Ift bas Rindfleisch geschickt worben, welches ich bestellt habe? 13. Der Lehrer fagte, daß er mit meiner Arbeit aufrieden fei. 14. Das Bild mare von den Rünftlern nicht gelobt worden, wenn es nicht fehr schön gewesen ware. 15. Als Rind wurde ich immer von meinem Bater ftreng beftraft, wenn ich eine Unwahrheit fagte. 16. Wird es uns erlaubt fein, unfere Aufgaben ju verbrennen, wenn wir damit fertig find? 17. Es wird heute viel gespielt, aber wenig studiert, weil wir morgen keine Schule haben. 18. Es ift mir nichts bavon gefagt worben. 19. Wir wurden nicht gelobt, weil wir nicht fleißig waren. 20. Sobald bie Lettionen gelernt find, werben wir einen Spaziergang machen.
- B. 1. Our parents love us. 2. We are loved by our parents.
 3. By whom was this letter brought? 4. It was brought by a messenger.
 5. Our house is built, and we are already living in it.
 6. Is the dinner served? No, it is being served

now. 7. Was the soldier in the hospital wounded, or was he ill? 8. He had been wounded by a bullet. 9. The carriages of the count will be sold to-day. 10. His horses are already sold. 11. Why is this boy not believed? 12. He is not believed because he once told an untruth. 13. It is agreeable to be praised. 14. My sister is learning the song, which was sung at (in) the concert yesterday.

ORAL EXERCISE XXI

1. Wer hat dieses Rindfleisch gebracht? 2. Wann wird uns erlaubt werden, im Garten zu spielen? 3. Ist das Haus neben der Kirche verkauft? 4. Wird heute Abend viel studiert werden? 5. Von wem wurde der Knabe nach Hause geschickt? 6. Ist dieses Bild zu verkaufen?

LESSON XXII.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES: WEAK AND MIXED. — STRONG VERBS: beißen model.

115. Declension of Adjectives: Second Form.

If preceded by the Definite Article or by any determinative word of the biefer Model, the Attributive Adjective follows the Weak Declension, and takes—e in the Nominative Sing. of all Genders, and in the Accusative Sing. Feminine and Neuter; otherwise—en throughout, thus:

WEAK DECLENSION OF gut, good.

		Singular.		Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	gute	gute	gute	gut en	
Gen.	guten	gut en	guten	guten	
Dat.	guten	guten	gut en	guten	
Acc.	guten	gut e	gut e	guten	

SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

Singular.

the good man
Nom. ber gute Mann
Gen. bes guten Mannes
Dat. bem guten Manne
Acc. ben guten Mann

the good woman bie gute Frau ber guten Frau ber guten Frau bie gute Frau the good child das gute Kind bes guten Kindes bem guten Kindes das gute Kind

Plural.

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. bie guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder Gen. ber guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder Dat. ben guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern Acc. bie auten Männer, Frauen, Kinder

OBSERVE: Words of the **biefer** Model having (as far as possible) a full set of endings showing gender, etc., the adjective has as few of such distinctive endings as possible.

Further examples:

bieser gute Mann, this good man bieses guten Mannes, of this good man, etc. jene gute Frau, that good woman jener guten Frau, of that good woman, etc. welches gute Kind, which good child welches guten Kindes, of which good child, etc.

REMARK. — Two or more adjectives qualifying the same substantive follow the same form (compare § 102, Remark 3, above), as:

ber gute, alte, rote Wein, guter, alter, roter Wein.

Decline throughout in German: the sick child; that high tree; which long lesson; this beautiful, broad stream; that young woman; this lazy horse; which tired boy.

116. Third Form. — If preceded by the Indefinite Article or by any determinative word of the mein Model, the Attributive Adjective follows the biefer Model in the Nominative and Accusative Sing. of all Genders; otherwise, it takes—en (i. e., follows the Weak Declension) throughout, thus:

MIXED DECLENSION OF aut, good.

	Singular.			Plural.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	gut er	gute	gutes	guten
Gen.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Dat.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Acc.	guten	gute	gutes	guten

SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

Singular.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	a good man	a good woman	a good child
Nom.	ein guter Mann	eine gut e Frau	ein gutes Kind
Gen.	eines guten Mannes	einer guten Frau	eines guten Kindes
Dat.	einem guten Manne	einer guten Frau	einem guten Kinde
Acc.	einen guten Mann	eine gute Frau	ein gutes Kind

OBSERVE: This form differs from the weak form only in the Nom. Sing. Masc., and Nom. and Acc. Sing. Neut., where words of the mein Model have no distinctive endings. The adjective must consequently have the missing sign of gender and case.

The Plural of this form is the same as that of the Weak Declension, but, as ein has no Plur, the full declension of Substantives with mein is given here:

Rinbe

Singular.

Bruber

MASC

my good brother my good sister my good child N. mein auter Bruber meine gute Schwester mein gutes Rind G. meines auten meiner auten meines auten Rinbes Brubers Schwester D. meinem guten meiner auten meinem auten

Schwester A. meinen guten Bruber meine gute Schwester mein gutes Rind

Plural.

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. meine guten Brüber, Schwestern, Rinder Gen. meiner guten Brüber, Schwestern, Rinder Dat. meinen guten Brübern, Schwestern, Rinbern meine auten Brüber, Schwestern, Rinder

COMPOUND VERBS WITH SEPARABLE PREFIX.

1. The prefixes be-, er-, etc. (see § 35, Rem. 6), hence called Inseparable Prefixes, are never separated from the verb; other prefixes (chiefly the Prepositions) are Separable, but only in Principal Sentences with Simple Tense. as:

> Der Rönig ididte zwei Boten aus, The king sent out two messengers. Mein Bruder reift morgen ab, My brother sets out (= departs) to-morrow.

NOTE. — These Prefixes contain an idea distinct from that of the verb. and hence, if retained before the Verb in the cases above, would throw the verb out of its place as Second Idea of the Principal Sentence.

2. The ac- of the P. Part. and au in the Infin. follow the prefix, making together but one word, as:

> Die Boten bes Königs find abgereift, The messengers of the king have departed.

Mein Bater wünscht morgen abzureisen, My father wishes to depart to-morrow.

- 3. The principal accent is on the Verb when the Prefix is Inseparable; on the Prefix when Separable, as: besu'chen, berefau'fen; but aus's dicten, ab'reisen.
- 4. The principal parts of Separable Compound Verbs should therefore be given as in the following examples:

Infin.	IMPF.	P. Part.
an'greifen, to attack ab'schneiden, to cut off	griff an fchnitt ab	angegriffen abgeschnitten

118. STRONG VERBS: beißen Model.

	Infin.	IMPF.	P. Part.
Germ. Model:	beißen	bĭß	gebiffen
Engl. Analogy:	bite	bĭt	bitten
Ablaut:	ei	ĭ	ĭ

LIST.

Notes. — r. Compounds are only given in the Lists when the simple Verb is not found in the strong form.

2. R. = Reflexive; N. = Neuter, i. e., conjugated with sein only; N. A. = Neuter and Active, i. e., with sein or haben; W. indicates that the Weak form is also used without difference of meaning.

beißen, bite		biß	gebiffen
(er)bleichen (W. N.), turn pale		erblich	erblichen
(be)fleißen (R.), apply one's self	=	befliß	befliffen
gleichen, resemble, be equal to		glich	geglichen
gleiten (N.), glide		glitt	geglitten
greifen, grasp, seize		griff	gegriffen
fneifen, pinch		fniff	gekniffen
leiben, suffer		litt	gelitten

pfeifen, whistle	pfiff	gepfiffen
reißen, tear	riß .	geriffen
reiten (N. A.), ride	ritt	geritten
schleichen (N.), sneak	idilid)	geschlichen
schleifen, grind	fchliff	geschliffen
schmeißen, fling	fchmiß	geschmiffen
schneiben, cut	schnitt .	geschnitten
schreiten (N.), stride	schritt	geschritten
streichen, stroke	ftrich .	geftrichen .
streiten, contend	ftritt	gestritten
weichen, yield	with	gewichen

REMARKS.—1. The root vowel being shortened in the Impf., the following consonant, if single, is doubled; and stems in -b (fdneiben, leiben) change b into tt.

- 2. Those whose stem ends in f change f into f in the Impf. (unless final) and P. Part., as: beißen, ich bif, wir biffen, gebiffen.
- 3. The following Verbs are weak when they have a different meaning, as below:

bleichen (trans.), bleach	bleichte	gebleicht
schleifen, drag; raze (to the ground)	schleifte	geschleift
weichen, soften, soak	weichte	geweicht

4. Begleiten, to accompany, is no compound of gleiten, to glide, but of leiten, to lead (weak, = be-ge-leiten); verleiben, to make disagreeable, spoil (not from leiben, but Leib) is weak.

VOCABULARY.

to set out, depart, ab'reisen cut off, ab'schneiben paint (not pictures), an'= streichen slip, slide, aus'gleiten comprehend, understand, begreifen seize, ergreifen fear, sich fürchten (vor + dat.) tear (to pieces), zerreißen pass (time, etc.), zu'bringen Cinderella, Aschenputtel barber, der Barbier' idea, notion, der Begriff steamer, steam-boat, das

Dampfschiff thief, der Dieb grass, das Gras hair, das Haar hay, das Heu huntsman, hunter, der Jäger illness, die Krankheit fever, das Fieber slipper, der Bantoffel rain, der Regen rheumatism, der Rheumatismus piece, das Stück little piece, das Stückhen traveller, der Wanderer tooth, der Jahn* toothache, das Zahnweh evil, angry, cross, böfe joyous, merry, fröhlich smooth, slippery, glatt golden, of gold, golden violent, heavy (of rain), heftig naughty, ill-behaved (of

children), un'artig
true, wahr
furious, wü'tend
on that account, deswegen
of it, davon
the day before yesterday, vor's
gestern

Idioms: To be on the point of (be aboutto), im Begriffe sein. You are tired, are you not? Sie sind mude, nicht wahr? So are we, Wir sind es auch. George has torn my coat, George hat mir den Rock zerriffen.

EXERCISE XXII.

A. 1. Der General M. ritt auf einem schwarzen Pferde durch die Straßen Torontos (von Toronto). 2. Wie haben Sie die Zeit auf dem Lande zugebracht? 3. An was für einer Krankheit hat Ihr Bater so lange gelitten? 4. Sie sind müde, nicht wahr? Wir sind es auch. 5. Als mein Bruder jung war, hatte er schlechte Zähne und litt sehr an Zahnweh. 6. Der schwarze Hund unser(e)s Nachbars ist böse; er hat vorgestern ein kleines Kind gesbissen. 7. Uns(e)re alten Nachbarn begleiteten uns nach dem Hasen, als wir abreisten. 8. Wo wohnt der Bardier, der Ihnen das Haar geschnitten hat? 9. Mein altes Messer, der Ihnen das Haar geschnitten hat es gestern geschliffen. 10. Als ich vor

ber Schule über die glatte Straße schritt, glitt ich aus und zerriß mir den neuen Rock. 11. Als der Dieb im Begriffe war, ins Haus zu schleichen, ergriff ihn der Diener. 12. Unser alter Nachbar litt lange an (am) Rheumatismus, und war deswegen immer zu Hause. 13. Der General ritt mit seinen Offizieren über die Brücke. 14. Der böse Knabe auf dem Apfelbaum riß die reisen Äpfel vom Baume und schmiß sie auf die Erde. 15. Mein junger Nesse, der auf der Universität war, hat am Fieber gelitten, aber er ist jest wieder wohl. 16. Aschenputtels Schwester schnitt sich (dat.) ein Stück vom Fuße ab, weil er zu groß für den goldenen Pantossel war. 17. Ich din schnell nach Hause geritten, weil ich mich vor dem wütenden Sturme fürchtete. 18. Der Wanderer schritt frohen Mutes durch den grünen Wald und pfiff ein fröhliches Lied. 19. Dieses Wesser ist nicht scharf; wann wurde es geschlissen? 20. Karls schöner, neuer Rock wurde vom Hunde zerrissen.

B. 1. Where is the old knife that you ground? 2. When Mary was young she resembled her mother. 3. The bears sneaked (perf.) into the wood, but the hunters followed (perf.) them. 4. Where does the painter live who painted (perf.) our house? 5. The industrious countryman cut (perf.) the grass yesterday, and is making hay to-day. 6. Why are you crying, Charles? I am crying because George pinched (perf.) me. 7. The rain spoiled my (dat. + def. art.) journey to the country. 8. The steamer has whistled already. Now I shall say farewell. 9. Little Charles is a naughty child; he has torn his (dat. of refl. pron. + art.) new dress. 10. Old people often suffer from rheumatism. 11. Have you understood what he said? 12. The gardener was burning the boughs, which he had cut from the trees. 13. I have quarrelled with my old friend, because he was wrong. 14. This blue ribbon is too long, please cut a little of it off for me. 15. Why is Charles crying? He has been bitten by a dog.

ORAL EXERCISE XXII.

1. Was für einen Hund hat Ihr Nachbar? 2. Wie würden Sie die Zeit zubringen, wenn Sie reich wären? 3. Was machte der Wanderer, als er durch den Wald schritt? 4. Wo wohnen Sie jetzt? 5. Wann werden Sie Heu machen? 6. Weshalb sind Sie so schnell nach Hause geritten?

LESSON XXIII.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. - STRONG VERBS: bleiben MODEL.

119. Possessive Pronouns.

r. The Possessive Pronouns are used when no substantive is expressed, as:

The hat is mine (Pronoun); but: It is my hat (Adjective).

- 2. They are formed from the stems of the corresponding Possessive Adjectives by adding certain endings, as follows:
 - (a) Endings of dieser Model (without article), as:

	311	iguiar.		riurai.
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	• ALL GENDERS.
Gen. Dat.	meiner meines meinem meinen	mein c mein cr mein cr mein c	mein(c)8 meine8 meinem mein(c)8	meine, mine meiner, of mine meinen, (to, for) mine meine, mine

OBSERVE: In the Nom. and Acc. Neuter, -e of the ending may be omitted.

So for the other persons:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Sing.	beiner	beine	beines, thine
	feiner	fein e	seines, his, its
	ihrer	ihre	ihres, hers (its)

Dlural

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Plur.	unf(e)rer eu(e)rer	unf(e)re eu(e)re	uns(e)res, ours eu(e)res, yours
	ibrer	ihre	ihres, theirs
	(Ihrer	Thre	Ihres, yours)

Cincalan

(b) Preceded by the Definite Article, and hence with endings of Weak Adjective, thus:

	Singular.		1 141 41.
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
			die meinen, mine
G. bes meinen	ber meinen	bes meinen	ber meinen, of mine
D. bem meinen	ber meinen	bem meinen	ben meinen, (to, for) mine
A. ben meinen	die meine	das meine	die meinen, mine

So: ber, die, das deine, thine ber, die, das eu(e)re, yours ber, die, das ihre, hers, (its) ber, die, das ihre, theirs ber, die, das ihre, yours) ber, die, das uns(e)re, ours

(c) Preceded by Definite Article, with ending -ig + Weak terminations, thus:

Singular.

MASC. FEM. NEUTER.

Nom. der meinige die meinige das meinige
Gen. des meinigen, etc. der meinigen, etc. des meinigen, etc.

Plural.

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. die meinigen, mine Gen. der meinigen, of mine, etc.

So: ber, die, das deinige, thine ber, die, das seinige, his, its and so on for the other persons.

Note. - 1. In unfrige and eurige the -e of the stem is always omitted.

REMARK. — 1. These forms are interchangeable, without difference in meaning, as:

I have my book, but I have not yours, Ich habe mein Buch, aber ich habe nicht haß Ihre das Ihriae.

His letter is here, but ours is not here,

Sein Brief ist hier, aber { uns(e)re } ist nicht hier.

- 2. When a Possessive Pronoun is used as predicate, it may be replaced by the Possessive Adjective without ending, as:

 This book is mine, Dieses Buch ist mein.
 - 3. Observe the following idiomatic uses of the Poss. Prons.:
 - (a) In werde das Meinige (neuter sing.) thun, Is shall do my part, my utmost.
 - (b) Die Meinigen, Die Seinigen (Plur.), My, his friends, family.
 - (c) A friend of mine = Einer von meinen Freunden. This friend of mine = Dieser mein Freund.

120. Strong Verbs: bleiben Model.

	Infin.	IMPF.	P. Part
Germ. Model: Eng. Analogy:	bl ei ben wanting	blieb	gebl ie ben
Ahlaut ·	ri	ie	ie

LIST.

bleiben (N.), stay, remain	. blieb	geblieben
(ge)beihen (N.), thrive	gedieh	gediehen
leihen, lend, borrow	lieh	geliehen

meiden, avoid	mieb	gemieden
preisen; praise	pries	gepriefen
reiben, rub	rieb	gerieben
scheiben (N. A.), part (intr. and trans.)	schied	geschieden
scheinen, shine; seem, appear	schien	geschienen
schreiben, write	schrieb	geschrieben
scream, shout	fchrie	geschrieen
schweigen, be silent	schwieg	geschwiegen
speien, spit	spie .	gefpieen
steigen (N.), mount, ascend	ftieg	geftiegen
treiben, drive	trieb	getrieben
meisen, show, point out	wies	gewiesen
zeihen, accuse	zieh	geziehen

VOCABULARY.

hang up, auf'hängen ascend, besteigen (trans.) prove, demonstrate, be= weisen appear, ericheinen shine, glitter, glänzen descend, herab'steigen guard, keep, hüten rule, reign, govern, regieren write (to), ichreiben (dat. or an + acc.) climb, steigen (auf + acc.) pardon, excuse, berzeihen remain behind, zurüd'bleiben cold, die Erfältung family, die Familie herd, flock, die Berde

to copy, ab'ichreiben

heat, die Site last, ber Leiften pepper, ber Pfeffer shepherd, ber Schäfer shoemaker, cobbler, ber Schufter silence (act of keeping s.), bas Schweigen speaking (act of), bas Sprechen throne, ber Thron pasture, pasturage, bie Beibe fifty, funfzig, fünfzig bright, brightly, hell loud, loudly, laut correct, richtig round, rund bad, schlimm strong, severe, ftarf

Idiom: Up to the present time, still, noch immer.

EXERCISE XXIII.

- A. 1. Es ift nicht Alles Gold, was glangt. 2. Sprechen ift Silber, Schweigen ift Gold. 3. Schufter, bleib' bei beinem Leiften. 4. Seit acht Tagen bin ich wegen einer ftarfen Erfaltung ju Saufe geblieben. 5. Gine bon meinen Coufinen ift jest bei uns auf Befuch. aber fie bleibt nicht lange. 6. Was für Tiere find in jenem Balbe? Es find Baren. 7. Die Mutter und ihre Tochter weinten heftig, als fie von einander schieden. 8. Mein Dheim blieb wegen ber großen Site mit feiner Familie auf bem Lanbe. 9. Karl hat an feinen Bater geschrieben, und ich bin im Begriffe an ben meinigen zu ichreiben. 10. Der Rönig ichwieg und ichien traurig zu fein, als er die schlimme Rachricht hörte. 11. Bitte, verzeihen Sie mir, bag ich Ihnen noch nicht geschrieben habe. 12. Wo haben Sie Ihren Sut aufgehängt? Ich habe ihn neben ben Ihrigen gehängt. 13. Als wir auf ben Berg stiegen, schien bie Sonne schon hell. 14. Welche von biesen Buchern wunschen Sie? Ich wünsche bie meinen. 15. Wir wurden auf bem Lande geblieben fein, wenn unfere Freunde auch geblieben waren. 16. Die Berben wurden auf die Weide getrieben, als wir bom Berg berabstiegen. 17. Es ift uns bewiesen worden, daß die Erde rund ift. 18. Bor funfzig Jahren bestieg die Königin Bictoria ben Thron, und fie regiert noch immer. 19. Burben Gie nach Europa reifen, wenn ich jurudbliebe, um Ihr haus zu hüten? 20. Die Knaben pfiffen und ichrieen, als fie auf ben Berg ftiegen.
- B. 1. George has black ink, but mine is red. 2. Mary's sister and mine are learning German. 3. We have looked for William's books and ours everywhere. 4. Your exercise is not correct, copy it. 5. Whose gloves have you? I have mine and yours. 6. Why did the boy shout so loud? 7. To whom were you writing the long letter yesterday? 8. I have black eyes, but yours are blue. 9. In what year did Goethe's 'Faust' appear? 10. Waiter, please bring me the vinegar and the pepper. 11. This lead-pencil is mine, where is

yours? 12. Your aunt and mine are neighbours. 13. The professor seemed not to be at home, for his windows and shutters were not open. 14. I should write to him, if he wrote to me. 15. I was writing to my mother and Charles was writing to his when the postman brought us the letters.

ORAL EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Seit wann sind Sie schon zu Hause geblieben? 2. Was machten die Schäfer, als wir vom Berge herabstiegen? 3. Wann bestieg die Königin Victoria den Thron? 4. Was für Tinte haben Sie? 5. Für wen ist dieser lange Brief? 6. Welches sind die Namen der Monate?

LESSON XXIV.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES (concluded): TABLE, CENERAL REMARKS.—STRONG VERBS: fifiefen and fetiten models.

121. TABLE OF ADJECTIVE ENDINGS.

I. Strong.				
Singular. Plural.				
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.	
N. —er	—е	—eŝ	—е	
G. —es (en)	—er	-es (en)	—er	
D. —em	-er	—em	—en	
A. —en	—е	—eŝ	—е	

OBSERVE: -en for -es in Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neuter before strong substs.

II. WEAK.

S	Plur.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
-е	—е	—е	—en
—en	-en	-en	—en
—en	—en	en	-en
-en	-е	e	-en

OBSERVE: Persistent-n, except Nom. Sing. of all genders, and Acc. Sing. Fem. and Neuter.

III. MIXED.

S	Singular.		Plural.
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	M. F. N.
Nom. —er	—е	—cŝ	—en
Gen. —en	—en	-en	—en
Datcu	-en	—en	en
Acc. —en	—е	cŝ	—en

OBSERVE: Same as Weak (II), except Nom. Sing. Masc. and Nom. Acc. Sing. Neuter.

122. GENERAL REMARKS ON ADJECTIVES.

- 1. Participles used attributively are employed and declined as Adjectives, as: geliebter Bater, beloved father; das weinende Kind, the weeping child; meine geehrte Mutter, my honoured mother.
- 2. Adjectives and Participles used as Substantives vary their declension according to the rules for Adjective Declension, but are spelt with capital letters, as: ber Rrante, the sick man, patient; Fem. bic Rrante, the sick woman; Plur. bic Rranten; ein Rranter, a sick man, patient; pl. Rrante, sick people, patients.

REMARKS.—1. Many words, the English equivalents of which are Substantives only, are Adjectives in German, as: ber Frembe, the stranger, foreigner, Pl. die Fremben, but ein Frember, Pl. Frembe; ber Reisende, the traveller, ein Reisender, etc. These Adjective-Substantives, when Masc. and preceded by the Desinite Article, have the same inflection as the Weak Declension.

2. Names of languages from Adjectives are not declined when used without the article, as:

Bas ift dies auf Deutsch? What is this in German?

- 3. Adjectives of colour used substantively are indeclinable, or add -\$ in the Gen. Sing., as: bas Grün, bes Grün(\$).
- 4. If the Substantive is not expressed, the Adjective shows by its ending the gender, number and case, as:

Ein kleiner Mann und ein großer, A little man and a tall one.

NOTE. — The English 'one' is in these cases not to be translated into German.

- 5. If a Substantive is preceded by a succession of Adjectives, they all follow the same form, as: guter, alter, roter Bein; ber gute, alte, rote Bein; eines guten, roten Beines.
- 6. Adjectives whose stem ends in -el, -en, -er, as: ebel, noble; golben, golden; heiser, hoarse, drop -e of the stem when inflected; those in -el, -er may drop -e of the termination instead, unless the termination is -e, -er, or -es, as: das goldne Bauer; ber edlen or edeln Frau; dem heisen or heisern Sänger.
- 7. The Adjective hoch, high, drops e when inflected, as: ber hohe Baum, the high tree.
- 8. Adjectives can generally be used without change as adverbs, as: luftig, merry, merrily; angenehm, agreeable, agreeably; gut, good, well.
- 9. Adjectives (so-called) in -er from names of places are indeclinable, as: die Londoner Zeitung, the London newspaper; Hamburger Schiffe, Hamburg ships; ein Pariser Hamburg, a Paris glove.

Note. — These adjectives correspond to the English use of the proper names without inflection. They are really substantives in the Gen. Plur., thus: die Londoner Zeitung is strictly die Zeitung der Londoner, the newspaper of the Londoners. Hence they are spelt with a capital letter.

gießen, pour

10. After personal pronouns, the Adjective follows the strong declension except in the Dat. Sing. and Nom. (and sometimes Acc.) Plur., as:

(for) me, poor man; you good people; us little children. mir armen Manne; ihr guten Leute; und kleine(n) Kinder.

11. The Indefinite Pronouns (see Less. XXVII) etwas, nichts, viel, are Substantives, and therefore not determinative words, and the following adjective has the strong declension, as: etwas Gutes, something good; nichts Angenehmes, nothing pleasant.

OBSERVE: The Adjective is here used as substantive, and therefore spelt with a capital.

- 12. After the Indefinite Numerals in the Plural (see Less. XXIX) alle, all; einige (etliche), some; manche, many; mehrcre, several; folche, such; viele, many; wenige, few, the Adjective may have either the weak or the strong ending.
- 13. After the interrogative welche in the plural, the strong declension is also found in the adjective; and the exclamatory welch is generally uninflected before an adjective, which then always has the strong form, as:

Welch großes Bergnügen! What (a) great pleasure!

123.	STRONG	VERBS:	imteken moger.		
		Infin.	IMPF.	P. PART.	
Germ. Mod	del :	fchießen	fchöß	geschössen	
Engl. Ana	logy:	(shoot)	shŏt	sh ŏ t	
Ablaut:		ie	ŏ	ŏ	
		LIS	S T. ·		
(ver)drießen, v	ex	•	verdroß	verdrossen	
fließen (N.), fl	ow		floß	gefloffen	

goß

gegoffen

glimmen, glow flimmen (W. N. A.), climb	glomm . flomm	geglommen geklommen
friechen (N.), creep	froch	gekrochen
genießen, enjoy riechen, smell (tr. and intr.)	genoß roch	genossen gerochen
(er)schallen (W. N.), sound, resoun l	erscholl	erschollen
saufen, drink (of beasts)	foff	gesoffen
schießen, shoot	Гфов	geschoffen
schließen, lock, shut	fcloß	geschlossen
sieden (W.), boil (intr.)	fott	gesotten
sprießen (N.), sprout	fproß	gefproffen
triefen (N.), drip	troff	getroffen

REMARKS. — 1. Observe, as under the beißen Model (§ 118, Rem. 1, 2) the doubling of consonants and the interchange of § and §; also the change of b into tt (as in leiben, schneizben, ib. Rem. 1).

- 2. Rächen, 'to avenge,' is weak but has also P. Part. gerochen.
- 3. Saufen has also fäufft, fäuft in the Pres. Indic. 2. 3. Sing.
- 4. The simple verb schallen is usually weak (schallte, geschallt).
 - 5. In sieben the weak P. Part. (gesiedet) is rare.

124. Strong Verbs: fechten Model.

	Infin.	2. 3. S. Pr. Ind. 2. S. Imper.	IMPF.	P. Part.
Germ. Model: Engl. Analogy		fictst fict fict	focht	gefochten
Ablaut:	e	i	0	0

LIST.

fecten, fight sicht, sicht focht gesochten slechten, weave, twine slichtst, flicht, flicht flocht geslochten

(er)löschen (N.), be-(erlischeft) erlischt erlosch erloschen come extinguished (erlisch) melfen (W.), milk (miltst, miltt, milt) molf gemolten quellen, gush forth (quillft, quillt, quelle) quoll aequollen schmelzen (N.), melt (schmilzest) schmilzt fdmol3 aefchmolzen (intr.) (fdmila) schwellen (N.), swell (schwillst) schwillt fdmoll geschwollen (Idwill)

REMARKS. — 1. Rare forms are enclosed in ().

- 2. The simple verb löschen, 'to extinguish' (tr.), is weak (löschte, gelöscht), as are also its separable compounds, e. g., aus löschen.
- 3. Schmelzen (intr.) has also the forms (schmelzest), schmelzt (schmelze).
- 4. Schmelzen, 'to smelt' and schwellen, 'to cause to swell' (trans.), are weak.

Vocabulary.

extinguish, put out, aus'löschen water (flowers, etc.), begießen prescribe, verschreiben flow past, vorü'berschießen close, shut, zu'schließen exhibition, die Aus'stellung health, die Gesundheit drink, beverage, das Getränk cow, die Ruh* maid, maid-servant, die Magd* mid-day, noon, der Mittag pain, der Schmerz

snow, ber Schnee
eight, acht
celebrated, famous, berühmt
blind, blind
healthy, healthful, gesund
dear, sieb
Limburg (adj.), Limburger
dead, tot
Toronto (adj.), Torontoer
thereon, daran
past, by, vorüber

Idioms: 1. To go past the house, am Saufe vorübergehen.
2. In German, auf Deutsch or im Deutschen.

EXERCISE XXIV.

- A. 1. Wie wurden Gie biefe Borter auf Deutsch schreiben? 2. Ich habe meinen Brief geschloffen und werde ihn jett nach ber Bost bringen. 3. Des Morgens steigen bie kleinen Bogel jum Simmel auf und fingen luftig. 4. Belch großes Bergnügen, gute Ge= fundheit ju genießen! 5. Gin fleiner Strom floß luftig an unferem Saufe vorüber. 6. Der Fuß bes Kranten ift geschwollen und er leibet fehr baran. 7. Unfer geehrter Brofessor ift feit acht Sahren tot. 8. Der Doftor hat bem Kranten guten, alten, roten Wein verschrieben. 9. Die Zeitungen erzählen viel von ber Torontoer Ausstellung. 10. Der Regen quoll bom Himmel und löschte bas glimmende Reuer aus. 11. Unfere Golbaten fcbloffen bie Stadt= thore und fochten tapfer gegen ben Reind. 12. Die Mägbe haben bie Rühe gemolfen und jett begießen fie die Blumen. 13. Bitte, schweigt, ihr guten Leute, benn die Kranken leiben jett große Schmerzen. 14. Burbe ber Lehrer bofe werben, wenn ber Schüler feine Aufgabe gerriffe? 15. Der Schäfer hat bem Reifenden ben Beg nach ber Stadt gewiesen. 16. Burbe es Ihnen die Reise verleiben, wenn ich gurudbliebe? 17. haben Sie bie prächtigen Blumen gefeben, die wir dem Rranten ichiden? 18. Der Schnee schmolz und das Wasser troff von den Häusern, als die Sonne gegen Mittag warm schien. 19. Der Blinde, der neben uns wohnt, flocht zwei Körbe für meine Mutter. 20. Der junge und der alte Fremde, die im Balbe jagten, haben viele Bögel ge-schossen. 21. Lon wem sind die Blumen begossen worden? Sie find bom Gartner begoffen worben.
- B. 1. The golden slipper was too small for Cinderella's sisters. 2. Paris gloves and Limburg cheese are famous everywhere. 3. The huntsman shot a hare and brought it home. 4. Our neighbours are not at home, for their doors and windows are closed. 5. I do not believe every story I hear. 6. Please, dear mother, tell us little children something new and pretty. 7. If Charles tears his new book, his mother

will be very angry. 8. He seemed not to hear what I said to him. 9. These flowers are for the patients in the hospitals. 10. (The) green is agreeable for those who have weak eyes. 11. The horse is drinking the water which we have brought him. 12. Pure fresh water is a healthful beverage. 13. A week ago I was at (in) a concert, where this singer (f.) sang. 14. When the weather becomes cold, the dogs like to creep behind the stove. 15. The travellers enjoyed the beauty of the landscape, when they were ascending the high mountain. 16. Please tell me how this word is written in German.

ORAL EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Haben Sie Ihren Brief schon geschlossen? 2. Wie lange ist Ihr geehrter Professor schon tot? 3. Was hat der Doktor der Kranken verschrieben? 4. Weshalb wurde der Lehrer böse? 5. Wer hat diese Vögel geschossen? 6. Was hat der Jäger mit dem Hasen gemacht, welchen er im Walde geschossen hat?

LESSON XXV.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. - STRONG VERBS: frieren MODEL.

125. Comparison of Adjectives.

In German, as in English, the degrees of comparison are formed by adding to the Positive:

-er to form the Comparative, and -(e)st " " Superlative, as:

neu, new neuer, newer neu(e) st, newest reich, rich reicher, richer reichst, richest angenehm, agreeable angenehmer, more agreeable angenehmst, most agreeable REMARKS. — 1. Monosyllabic adjectives with a, o, u (not au) generally take Umlaut (but with many exceptions, given in App. K.), as:

lang länger längst furz fürzer fürzest

- 2. The syllables -er, (e)ft are added to every adjective, without regard to its length, as in the case of angenehm (given above, but see § 161, note).
- 3. Adjectives used attributively in the Comparative or Superlative degree are declined, and add the usual endings after the syllables -er, -eff respectively, as:

ber reichere Mann ein reicherer Mann mein ältestes Kleid liebster Freund

4. Participles are compared like adjectives, as:

geliebt, beloved geliebter geliebtest

- 5. —e of the Superlative ending is retained only after b, t or a sibilant (f, fd, f, f, r), as: alt, Superl. älteft; but groß always has Superl. größt.
- 5. Adjectives in -e, -el, -en, -er drop e of the stem in the Comparative, as: träge, träger, trägst; ebel, ebler, ebelft.

126. THE COMPARATIVE.

- 1. 'Than' = als after the Comparative.
- 2. The compound form with mehr (Engl. 'more') is never (except with the adjectives given in § 161) used in German (as it is in Engl. with polysyllabic adjectives), unless when two adjectives (i. e., two qualities of the same object) are being compared, as:

Er ist mehr schwach als frank, He is more (i. e., rather) weak than ill. 3. Comparison of equality:

I am (just) as rich as he, Ich bin (eben) jo reich wie er.

4. 'The... the' before comparatives = je, defto or um so - je (defto or um so), as:

The longer the nights, the shorter the days, Je (besto) länger die Nächte, je (besto) fürzer die Tage.

5. When the comparative is declined, the omission of e of the stem takes place just as in Adjectives in -er, as:

ben reicher(e)n Mann, etc.

Note. — The syllable -et may occur three times successively at the end of the same adjective, viz.: 1° as part of the stem, e. g., heiser, hoarse; 2° as inflection of comparison, e. g., heiser, hoarser; 3° as ending of strong adjective declension, e. g., ein heiser singer, a hoarser singer.

127. THE SUPERLATIVE.

- 1. The Superlative is not used, even as *Predicate*, in the undeclined form, but:
- (a) If the substantive is expressed, or if the substantive of the preceding clause can be supplied, the (weak) adjective form with definite article is used, as:
 - This river is the broadest in America (i. e., the broadest river), Dieser Fluß ist der breiteste in Amerika (ber breiteste Fluß).
 - The days in June are the longest (days) in the whole year, Die Tage im Juni sind die längsten (Tage, understood) im ganzen Jahre.
 - This earthquake was the most severe that we have had, Dieses Erdbeben ist das heftigste, welches wir gehabt haben.

(b) If no substantive can be supplied, the adverbial form preceded by am is used, as:

The lake is broader than the river, but the sea is the broadest (observe not 'the broadest lake, river or sea'), Der See ist breiter als der Fluß, aber die See ist am breitesten.

The days are longest (i. e., 'at the longest,' not 'the longest days') in June, Im Juni sind die Tage am längsten.

The earthquake was most severe on Monday, Am Wontag war bas Erbbeben am heftigsten (not 'the severest earthquake').

NOTE - The superlative may be strengthened by prefixing aller-, as: bas allerheftigste, am allerheftigsten.

2. In the preceding examples, the superlative ascribes a quality to the object in the highest degree in comparison (expressed or implied) with, or relatively to, a number of other objects, and is hence called the Relative Superlative. But the English superlative with most often merely ascribes the quality in an eminently high degree, without instituting any comparison. When so used, it is called the Absolute Superlative, as:

Your father was most kind (i. e. = 'exceedingly kind,' not = 'kindest')

The Absolute Superlative is rendered in German by an adverb of eminence, such as fehr, very; hödift, äußerft, exceedingly, prefixed to the adjective in the positive, as:

The Bater war sehr (höchst, äußerst) gütig,
Your father was most (very, exceedingly, extremely)
kind.

3. The superlative is commonly used in German of two objects (which is not admissible in Engl.), as:

Der (größere or) größte von diesen zwei Knaben, The taller of these two boys.

128. COMPARISON OF ADVERES.

Adverbs are compared like adjectives, the superlative form being that with am, as:

angenehm, agreeably angenehmer, more agreeably am angenehmften, most agreeably

129. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

gut, good **besser besser** (different root)
hoch, high höher höchst (drops e in *Compar*.)
näher nähst (nearest, next; inserts e in *Superl*.)

weig, much mehr meist (different root)
wenig, little (of quantity) minder mindest (different root)

Notes.—1. Mehr is used as adverb of quantity only. For the Subst. mehreres, Pl. mehrere 'some, several,' see §§ 152, 175.

2. Benig also has the regular forms weniger, wenigst.

130. DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

(innen, within, adv.)

The following Comparatives and Superlatives are formed from adverbs, etc. (some of which are obsolete):

(außen, without, adv.) äußer, outer äußerst, outermost utmost, extreme (ehe, before, conj.) (eher, sooner, adv.) $\begin{cases} ehest, soonest \\ erst, sirst \end{cases}$ (hinten, behind, adv.) hinter, hinder hinterst, hindmost

inner, inner

innerst, innermost

(laß, late, obsolete) (mittel, middle) (nib, below, obsolete) (oben, above, adv.) (unten, below, adv.)	mittler, middle nieber, lower ober, upper unter, lower	legt, latest, last mittelft, middle niederft, lowest oberft, uppermost unterft, lowest,
(porn, before, adv.)	porder, fore	undermost vorberst, foremost

131. STRONG VERBS: frieren Model.

	Infin.	IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	frieren	frör	gefrören
Engl. Analogy:	freeze	frōze	frözen
Ablaut:	ie, etc.	õ	ō

NOTE. — The long o is what distinguishes this Model from the schießen Model (§ 123).

LIST.

A. (Infin. ie, ü.)

biegen, bend	bog	gebogen
bieten, bid, offer	bot	geboten
fliegen (N.), fly (on wings)	flog	geflogen
fliehen (N.), flee (escape)	floh	geflohen
frieren (N. A.), freeze, be cold	fror	gefroren
heben, lift, raise	hob, hub	gehoben
(er)fiesen, (er)füren, choose	erfor	erforen
lügen, lie (tell a falsehood)	log	gelogen
(ver)lieren, lose	verlor	verloren
schieben, shove, push	fchob	geschoben
schwören, swear	schwor, schwur	geschworen
(be) trügen, deceive, cheat	betrog	betrogen
wiegen, weigh, have weight (intr.)	wog	gewogen
ziehen (N. A.), pull (tr.); move (intr.)	30 g	gezogen

REMARKS. — 1. Biegen, bieten, fliegen, fliehen, ziehen, have also the forms (now used only in poetry) with eu for ie in the

- 2. and 3. Sing. Pres. Ind. and 2. Sing. Imper., as: benoft, beugt, beng ; fleuchft, fleuch ; zeuchft, zeuch.
 - 2. Wiegen, to rock, is weak (wiegte, gewiegt).
 - 3. Observe the change of h into q in ziehen, zog, gezogen.

B. (INFIN. c, a.)

scheren, shear	fd)or	geschoren
weben (W.), weave	wob	gewoben
mägen, weigh (trans.)	wog	gewogen
(be) wegen, induce, persuade	bewog	bewogen

REMARK. - Bewegen, 'to move (set in motion)' is weak (bewegte, bewegt).

VOCABULARY.

to offer, an'bieten metal, bas Metall' abolish, annul, cancel, auf'= heben put off, delay, postpone, auf'= Schieben remove (neut.), aus'ziehen prefer, por'ziehen (dat. of pers.) deshalb fly away, weg'fliegen roof, das Dach colour, die Farbe hunger, der Hunger cook, der Roch *

red (subst.), das Rot sparrow, ber Sperling part, portion, der Teil shore, bank, bas Ufer on that account, therefore, yet, still (in spite of all), both

straight, gerabe (adj.) exactly, just, gerade (adv.) as soon as, sobald

Idioms : 1. I prefer gold to silver, Ich giehe bas Gold bem Gilber vor. 2. I like the winter in Canada, 3ch habe ben Binter in Canada gern.

EXERCISE XXV.

A. 1. Gin Sperling in ber Sand ift beffer als zwei auf bem Dache. 2. Marie ist junger als Louise, aber sie ist doch größer.

- 3. Sunger ift ber beste Roch. 4. Der junge General B. ift ein tapfrerer Selb als fein Bater. 5. Die Reifenden ichoben bas Boot vom Ufer und ruderten über den Fluß. 6. Aufgeschoben ift nicht aufgehoben. 7. Welches von biefen Mabchen ift bas größte? 8. Je hober ein Bogel fliegt, je fleiner icheint er zu werben. 9. Der Frembe hat mir mehr für mein Saus angeboten als Sie, aber ich glaube nicht, daß er fo gut bezahlen wurde. 10. Je fleißiger wir find, besto mehr lernen wir. 11. Im Commer habe ich bas Land gang gern, aber im Winter ziehe ich bie Stadt vor. 12. Mir Un= gludlichen ift ber Fuß erfroren, als ich nach haufe ritt. 13. Gobald wir unfer haus vertauft hatten, zogen wir aus. 14. Als ich auf bem Lande war, wog ich mehr als ich jett wiege. 15. Es ist wahr, bag bie reichsten Leute nicht immer bie gludlichften find. 16. Der Regen, welcher uns die Reise verleidet hat, war mehr nütlich als angenehm. 17. Die Mutter hob die Stude von bem Glas auf, welches ihr unartiges Rind auf die Erbe geschmiffen batte. 18. Diefer Anabe hat feine Eltern betrogen, und beshalb ift er ungludlich. 19. Frieren Sie, Berr Brofeffor? Sett nicht, aber ich fror, als ich auf ber Strafe war. 20. Der Jäger hat ben Bogel geschoffen, gerade als fer auf ben Baum flog. 21. Bon wem wurde Ihr Haus gekauft? 22. Bon einem Fremben, ber feit vierzehn Tagen bei meinem Better auf Besuch ift.
- B. 1. Lead is a heavy metal, but gold is the heaviest.

 2. This painter is not so famous as his father, but his pictures are just as fine.

 3. George lost his parents when he was still very young.

 4. Those students have lost a great deal of time, but now they are studying more industriously.

 5. The bird flew away, just as the huntsman was on the point of shooting it.

 6. When is the weather coldest in Canada? In the month of January it is coldest.

 7. Which bird flies fastest?

 8. The useful is better than the beautiful.

 9. What kind of a dog has the huntsman lost?

 10. Iron is heavy, lead

is heavier, but gold is heaviest of all. 11. Green is a more agreeable colour for the eyes than red. 12. If the stick is too long, cut a piece of it off. 13. The upper part of the city of Quebec is much finer than the lower. 14. The weather seems to be warmer to-day, but it froze (perf.) yesterday. 15. When I was younger, I weighed more than my brother, but now he weighs more than I. 16. The upper part of the city of Quebec was built earlier than the lower part.

ORAL EXERCISE XXV.

1. Ist der junge General ein tapferer Mann? 2. Ziehen Sie das Land der Stadt vor? 3. Weshalb ist der Knabe so traurig? 4. Wann hat der Jäger den Vogel geschossen? 5. Welche Studenten lernen am meisten? 6. Welches ist besser, reich und unglücklich oder arm und glücklich (zu) sein?

LESSON XXVI.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. - STRONG VERBS: fingen MODEL.

132. Demonstrative Pronouns.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are:

- 1. ber, die, bas, that
- 2. diefer, diefe, diefes, this, that
- 3. jener, jene, jenes, that, yonder
- 4. berjenige, biejenige, basjenige, that
- 5. ber nämliche, die nämliche, bas nämliche, the same
- 6. berfelb(ig)e, biefelb(ig)e, basfelb(ige), the same

7. fold(er), fold(e), fold(es), such, such a

8. desgleichen, bergleichen, of that kind (of those kinds)

REMARK. — These may all be used either as Substantive or Adjective Pronouns, except besgleichen (see § 139, 1, below).

133. 1. Der, bie, bas, used adjectively (i. e., before a substantive), is declined like the Definite Article (which is merely the demonstrative adjective weakened and unemphasized), as:

Der' Mann, that man. Der Mann', the man'.

2. When used substantively it is declined thus:

-	Singular.			Plural.	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.	
Nom.	ber	die	. bas	die	
Gen.	beffen	beren	beffen	berer (beren)	
Dat.	bem	ber	bem	benen	
Acc.	ben	die	bas	die	

Note. - The form beren (Gen. Pl.) is only used as = 'of them,' as:

How many children have you? I have seven of them. Bie viele Kinder haben Sie? Ich habe beren sieben.

134. Dieser and jener both follow the bieser Model (see § 6), but bies is used for bieses in the Neuter Nom. and Acc. Sing. when used substantively, as:

Dies ist mein Buch, Er hatte dies nicht gehört, This is my book. He had not heard this.

bitier = this (the *nearer* of two objects, hence also =) the former;

jener = that, yonder (the more remote of two objects, hence also =) the latter, as:

Dieser Baum ist groß, aber jener ist größer, This tree is large, but that (one) is larger. Jener Baum, yonder tree (pointed out as remote).

Rarl und Wilhelm sind Brüder; bieser ist sleißig, jener ist träge, Charles and William are brothers; the latter is diligent, the former is idle.

135. 1. Derjenige is declined in both parts, like the Definite Article followed by the adjective form jenig with weak endings, thus:

	Singular.		Plural.
masc. derjenige desjenigen	FEM. die jenige ber jenigen	neuter. daßjenige deßjenigen	all genders. diejenigen derjenigen
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

2. Der or berjenige is used :

(a) before a genitive case, as:

Ich have your hat and that of your brother (your brother's);

NOTE. — The demonstrative may also be omitted in this construction, as in English; or the simple ber may be used.

(b) before a relative clause, as:

Der(jenige), welcher zufrieden ist, ist glücklich, He who is contented, is happy.

Die(jenige) Frau ist am schönsten, welche gut ist, That woman is most beautiful, who is good.

Ihr Haus und das (jenige), worin wir wohnen, Your house and that in which we live.

NOTE.—In sentences like the first, where ber(jenige) is used substantively, the demonstrative and relative together may be replaced by the compound relative mer, thus:

Ber zufrieden ift, ift glüdlich.

136. Derselbe (berselbige) = 'the same,' as: the same hat, berselbe Hut; and is declined like bersenige, in two parts, written as one word, thus:

	Singular.		Plural.
masc. berfelbe besfelben etc.	bieselbe berselben etc.	neuter. basselbe besselben etc.	all genders. bieselben berselben etc.

(For examples of its use see § 143, 2-4, below).

NOTE. — Selbig is sometimes used without article, with strong endings: felbiger, -e, -es.

- 137. Der nämliche sometimes replaces berfelbe.
- 138. 1. Colh, when used alone, follows the dieser Model, as: solcher Bein, such wine; solches Brot, such bread.
- 2. After ein, it follows the mixed declension of adjectives, as:

Nom. ein solcher Bein, such a wine Gen. eines solchen Beines, of such a wine, etc.

3. Before ein, folch is always, and before an adjective, generally, uninflected, as:

Sold ein Bein; fold guter Bein, or folder gute Bein.

NOTE. — The adjective has the *strong* endings when fold is uninflected, otherwise it has the *weak* endings, except in the plur., where it sometimes has the *strong*.

2. Sold with ein is often replaced by fo, as:

Co ein Bein ; ein fo guter Bein.

139. 1. Desgleichen is used as an indeclinable neuter substantive (never as adjective), thus:

Ich hatte besgleichen nie gehört,

I had never heard that sort of thing (anything of that kind).

Note. — Desgleichen is also used adverbially, = 'in the same way, also.'

2. Dergleichen is used both substantively (referring to a fem. or plur. noun) and adjectively. In the latter case it is invariable, standing before substantives of any gender and number, as:

Dergleichen Wein, Dergleichen Weine, Wine of that sort.

Note. - The phrase: und dergleichen mehr (abbrev. u. dgl. m.) is used for und so weiter (u. s. w.) = et cætera.

GENERAL REMARKS ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

140. The English 'that' is rendered in German:

- 1. As Demonstrative Pronoun:
 - (a) Most generally by ber or birjer, when there is no contrast with any other object, thus:

That man, ber' Mann or biefer Mann.

- (b) By ber or berjenige before a genitive case or a relative clause (see § 135, 2, above).
- (c) By jener, when the object is distinctly pointed out as remote (= yon, yonder), or as more remote than another, thus:

Jener Baum, That tree (over yonder). Dieses Haus und jenes, This house and that one.

- 2. As Relative by der or welcher (see § 95), thus:
 The book that I have, Das Buch, das (welches) ich habe.
- 3. As Conjunction by daß, thus:

 I shall tell your father that you are diligent,
 I werde beinem Bater sagen, daß du fleißig bist.
- 141. The neuter pronouns bas, bicf(cs), jenes are used (like cs, see § 39, 1, and welffes, § 82, Rem. 2) before the verb

'to be,' representing the real subject, which follows the verb, and with which the verb agrees, as:

Das ist mein Bruber, That is my brother. Dies (es) ist Ihre Schwester, This is your sister. Zenes find seine Bücher, Those are his books.

142. Der and jener, when referring to inanimate objects, are often replaced by the adverb ba(r), 'there,' before prepositions (compare § 38, Rem. 5) and diefer by hier, as:

I have nothing to do with that (therewith). Giermit muß ich schließen,
With this (herewith) I must close.

Note. — This substitution is not made before a relative, as: I was thinking of that which (what) you were saying.

143. Use of Demonstratives to replace Personal Pronouns.

1. The neuter gen. beffen replaces that of the neuter pers. pron. (feiner) referring to things, as:

I do not recollect it (seiner = him, of him).

2. The genitive of ber and that of berfelbe are frequently used to replace the possessive adjective of the 3. person, in order to avoid ambiguity, as:

Der Graf war mit feinem (bes Grafen) Jäger und beffen (bes Jägers) Hunden (or mit den Hunden besfelben) auf der Jagd, The Count was at the hunt with his (the Count's) huntsman and his (the huntsman's) dogs.

Note. - Mit feinen hunden would mean 'with the Count's dogs.'

3. Derfelbe is used in other cases also to prevent ambiguity (also **diefer** in the same way), as:

P. PART.

- Mein Bruder ist bei meinem Freunde, und derselbe (or dieser) achtet ihn sehr; or: er (mein Bruder) achtet denselben sehr, My brother is at my friend's, and he (the latter, the friend) esteems him (my brother) very much; or: he (my brother) esteems him (my friend) very much.
- 4. Derselbe also replaces the personal pronouns, to prevent repetitions like ihn Ihnen, Sie sie, etc., as:

Dieser Wein ist gut, ich kann Ihnen benselben (for ihn Ihnen) empsehlen, This wine is good, I can recommend it to you.

IMPF.

144.	STRONG VERBS:	fingen	Model.
------	---------------	--------	--------

INFIN.

Germ. Model:	jingen	ang	gefungen
Engl. Analogy:	sĭng	s ă ng	sŭng
Ablaut:	ĭ	ă	ŭ
	LIST		- 3
binden, bind		band	gebunden
bringen (N.), press		brang	gedrungen
finden, find		fand	gefunden
flingen, ring, sound		flang	geklungen
(ge)lingen (N.), succeed with dat. of pers.)	d (impers.,	gelang	gelungen
ringen, wring (the hand	s, etc.)	rang	gerungen
schlingen, twine; swallo		schlang	geschlungen
schwinden (N.), vanish		schwand	geschwunden
schwingen, swing		schwang	geschwungen
fingen, sing		fang	gefungen
finken, sink		fank	gefunken
springen (N. A.), sprin	g, leap	fprang .	gesprungen
trinten, drink (of hum:	an beings)	trank	getrunken
winden, wind		wanb	gewunben
mingen; force		zwang	gezwungen

VOCABULARY.

to press in, penetrate, ein's escape, entfliehen [bringen invent, erfinden remember, fich erinnern (+gen. of thing) drown, be drowned, ertrinfen spring upon, log'springen (auf + acc.) mean, suppose, meinen oblige, verbinden vanish, verschwinden

on board, am Bord grammar, die Gramma'tik dealer, der Händler lion, der Löwe diver, der Taucher telephone, das Telephon' clever, geschickt prudent, cautious, vor'sichtig unfortunately, leider below, unterhalb (+ gen.) never yet, noch nie

EXERCISE XXVI.

A. 1. Dies ist mein Better aus Montreal; fennen Sie ibn? 2. Sawohl, biefen kenne ich gang gut, aber nicht ben, ber mir geftern ben Brief gebracht hat. 3. Gin bofer Knabe ichwang fich auf ben Apfelbaum im Garten feines Nachbars und ichmiß bie Apfel auf die Erbe. 4. In biefem Relbe haben bie Bauern ichon bas Gras geschnitten, aber in jenem werben fie es erst morgen schneiben. 5. "Liebet bie, die euch haffen." 6. Jenes find meine Sunde, aber dies find diejenigen, welche ber Jäger vor acht Tagen verloren hat, und die ich gefunden habe. 7. Erinnern Sie fich beffen, was ich Ihnen vom alten Schloß am Ufer bes Sees erzählt habe ? 8. Dem wurde ich keinen Thaler leiben; ber wurde nie bezahlen. 9. Die Schäfer trieben ihre Berben über benfelben Berg auf welchen wir 10. Der Reifende ftieg vom Pferbe und band basfelbe an einen kleinen Baum. 11. Das Schiff ftieß an einen Felsen, bas Baffer drang ein, und das Schiff fank. 12. 3ch habe mich befliffen, Latein zu lernen, aber es ist mir nicht gelungen. 13. Der Löwe war gerade im Begriffe auf den Reisenden loszuspringen, als ber Jäger ihn ichof. 14. Rennen Gie Berrn Bell? Welchen Berrn Bell meinen Sie? 15. Denjenigen, ber bas Telephon erfunden

- hat. 16. Was ist aus meiner deutschen Grammatik geworden? Sie scheint ganz verschwunden zu sein. 17. Das sind schöne Erdbeeren; wo haben Sie dieselben gekauft? 18. Sie sind schön, nicht wahr? Solch prächtige Beeren sinden Sie nicht bei jedem Händler. 19. So heißes Wetter haben wir noch nicht gehabt. 20. Was wurde dir geantwortet, als du nach dem Kranken frageteft? 21. Man sagte mir, er sei ein wenig besser.
- B. 1. The patient is just as weak to-day as he was yesterday. 2. Such happy days I have never yet passed! 3. Where do you generally pass the winter? 4. Where is my pen? Have you found it? 5. This is my neighbour of whom you have already heard so much. 6. The ship has sunk, and the people who were on board have been drowned. 7. I was looking for my coat, but found my father's. 8. I should be very much obliged to you, if you sang me a beautiful song. 9. Which is poorer, he who has no money, or he who has no friends? 10. How should we escape if the boat sank? 11. Charles has already finished (the) learning (of) his lesson; he is cleverer than I thought. 12. The diver that jumped from the bridge has unfortunately been drowned. 13. It will have been a good lesson for us, if it makes us more prudent in future. 14. Is that a new song? No, it is the same that I sang a week ago at your house. 15. The St. Lawrence River is the broadest in Canada; below the city of Ouebec it is broadest. 16. The patient is better to-day; he will be allowed to go out to-morrow.

ORAL EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Was ist aus dem Taucher geworden? 2. Ist Karl geschickter als Johann? 3. Was hat der böse Knabe gemacht? 4. Ist der Reisende dem Löwen entflohen? 5. Ist es Ihnen gelungen, Latein zu lernen? 6. Wessen Hunde sind das?

LESSON XXVII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. - STRONG VERBS: Spinnen AND helfen MODELS:

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. 145.

The Indefinite Pronouns are:

(a) Substantive:

1. man (indecl.), one, they, people (Fr. on)

2. jebermann, everybody, everyone

(somebody, anybody 3. jemanb. some one, any one

4. niemand, { nobody, no one, no person not anybody, etc.

5. etwas, something, anything

6. nifits, nothing, not anything

7. einer, one, some one

(biefer Model) persons 8. feiner, no one, none and things

(b) Adjective (also used substantively):

1. einige, etliche (plur.), some, a few, several

2. jeb(web)er (jeglicher), each (one), every

3. mander, many (a one)

4. mehrere (pl.), several 5. biel, much, pl. biele, many

6. wenig, little, pl. wenige, few

7. welcher, some

(biefer Model) persons and things

of persons

only

of things

only

REMARK. — The Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives are also used as Indefinite Numeral Adjectives (see Less. XXIX).

146. Man (spelt with small letter and one n, to distinguish it from her Mann, the man, from which it is derived) is the Indefinite Personal Pronoun, and is used to make a statement without specifying any particular person. It is equivalent to Engl. 'one, they, we, you (indef.), people,' etc., (French on), or to the impersonal use of the passive voice, as:

Man sagt, One says; they, people say; or it is said. Man kann Öl und Wasser nicht zusammen mischen, One (we, you) cannot mix oil and water.

REMARKS.—1. One's self (refl.) = fith; one's = fein (poss. adj.), as:

Man schämt sich seiner Fehler, One is ashamed of one's faults.

- 2. Man cannot be replaced by any other pronoun, as:

 Man wirb mübe, wenn man (not er) zu lange arbeitet,

 A man (one) gets tired, when he works too long.
- 147. Sebermann is used in the Sing. only; it takes in Gen., but is otherwise uninflected, as:

Jebermanns Sache ist niemandes Sache, Everybody's business is nobody's business.

Die Bibel ist ein Buch für jedermann (acc.), The Bible is a book for everybody.

148. 3emand and its negative niemand are used in the Sing. only, and are declined thus:

Nom. jemanb
Gen. jemanbes

Dat. { jemanbem
 jemanb(en)

Acc. jemanb(en)

niemanb(en)

niemanb(en)

Note. — The uninflected forms are preferable for the Dat. and Acc., as: Wir haben niemand (acc.) getadelt, We have blamed nobody. Berben Sie es jemand (dat.) sagen? Shall you tell it to anybody?

149. 1. Etwas is sometimes abbreviated to was, as:

Ich will bir was fagen, I will tell you something.

- 2. After etwas and nights, an adjective has the strong neuter ending -es (see § 122, Rem. 11, above).
- 3. Etwas and nints are also used as Indefinite Numerals (see Less. XXIX, § 168).

150. Giner (biefer Model), 'one, some one, any one,' is used:

- 1. In the Nom. Sing. Masc. = man.
- 2. To supply the missing cases of man, as:

 68 thut einem (dat.) leid, von seinen Freunden zu scheiben.

 One is sorry to part from one's friends.
- 3. Before a substantive, as:

 Giner meiner Freunde (von meinen Freunden),
 One of my friends.

 Gin(c)s von diesen Büchern, One of these books.
- 4. To represent a preceding substantive, as:
 Saben Sie ein Buch? Ja, ich habe ein (e) &,
 Have you a book? Yes, I have one.

Note.—The e may be dropped in the ending of the Nom. and Acc. Neut.

151. Reiner (biefer Model) is the negative of einer, and

- is used:
 - 2. Before a substantive, as:

 Reiner von meinen Freunden,

 None (not one) of my friends.

1. As equivalent to niemand.

3. To represent a preceding substantive, as : Haben Sie ein Buch? Nein, ich habe tein (e) &. Note. — Like einer, it may drop e in the Nom. and Acc. Neuter

- 152. Ginige (etliche), mehrere, = 'some, a few, several,' as: Einige von meinen Freunden, Some (a few) of my friends. Mehrere dieser Bücher, Several of these books.
- 153. Reder, jedweber, jeglicher (biefer Model) or ein jeber, etc. (def. art. + adj. with mixed declension) are used. especially in the Masc., for jedermann, as:

Die Bibel ift ein Buch für jeben.

(Gin) jeber ift feines Bludes Schmieb,

Every man (one) is the architect (lit. smith) of his own fortune.

154. Manther, 'many a one, many a person' (biefer Model), is used to express indefinite plurality, as:

Mancher benft, Many a one (person) thinks.

Melder (biefer Model) is used for 'some,' referring to a preceding substantive, as:

Saben Sie Brot? Sa, ich habe welches.

- For viel and menia see Less. XXIX, § 176.
- 157. When the Engl. 'anybody, anyone, anything,' = 'anybody, etc., at all' (indefinite and general), they are rendered by irgend jemand, irgend einer, irgend etwas, as:

Anybody (at all) will tell you, where I live, Grgend jemand (or einer) wird Ihnen fagen, wo ich wohne. 3ch bin mit irgend etwas gufrieben,

I am contented with anything (at all).

STRONG VERBS: spinnen Model. 158. INFIN. P. PART. IMPF. fpinnen : fpann . gefponnen Germ. Model: Engl. Analogy: spin

(incomplete)

Ablaut:

spăn

(spun)

LIST.

(NOTE The Impf. Subj. occurring.)	is also giv	en, on accoun	t of variations
(be)ginnen, begin rinnen (N.), flow	begann rann	beg ö nne ränne	begonnen geronnen
schwimmen (N. A.), swim	fc)wamm	fchwämme fchwömme	geschwommen
finnen, think	fann	fänne	gesonnen
spinnen, spin	[pann	fpänne fpönne	gesponnen
(ge)winnen, win, gain	gewann	gewänne gewönne	gewonnen

Note. — Observe the subjunctive forms with vowel of P. Part. + Umlaut, instead of vowel of Impf. Ind.

159. Strong Verbs: helfen Model.

INFIN. Pr. Ind. 2. 3. Sing. IMPF. SUBJ. P. PART.

Germ. Model: helfen hilfft, hilft, hilf half hulfe gehölfen Engl. Analogy : wanting.

Ablaut: e i ğ ä, ö or ii ğ

LIST.

	2.0.			
(NOTE. — The 2 also given.)	. 3. sing. Pres. Ind., 2.	sing. Impe	er., and Im	pf. Subj. are
bergen, hide	birgft, birgt, birg	barg	bärge	geborgen
berften (N.),		(härfte)	
burst	(birftest, birft, birft)	barft {	börste }	geborsten
(ver)berben (N.), spoil (intr.)	verdirbst, etc.	- verbarb	verdürbe	verborben
breschen, thrash	brischest, etc.	{ brasch } brosch	dräsche)	gedroschen
	1,7,17	(drojd)	drojche)	
gelten, be worth	giltst, gilt, gilt	galt .	gälte	gegolten

half hülfe geholfen helfen, help hilfft, etc. **f**dalt schälte gescholten schiltst, schilt, schilt schelten, scold ftarb ftürbe geftorben fterben, (N.), die ftirbft, etc. mürbe aeworben merben, woo wirbst, etc. marb werben (N.), be-(ward wirft, wird, werde geworden mürbe murbe come werfen, throw wirfit, etc. marf würfe geworfen

REMARKS.— 1. Most of these verbs have $\ddot{\mathbf{n}}$ or $\ddot{\mathbf{u}}$ in the Impf. Subj. instead of $\ddot{\mathbf{n}}$, which cannot be distinguished in sound from the \mathbf{r} of the Pres. Ind.; thus sterbe and starbe would sound alike.

- 2. Berberben, when trans., is both strong and weak (versberbte, verberbt).
 - 3. Werden has ward or wurde in the sing.; wurden only in the plur. (see § 19).
 - 4. The Imperative never has the final -e in these verbs, except werde.
 - 5. Observe the omission of (e)t of 3. sing: Pres. Ind. in the verbs with stem in -t, -b.

VOCABULARY.

to be or do (of health), sich befinden reflect, deliberate, sich besinnen accomplish, leisten remain over, be lest, ü'brig bleiben hide, conceal, verbergen requite, reward, vergelten complete, sinish, vollen'ben throw away, weg'wersen

run away, vanish, zerrinnen the conduct, das Betragen poet, der Dichter barley, die Gerste oats, der Hafre sailor, der Matrose musician, der Musiter need, necessity; die Not* dove, pigeon, die Taube plate, der Teller loss, der Berlust* embarrassment, perplexity, bie Berle'genheit wheat, ber Beizen evil, böse thereto, bazu' no longer, nicht mehr as, wie

Idiom: I like the country, 36 bin ein Freund vom Lande.

EXERCISE XXVII.

- A. 1. Ber zu viel rebet, leiftet wenig. 2. Derjenige, welcher ju viel rebet, leiftet wenig. 3. Dies find meine Schuhe, aber jenes find (bie) Ihre(n). 4. Wer jedermanns Freund ift, ift niemandes Freund. 5. Gin guter Chrift vergilt Bofes mit Gutem. 6. Es ift fo eben jemand hier gewefen. 7. Welches von biefen Ban= bern gieben Sie vor, bas rote ober bas blaue? 8. Wen fuchft bu? 3d fuche bie arme Familie, beren Bater geftorben ift. 9. Saben Sie ichon Ihren Beigen gebrofchen? Man brifcht heute ben Safer und die Gerfte, aber man wird erft morgen ben Beigen brefchen. 10. Es ift ein Berluft für bas ganze Land, wenn ein großer und guter Mann ftirbt. 11. Der große Knabe ichamt fich feines Betragens und beshalb verbirgt er fein Geficht. 12. "Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen," das ift, man verliert leicht, was man leicht gewinnt. 13. Die Erdbeeren, welche ich geftern faufte, find verborben. 14. Man hilft gern einem, der fich felbst hilft. Siermit fcide ich Ihnen bas Gelb, welches Sie fo freundlich gewesen find, mir ju leihen. 16. Sind Sie ein Freund bom Schwimmen? Jest nicht mehr, aber ich schwamm gern, als ich junger war. 17. Der Ungludliche befann fich lange, schritt aber endlich an ben Rand bes Bootes und fprang ins Waffer. 18. Ift er ertrunken? Nein, er murbe von den Matrofen gerettet.
- B. 1. Good morning, Mr. Bell, how are you to-day? 2. Have you any money? Yes, to be sure, I have some, but not enough for my journey. 3. Where is the tree to which the traveller tied his horse? 4. People take cold easily when they are tired. 5. Schiller and Beethoven were Germans, the

latter was a great musician, the former a great poet. 6. Mr. A. is a lazy man; he would not work at all, if necessity did not force him to it. 7. We found the money we lost a week ago. 8. Many a one begins what he will never finish. 9. Mary, my child, throw that apple away; it is spoilt. 10. Have you shot many pigeons? We have shot only a few. 11. Except my brother and me nobody is at home. 12. The mother is scolding, because her naughty child has thrown a plate upon the ground. 13. Where is the River St. Lawrence broadest? 14. When the children had drunk, the cat drank the milk which remained over (was left). 15. The women on (an) the shore screamed and wrung their hands, when the boat sank in which their husbands were. 16. Has the money which was lost been found?

ORAL EXERCISE XXVII.

Wann wird man den Hafer dreschen?
 Warum verbirgt der böse Knabe sein Gesicht?
 Wem hilft man gern?
 Sind Sie ein Freund vom Jagen?
 Was für ein Mann ist Herr Bell?
 Weshalb schilt die Frau?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON D.

ON CERTAIN ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.

160. ADJECTIVES USED AS ATTRIBUTES ONLY.

The following classes of adjectives are not used as predicates:

1. Derivatives in -en, -ern (denoting material), as; goiden, of gold, golden; filbern, of silver. These are replaced in the predicate by the substantive with von, as:

Diese Ilhr ift non Gilber, This watch is of silver.

- 2. Many in -ift and -lit, as: biebifd, thievish; tierift, bestial; heutje serift, hypocritical; täglith, daily; jährlith, annual; wirflith, actual, real.
- 3. Those in -ig from adverbs of time and place, as: heutig, of to-day; hiefig, of this place.

161. ADJECTIVES USED AS PREDICATES ONLY.

The following classes of adjectives are not used as attributes:

- 1. Those that are really nouns (though spelt with a small letter), such as: angst, afraid; seind, hostile; freund, friendly; seid, sorry; not, needful; niite, useful; shuid, guilty.
 - 2. The following among others:

bereit, ready
eingebent, mindful
gewahr, aware
gar, cooked, done (of food)
gram, averse
gang und gäbe, current (of money, etc.)
irre, astray, wrong
teilhaft, partaking

NOTE. — Both these classes of adjectives are incapable of comparison in the ordinary way, and form the comparative and superlative by prefixing mehr and am meisten respectively, as:

Er murbe meinem Bruber immer mehr gram, He grew more and more averse to my brother.

Das that mir am meiften leib, I was most sorry for that (relative superl.).

162. REMARKS ON CERTAIN PRONOUNS.

1. The pronouns wer, was are frequently followed by the demonstrative ber in the after clause, and always so when the latter (the seeming antecedent) is in a different case from that of the relative, as:

Wer hat, dem wird gegeben, To him that hath shall be (is) given.

2. The neuter pronouns e8, ba8, wa8, jebe8, alle8 are often used in the Nom. and Acc. Sing. in reference to a *number* of persons or things, especially if of different gender, as:

Männer, Beiber, Kinder, alles schrie um Hilse, so laut es konnte, Men, women, children, all cried for help as loud as they could; Früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will,

Those practice early, who would become masters.

NOTE. - Observe that the verb is singular.

3. Was is sometimes used for warum? ('why?'), as:

Was weinst bu? Why dost thou weep?

4. The relative adverb wie ('as') after fold ein or so ein ('such a') is usually followed by a personal pronoun, agreeing in gender and number with the antecedent, as:

Sold (so) ein Mann, (or ein Mann) wie wir ihn nie gekannt hatten, Such a man as we had never known.

Note. - The demonstrative fold or fo is often omitted, as indicated in the above example.

LESSON XXVIII.

NUMERALS: CARDINALS AND ORDINALS. - STRONG VERBS:

ipredjen model.

NUMERALS.

163. Cardinals.	164. Ordinals.
1. eins; ein(er), -e, -(es)	1st. der erste
2. zwei	2nd. " zweite
3. brei	3rd. " dritte
4. vier	4th. " vierte
5. fünf	5th. " fünfte
6. fechs	6th. " sechste
7. sieben	7th. " siebente
8. acht	8th. "achte
9. neun	9th. " neunte
10. zehn	10th " zehnte
11. elf	11th. " elfte
12. zwölf	12th. "zwölfte
13. dreizehn	13th. " breizehnte
14. vierzehn	14th. " vierzehnte
15. fünfzehn or funfzehn	15th. " funf= or fünfzehnte
16. fechzehn	16th. " sechzehnte
17. fiebzehn	17th. " fiebzehnte
18. achtzehn	18th. " achtzehnte
19. neunzehn	19th. " neunzehnte
20. zwanzig	20th. "zwanzigste
21. ein und zwanzig	21st. " ein und zwanzigste
22. zwei und zwanzig	22nd. " zwei und zwanzigste
30. breißig	30th. " breißigste
40. vierzig	40th. " vierzigste
50. funfzig or fünfzig	50th. " funfzigste or fünf= zigste

60.	fефзід	60th.	ber	sechzigste
70.	fieb(en)zig	70th.	"	fieb(en)zigste
80.	achtzig	80th.	,,	achtzigste
90.	neunzig	90th.	'n	neunzigste
100.	hundert	100th.	"	hundertste
101.	hundert (und) eins	101st.	"	hundert und erfte
123.	hundert (und) drei und zwanzig	123rd.	ń	hundert (und) drei und zwanzigste

Cardinals.

200. zwei hundert

300. brei hundert

1000. taufenb

1001. taufend und eins

1036. taufend (und) fechs und breißig

1887. { taufend (und) acht hundert (und) sieben und achtzig or achtzehnhundert sieben und achtzig

10,000. zehn tausend

100,000. hunbert taufend

1,000,000, eine Million'

2,567,849. zwei Millionen, fünf hundert (und) sieben und fechzig tausend, acht hundert (und) neun und vierzig.

Interrogative Ordinal: ber mienielste? which (in order)? what day of the month? (See § 166, 3, Note 2).

165. REMARKS ON THE CARDINAL NUMERALS.

- 1. Gin only is declined throughout, thus:
 - (a) Before a substantive after the mein Model (§ 8), like the Indefinite Article, which is the same word unemphasized, as:

Gin' Mann, one man; ein Mann', a man.

NOTE. — The numeral till is sometimes printed with a capital, or spaced out (= Engl. italics) to distinguish it from the Article, as:

Wir haben Gin' (ein) Buch, We have one book. Wir haben ein Buch', We have a book.

(b) Used substantively (see also § 150, above) without article, after biefer Model (§ 6), as:

Einer von meinen Freunden, One of my friends. Unser einer, One of us (of our sort).

(c) After an article or other determinative word, like an adjective, as:

Der eine Bruder, The one brother. Mein einer Schuh, (The) one of my shoes.

Note. — With the definite article it may be used substantively also, as:

Der eine und der andere, (The) one and the other; and even in the plural (= some, one party), as:

Die einen sagten dies, die andern jenes, Some (the one party) said this, others (the other party) that.

- (d) Eins is the form used in counting.
- 2. 3mei and brei may have -er in the Gen. and -en in the Dat. when not accompanied by any article, etc., as:

Aus zweier oder dreier Zeugen Mund kommt die Wahrheit, Out of the mouth of two or three witnesses cometh the truth.

Man kann nicht zweien Herren bienen, One cannot serve two masters.

Note. — The Gen. -er is necessary to show the case, but may be replaced by vou; but the Dat. -en before a substantive is rare, the -n of the substantive sufficiently showing the case.

3. Beibe = 'both,' refers to two objects taken together, and is declined like an adjective in the Plur.: N. beibe, G. beiber, etc.; die beiben; meine beiben Brüber. It often

replaces their after determinative words, as in the last example. The neuter sing, form beines is also found, as:

Beibes ift mahr, Both (things) are true.

Notes. - 1. Both of us = wir beibe(n) (we two).

- 2. 'Both' as conjunction = fomohi etc. (See Less. XL.)
- 4. Other cardinals are not declined unless used substantively (see next section).
- 5. The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by adding -zehn (Engl. -teen) to the units (but sedzehn drops -8).
- 6. The multiples of ten (20—90) add -zig to the units, zwanzig, dreißig being irregular, and sechzig dropping -8.
- 7. The units always precede the tens in compound numbers from 21 upwards, both being joined by the conjunction und 'and'; hence 25 = fünf und zwanzig (Engl. 'five and twenty'); 156 = hundert sector und funfzig, etc.
- 8. Sundert and Laufend are generally used without ein before them, and the conjunction und may be omitted after them.
- 9. 'One by one, two by two,' etc. = je einer, je zwei (or je zwei und zwei), etc.
 - 10. The Cardinals may be used as substantives:
 - (a) With a substantive understood (as simple numbers only), with -e in Nom. Acc., -en in Dat., as:

All fours.

Mit sechsen, With [a coach and] six [horses].

(b) As feminine substantives, of the spots on dice, etc., or of the figures 1, 2, 3, etc., see § 80, 2, (c), with plur. in -en, as:

Die Gins, the one-spot, figure one, plur. Einsen.

(c) Hundert and Tausend are used as collective substantives, declined after the Hund Model, § 21, (b), as:

Im ersten **Hundert**, In the first hundred. Tausende von Menschen, Thousands of men.

(d) Million is a fem. subst. of the weak declension.

166. REMARKS ON ORDINAL NUMERALS.

- 1. The Ordinals are formed from the Cardinals by adding:
 - (a) Up to 19, -te, except ber erfte, britte, achte.
 - (b) From 20 upwards, -fte, which in compound numbers is added to the last component only.

NOTE. - Der andere is the older ordinal for 'second.'

2. The ordinals after proper names (of sovereigns, etc.) are spelt with a capital letter, and must (with the article) be declined throughout, the proper name being undeclined, as:

Rarl ber Erfte, Charles the First.

Georg bes Bierten, Of George the Fourth, etc.

Note. — The Roman Numerals I., II., etc., after names of sovereigns must always be read as def. art. + ord. num. in the proper case. Thus: Heinrich IV. — Heinrich Der Vierte (Nom.); or Heinrich den Vierten (Acc.); but: ber Thron Heinrich IV. — ber Thron Heinrich des Vierten (Gen.); unter Heinrich IV. — unter Heinrich dem Vierten.

3. The ordinals are used adjectively before the names of the months, as:

Der achtzehnte August', The 18th [of] August.

Am zwei und zwanzigsten Juni, On the 22d [of] June.

NOTES. — I. The figures I, 2, etc., before the months are to be read as ordinals, thus:

Am 1. Januar = am erften Januar.

Toronto, (b.) 25.(sten) April = Toronto, den (acc. of time, see § 184, 1) fünf und zwauzigsten April.

2. 'What day of the month is it?'

Der wievielste ift heute? or: ben wievielsten haben wir beute? 'It is the fifth.'

Es ift heute ber fünfte, or: Wir haben heute ben fünften.

167. Strong Verbs: iprechen Model.

Germ. Models: { sprechen sprichst, sprich sprach gespröchen stiehlen stiehlst, stiehlt, stiehl spake spoken Ablaut:

LIST A. (i, a, v.)

brechen (N. A.), break brichft, etc. brach gebrochen nehmen, take nimmst, etc. nahm aenommen (er)schreden (N.), be erschridft, etc. erfdrat eridroden frightened sprechen, speak sprichst, etc. (prad) gefprochen stechen, sting (trans.) stichst, etc. ftach gestochen treffen, hit triffft; trifft, triff traf getroffen

REMARKS. — 1. Erschreden, to frighten (trans.), is weak (erschredte, erschredt).

2. Observe the dropping of h and doubling of m in nehmen, and the single consonant in the Imperfect of eridreden and treffen.

LIST B. (ie, a, v.)

(The Imperf. Subj. is also given.)

(ge)baren, bear, gebierft, etc. gebar gebare geboren bring forth

(be)fehlen, com- befiehlft, etc. befahl befühle befohlen mand

(emp)fehlen, re- empfiehlft, etc. empfahl empfähle empfohlen commend

ftehlen, steal ftiehlst, etc. stahl { ftahle gestohlen

Also:

fommen (N.), { fomust, kommt } fomm kam käme gekommen

REMARKS. — 1. The simple verb fehlen, to be wanting, to make a mistake, is weak (fehlte, gefehlt).

- 2. Rommen drops one m in Impf.
- 3. All verbs of this Model (A. and B.) drop the final -t of the 2. sing. Imper.

VOCABULARY.

to add, addieren
arrive (at), an'fommen (in +
dat.)
obtain, get, bekommen
divide, dividieren
celebrate, feiern
multiply, multiplicieren
subtract, fubtrahieren
happen upon, meet with,
treffen
care, attention, die Acht
railway-station, der Bahnhof *
holidays, die Ferien (pl.)
fishing, das Fischen
prison, das Gefängnis

hunting, das Jagen
James, Jakob
mile (German), league, die
Meile
minute, die Minute
government, reign, die Regierung
Reformation, die Reformation'
second (of time), die Sekunde
voyage, die Seereise
far, weit
about, ungefähr
twice, zweimal
as far as, bis zu (dat.)

. Idioms: 1. He was born twenty-five years ago, Er ift por funf und manifg Iahren geboren.

- 2. Please take another apple (i. e., yet one more), Bitte, nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel.
- 3. Take care, Rehmen Gie fich in Mcht.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

- A. 1. Wie alt find Sie? Ich bin in meinem neun und zwan= giaften Sahre. 2. Diefes Jahr bekamen wir am acht und gwangiaften Juni Ferien. 3. Jeber Monat außer bem Februar bat entweber breifig ober ein und breifig Tage. 4. Den bier und zwanzigsten Mai war ich bei meinem Bater auf Befuch, benn an biefem Tage feiern wir ben Geburtstag ber Königin. 5. Rarl ber Erfte von England war ber Bater Karl II. und Jatob II. 6. Das war eine schlechte Radricht, nicht wahr,? Unfere Mutter erschrak, als Sie biefelbe hörte. 7. Den fünf und zwanzigften trafen wir Berrn Bell auf bem Bahnhofe, gerade als er im Begriffe war abzureifen. 8. In ber Stadt London find mehr als brei Millionen Einwohner. 9. Die einen empfahlen ihm zu bleiben, die andern abzureifen. 10. Wie weit ift es von hier bis zum nächsten Dorfe? Ungefähr fünf und zwanzig englische Meilen. 11. Er nahm bie Rifche je zwei aus bem Rorbe und legte biefelben auf ben Tifch. 12. Das Gis bricht, nehmen Sie fich in Acht. 13. Sunderte bon Menschen haben mahrend bes Erdbebens das Leben verloren. Unter ber Regierung Heinrich VIII. begann die Reformation in England. 15. Meine beiben Bruber reiften am fünf und gwansigften Juni von Liverpool ab und tamen erft am achtzehnten Juli in Quebec an. 16. Wann fommt Ihr Geburtstag? Am ein und awanzigsten November. 17. Die Regierung Heinrich VIII. war eine ber berühmtesten in ber Geschichte Englands. 18. Als wir einen Spaziergang machten, haben wir mehrere unferer Freunde angetroffen. 19. Bon wem ift Ihnen geraten worden, eine Gee= reise zu machen? Es ist mir von mehreren Arzten geraten worden.
- B. 1. One general commands thousands (dat.) of soldiers.
 2. Mary has broken her pen, but she has taken Louisa's.
 3. The ice is breaking; take care, Fred.
 4. This is my leadpencil, not William's.
 5. You have taken only one apple, please take another.
 6. When do we celebrate the Queen's Birthday?
 On the 24th of May.
 7. What day of the month is it to-day?

To-day is the 31st of March. 8. The thief was thrown into (the) prison, because he had stolen five hundred dollars. 9. Which do you prefer, (the) hunting or (the) fishing? I like both. 10. A bee stings, but a dog or a cat bites. 11. The days are longest in the month of June, and shortest towards Christmas. 12. When our neighbours were at church. a thief went (fommen) into the house and stole several hundred dollars. 13. In the year eighteen hundred and eighty-seven Queen Victoria celebrated the fiftieth year of her reign. 14. The eldest son of the Queen of England was born the ninth of November one thousand eight hundred and forty-one. 15. Tell me how much thirty-two and eighty-eight make. 16. There are sixty seconds in a minute, sixty minutes in an hour, twenty-four hours in a day, seven days in a week, four weeks in a month, and twelve months in a year. 17. Would you make a voyage to Europe if you were advised to do so? 18. Yes, I should like very much to make a voyage to Europe.

Read in German: 2 maí 11 ift 22, 3 maí 12 ift 36, 4 maí 8 ift 32, 5 maí 9 ift 45, 6 maí 7 ift 42, 7×10 ift 70, 8×11 ift 88, 9×12 ift 108, 10×10 ift 100, 11×11 ift 121, 12×12 ift 144. Abbiert 2,342, 25,891 und 989,346. Subtrahiert 27,763 von 31,551. Multipliciert 591 mit 478. Dividiert 2,581,640 mit 61.

ORAL EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Wie weit ist es von Hamilton nach Toronto? 2. Wann sind die Tage am kürzesten? 3. Wie viel macht das, wenn man 337 mit 2 multipliciert? 4. Wie viele Tage sind in einem Jahre? 5. Wann bekommt ihr Ferien? 6. Wessen Bleistift haben Sie?

LESSON XXIX.

INDEFINITE NUMERALS. - STRONG VERBS: effett MODEL.

INDEFINITE NUMERALS. 168.

The Indefinite Numerals are:

- 1. all, all
- 2. ganz, whole, all
- 3. jeber.
- 4. jedweber, each (biefer Model)
- 5. jeglicher,)
- 6. fein, none, not one
- 7. einige, some, a few
- 9. manche, many
- 10. mehrere, several
- 11. viel, much (pl. many)
- 12. menig, little (pl. few)
- 13. etwas, some
- 14. genug, enough \ (indeclinable)
- 15. mehr, more

REMARK. - All these, except all and gang, are used as Indefinite Pronouns (see Less. XXVII).

- 169. I. all expresses number as well as quantity, and denotes that every individual part of a whole is present.
- 2. When declined, it follows the biefer Model, whether used with or without a substantive, as:
- aller Rafe: alle Arbeit war vergeblich; alles Brot; all [the] cheese; all labour was useless; all [the] bread.
- 3. Unless used substantively, it always precedes the determinative word, and then generally remains uninflected in the sing., and often in the plur., as:

MII mein Gelb, All my money.

MU(c) meine Freunde, All my friends.

4. When used substantively and preceded by a determinative word, it still follows the *strong* declension, as:

Dieses (bas) alles, All this (that). Bei bem allem. With all that.

5. It is not (as in English) followed by the definite article, but may be followed by the demonstrative der, die, das, as:

Alles Gelb, All [the] money. All(cs) das Gelb, All that money. Alle Menschen, All [the] men.

Alle bie Menschen, All those men.

170. 1. Ganz expresses quantity, not number, and represents an object as complete and undivided, without reference to its parts. When therefore the Engl. 'all' = 'whole' it must be rendered by qanz, not by all, as:

I have been working all (the whole) day long, Ich habe ben ganzen Tag gearbeitet.

2. Ganz is declined like an adjective, and always follows the determinative word, as:

Der ganze Tag, The whole day.

Mein ganzes Eigentum, [The] whole [of] my property.

- 3. Before names of countries and places it may remain uninflected, if unaccompanied by an article, etc., as:
 - All (the whole of) America does not belong to the United States, Ganz (or das ganze) Amerika gehört nicht zu den Bereinigten Staaten. But:

Die gange Schweig, All Switzerland.

171. 1. 3cder (bieser Model) is used to denote each individual belonging to a whole, as:

Jeder Baum hat Ufte, Every tree has branches.

- 2. It is sometimes preceded by ein, and then follows the mixed adjective declension. Sebweber and jeglicher are less common forms, used in the same way.
 - 172. Rein is the negative of ein.
- 173. I. Ginige (plur., biefer Model) = 'some, a few,' denotes a *small* number taken *collectively*, and is used without article, as:

Einige Bögel können nicht singen, Some birds cannot sing.

Bor einigen Sahren, A few years ago.

2. It is used in the sing. only before names of materials to denote a *limited quantity*, as:

3th habe einiges Geld, I have some money (but not much).

3. Etlific is a less usual word with the same meaning and use.

Note. — Ein paar 'a pair, couple' (with small p) is also used in the sense of 'a few,' the ein being then indeclinable, as:

Mit ein paar Thalern, With a few dollars.

174. Mancher (biefer Model), 'many(a),' denotes indefinite plurality, as:

Many a bird cannot sing.

I have had many a misfortune.

Mande Leute glauben, Many people believe.

It may remain uninflected, especially before an adj., as:
Mander gute, or mand, guter Mann.

175. Mehrere = 'several, a few,' taken individually, as:

Rehrere Leute wurden frant, Several people became ill.

176. Biel and wenig, in the sing., are inflected (biefer Model) when they denote number, and uninflected when they denote quantity, as:

Lerne nicht vieles, sondern viel, Do not learn many (a great number of) things, but much (a large quantity).

They are usually, though not always, declined in the plural.

Note. — The Engl. 'little' = 'small' is rendered by flein.

177. Etwas is used before names of material, etc., in the sing., like einiges (see § 173, 2, above), of a small quantity, as:

Etwas Brot, Some bread (but not much).

178. Genug may precede or follow its substantive, as: Gelb genug, or genug Geld, money enough.

Note. — As adverb, it always follows its adjective, as:

Das Band ift nicht lang genug, The ribbon is not long enough.

179. Mehr is the comparative of viel; and is indeclinable, as:

I have more friends than he.

180. The Engl. 'some, any' are generally omitted before substantives, unless a small quantity (some, but not much) is denoted (see § 157, above). In answer to a question, without a substantive, they are rendered by einiges (sing.), einige (plur.) or welch (sing. or plur.), not by etwas (which = 'something'), as:

Haben Sie Gelb? Ich habe einiges (welches). Haben Sie Freunde? Ich habe einige (welche).

181. STRONG VERBS: effen Model.

	Infin.	Pres. Ind. 2. 3. Sing. Imper. 2. Sing.	IMPF.	P. Part.
Germ. Model: Engl. Analogy: (incomplete)	essen eat-	iffest, ift, if wanting	π̄β āte	ge(g)effen eaten
Ablaut:	e i}	i, ie	ā	ĕ

LIST.

bitten, beg, ask effen, eat (of man) freffen, eat(of beasts) geben, give (ver) gessen, forget	bittest, bittet, bitte isses, ißt, iß frissest, frißt, friß gi(e)bst, gi(e)bt, gi(e)b vergissest, vergißt, ver- giß	bat aß fraß gab vergaß	gebeten gegessen gefressen gegeben vergessen
lesen, gather; read liegen, lie down messure (ge)nesen (N.), re- cover(fromillness	liefeft, lieft, ließ liegft, liegt, liegn miffeft, mißt, miß genefeft, geneft, genefe	las lag maß genas	gelefen gelegen gemessen genesen
(ge)schen (N.), happen (impers.)	geschieht —	gefchah	geschehen
sehen, see	fiehft, fieht, fieh	fah	gefehen
siten, sit	fițest, siţt, siţ(e)	faß	gefeffen
treten (N. A.), tread	trittst, tritt, tritt	trat	getreten
(wesen, N., obsolete) to be	, — . —	war	gewesen

OBSERVE. — 1. The changes from § to §; also that § of the Impf. is retained through that whole tense, the vowel being long, as: wir affen, id) äße.

2. That genesen does not change e into ie.

- 3. The change in fitten of t into f and ff.
- 4. That the long **c** of the root is changed into ic, the short into short i.
 - 5. The inserted g in the P. Part. of effen (gegeffen).
- 6. The doubling of t in 2. sing., etc., of treten, and omission of final -t in 3. sing. (tritt).

VOCABULARY.

to experience, feel, empfinden intend, contemplate, vor'= haben absence, die Abwesenheit Francis, Franz century, das Jahrhun'dert cherry, die Kirsche province, die Prodinz' romance, novel, der Roman' swallow, die Schwalbe

telegraph, ber Telegraph'
misfortune, das Unglück
world, die Welt
pardon, die Verzeihung
thin, dünn
almost, nearly, beinahe, fast
immediately, (so)gleich
lately, not long ago, neulich
late, spät
while, während

- Idioms: 1. There is, there was, etc. (general statement), c8 giebt, c8 gab, etc. (obj. in acc. see Less. XXXVII).
 - 2. To cut one's hand, sid, in die Sand schneiben (lit., to cut one's self into the hand).
 - 3. To beg pardon, um Bergeihung bitten.
 - 4. To speak to (with), fprechen + acc. of person.

EXERCISE XXIX.

A. 1. Das ganze Land empfindet den Verlust eines guten und großen Mannes. 2. Es giebt schöne Bögel, welche gar nicht singen. 3. Vitte, geben Sie mir noch einen Thaler; ich habe nicht Geld genug. 4. Ist Georg den Apfel, den er gekauft hat, oder denzienigen, welchen ich ihm gegeben habe? 5. Der Fremde trat mir auf den Fuß, aber gleich dat er mich um Verzeihung. 6. Während Ihrer Abwesenheit sind mehrere Leute gekommen, um Sie zu

sprechen. 7. Georg sagte mir neulich, daß er Fritz vor einigen Bochen gesehen habe. 8. Nimm dich in Acht, das Eis, worauf du trittst, ist sehr dinn. 9. Ich bitte um Berzeihung, daß ich so spät gekommen din. 10. Wenn du meinen Onkel siehst, so sage ihm, bitte, daß ich vorhabe, ihn zu besuchen. 11. Es liegt ein Roman von Sir Walter Scott auf dem Tische; lesen Sie densselben? 12. Was ist geschehen? Meine kleine Schwester ist auf Glas getreten und hat sich in den Fuß geschnitten. 13. Dieses Unglück geschah in den Ferien, und sie genas sehr langsam, weil das Wetter so heiß war. 14. Eine Schwalbe macht keinen Sommer. 15. Ein Tier frist und fäust, aber ein Mensch ist und trinkt. 16. Durch den Telegraphen hört sast die ganze Welt in vier und zwanzig Stunden von dem, was in irgend einem Lande geschieht. 17. Als ein Reicher aus seinem Hause sienem Lande geschieht. 17. Als ein Reicher aus seinem Hause sien Armen keins. 18. Das Pferd des Reisenden fraß ein wenig Heu und Hafer, während sein Herr das Mittagsessen im Gasthause aß. 19. Das Kind hat schon alles Brod und Fleisch gegessen, es hat auch alle Milch getrunken, die im Glase war. 20. Einem Lügner wird nicht geglaubt, selbst wenn er die Wahrheit spricht.

B. 1. The whole of England is not so large as the Province of Manitoba. 2. Henry VIII. of England, Francis I. of France, and Charles V. of Germany were the greatest monarchs of the 16th century. 3. Where did you find the money? It lay in the grass. 4. Every summer the birds eat the cherries in our garden. 5. The sick man lay seven weeks in the hospital, but he has now recovered. 6. The rich (man) gave the poor (man), who sat before the house, some money. 7. This youth has read all the books in the library of his father, but unfortunately he forgets just as fast (as) he reads. 8. Napoleon I. died on the 5th May 1821; he was 52 years old. 9. Have you forgotten what I told you two months ago? 10. During the rain we sat under a tree and

told stories. 11. One forgets easily what one reads too quickly. 12. If you have more paper than you need, please give me some. 13. Nineteen hundred years ago the Romans possessed almost the whole world. 14. Many young people read hundreds of novels, and forget after some time almost all they have read. 15. Twenty-five years ago our neighbour possessed only a few hundred dollars, but now he is one of the richest men in the city. 16. Speak the truth, whether you are believed or not.

ORAL EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Giebt es in Amerika Vögel, die nicht singen? 2. Ist jemand während meiner Abwesenheit gekommen? 3. Was haben Sie meinem Onkel gesagt, als er hier war? 4. Was sagen Sie vom Lesen der Romane? 5. Welchen Apfel iszt Georg? 6. Ist das Telephon eine neue Erfindung?

LESSON XXX.

DERIVATIVE NUMERALS. — TIME, MEASURE, DATE. — STRONG VERBS: jújlagen MODEL.

182. DERIVATIVE NUMERALS.

From the Cardinal and Indefinite Numerals are formed the following Derivative Numerals:

(a) By adding -mai, adverbs denoting 'so many times,' as: einmai, once; viermai, four times; einundamai, twenty-one times; mandmai, many a time.

Notes. — 1. Maí is neuter, hence jedesmaí, each time; and with Indef. Numerals sometimes adds -\$, as: vicimaí(\$), mehrmaís.

2. Gin'mal = 'on one (single) occasion,' as:

3th habe ihn nur einmal gesehen, I have seen him only once.

Einmal' (einsmale, einft) = 'once upon a time,' as :

Es war einmal' ein Ronig, etc. (GRIMM.)

3. Nicht ein'mal, 'not once,' as:

Er ift nicht ein'mal hier gewesen, He has not been here once.

Richt einmal' (or nicht mal'), 'not even,' as:

Er ift nicht (ein)mal' hier gewesen, He has not even been here.

(b) By adding -fach or faltig, adjectives denoting 'so many fold,' as: einfach, simple; zweifach (zwiefach), twofold, double; vierfach (-faltig), quadruple; viel-fach, mannichfach, manifold.

Note. - Einfältig = 'foolish, silly.'

(c) By adding -lei to the gen. fem. sing. or plur., indeclinable adjectives denoting 'of so many kinds,' as: einerlei, of one kind; breierlei, of three kinds; vielerlei, manderlei, of many kinds, etc.

Note. - Es ift mir einerlei = 'It is (all) the same to me.'

183. From the Ordinals are formed:

(a) By adding -I, the fractional Numerals, as: ein Dritztel = \frac{1}{3}; das Biertel, the quarter; drei Zwanzigstel = \frac{3}{20}, etc.

NOTES. — 1. These are substantives formed from the ordinal + Zeii (= part), and are therefore neuter, thus:

Das Drittel = bas britte Teil, 'the third part,' etc.

2. 'Half' as substantive = Dit Gülfte; as adjective or adverb = \$\hat{h} \cdot \text{l} \text{.} which is declined like gan3 (see \frac{8}{3} 170, 2), as:

3d habe die Galite meines Gigentums verloren,

I have lost half (of) my property.

Der Anabe war halb tot, als man ihn fand,

The boy was half dead when he was found.

Salb Wajhington, or das halbe Wajhington, (The) half (of) Washington.
Salb or das halbe Frankreich, half France; but Die halbe Schweiz, half Switzerland.

(b) By adding -halb, Mixed Numbers with the Fraction 'half,' as: brittehalb = 2!; viertehalb Meilen, three miles and a half; fünftehalb Ellen, four and a half yards.

REMARKS. — 1. Observe that the ordinal is one higher than the cardinal of the Engl. idiom; thus 'two and-a-half' is a number consisting of three parts, of which the first and second parts are wholes, but the third is only a half, hence britteshalb.

- 2. 1½ = anderthalb (not zweitehalb; see § 166, 1, Note), as: Anderthalb Flaschen (pl.), A bottle and a half.
- 3. These are invariable adjectives.
 - (c) By adding -end, ordinal adverbs denoting in what place or order, as:

erstens, firstly; zweitens, secondly; brittens, thirdly, etc.

184. EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

1. Both point and duration of time are expressed by the Accusative without a preposition, as:

Den ersten Januar, (On) the first of January.

Er fam letten Montag an, He arrived last Monday.

- Ich war lette Woche frank, I was ill last week.
- -Ich war eine ganze Woche frant, I was ill (for) a whole week.
- 2. Point of time is also expressed:

(a) By the preposition an with the Dat. (always contracted with the article), of date, as:

Am ersten Januar, On the first of January.

Am Sonntag, On Sunday.

Am Morgen bieses Tages, On the morning of this day.

(b) By the Genitive case, with **Lag**, days of the week, or divisions of the day, when denoting indefinite time or habitual action, as:

Des Tages, In the day time, by day.

Sonntags, On Sundays.

(Des) Abends, In the evening.

2. The Time of Day is thus expressed:

(a) The quarters of the hour, with reference to the following hour (not the past hour, as partly in English), thus:

It is a quarter past twelve = Es ist (ein) Biertel auf eins (i. e., one quarter towards, or on the way to, one).

It is half past twelve = Es ist halb eins (i. e., half one).

It is a quarter to one = Es ist brei Biertel auf eins (i. e., three quarters towards one).

(b) The minutes past by nach, as: Es ist zwanzig Minuten nach zwei, It is twenty minutes past two.

The minutes to by vor, as: Behn Minuten vor brei, ten minutes to three.

(c) at = um; o'clock = Uhr, as:
Um ein Uhr, At one o'clock.

Um ein Biertel auf fünf Uhr, At a quarter past four o'clock.

Es ist brei Biertel auf fünf (Uhr), It is a quarter to five (o'clock).

Es hat fechs (Uhr) geschlagen, It has struck six (o'clock).

NOTE. — The impersonal Verb 'to be,' in expressing the time of the day, is always singular, as in English.

185. EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY.

1. A substantive expressing Quantity (Measure, Weight or Number), if *Masculine* or *Neuter*, retains the form of the singular, as:

Bier und zwanzig Zoll machen zwei Fuß, 24 inches make two feet.

3wei Pfund, Two pounds.

Taufend Mann, A thousand men. - But:

Zwei Flaschen (fem.), Two bottles.

Bwölf Ellen (fem.), Twelve yards.

2. The substantive, the quantity of which is expressed, is generally put in apposition with that expressing the quantity, as:

3wei Buch Papier, Two quires of paper.

Dreitausend Mann Infanterie, Three thousand infantry soldiers.

Fünf Glas Bier, Five glasses of beer.

Mit zwei Paar Schuhen (dat.), With two pairs of shoes.

3. But if a determinative word precedes the substantive measured, etc., use the Gen. case, or non with Dat., as:

Ich habe sechs Pfund dieses guten Zuders (or: von diesem guten Zuder) gekauft.

4. The measure (of weight, distance, etc.) is put in the accusative, as:

Dieser Bleistift ist nur einen Zoll lang, This lead-pencil is only an inch long. Ich habe eine ganze Meile (acc.) marschiert, I have been marching a whole mile. Dieses Paket' wiegt ein halbes Pfund (acc.), This parcel weighs half-a-pound.

186. Strong Verbs: ichlagen Model.

	INFIN.	PR. IND. 2. 3. si	ng. IMPF.	P. PART.
Germ. Model:	schlagen	folägft, solä	gt schlug	geschlagen
Engl. Analogy:	slay	wanting	slew	slain
(incomplete)				
Ablaut:	a	ä	u	- a .
		LIST.		•
baden (W. N. A.), bake	bäcfft, bäckt	but	gebacen
fahren (N. A.), 1 a conveyance	•	fährst, fährt	fuhr	gefahren
graben, dig		gräbst, gräbt	grub	gegraben
laden (W.), invit	te; load	läbst, läbt	lub	gelaben
schaffen, create		schaffft, schafft	schuf	geschaffen
schlagen, strike		schlägft, schlägt	fclug	geschlagen
tragen, carry		trägft, trägt	trug	getragen
wachsen (N.), gr	ow	wächseft, wächst	wuchs	gewachfen
waschen, wash		wäschest, wäscht	wusch	gewaschen
Also the irreg	gular : .		-	
ftehen, stand		stehst, steht	{ (ftund) } ftand	gesta nd en
and the usual	ly weak	:		
fragen, ask	{	frägst, frägt fragst, fragt	frug } fragte }	gefragt

REMARKS.— 1. Backen is usually weak in the Impf. (backte), but strong in the P. Part. (gebacken). Observe also the single in Impf.

- 2. Fahren is conjugated with sein when intr., with haben when trans.
- 3. Schaffen 'to work' and (ver)schaffen 'to procure' are weak. Observe the single f in the Impf.

VOCABULARY.

to set out, depart, leave, ab'= fahren rise, auf stehen invite, ein'laben understand, versteben dine, zu Mittag effen go for a drive, spazieren fahren absence, die Ab'wesenheit little tree, bas Bäumchen dozen, das Dut'end yard, die Elle multiplication-table, bas Ein= maleins thread, ber Faben * driving, das Fahren driver, coachman, ber Ruticher hole, bas Loch night, die Nacht*

minute-hand, ber Minuten= zeiger pound, das Pfund post-office, die Bost riding, bas Reiten sentence, ber Sat * hour-hand, ber Stundenzeiger cup, die Taffe tea, der Thee clock, watch, die Uhr train, ber Rug * two weeks, a fortnight, vier= zehn Tage then, bann early, früh slow, slowly, langfam at least, wenigstens first, first of all, querit

Idioms: 1. The Boston train, Der Jug foon Bofton.
2. What time (o'clock) is it? Bie viel Uhr ift es?

EXERCISE XXX.

A. 1. Ein breifacher Faben bricht nicht leicht. 2. Der Kutscher fährt so langsam, daß wir nicht vor drei Viertel auf zwölf anstommen werden. 3. In der einen Hälfte der Welt ist es Tag,

mahrend es in der andern Sälfte Nacht ift. 4. Bas giebt es heute Neues? 5. Weshalb haben Sie mich gestern nicht besucht? Erftens weil es regnete, und zweitens weil ich felbst Befuch hatte. 6. Du haft gut gelefen, lies noch einen Sat. 7. Wie viel wiegen Sie? 3d wiege ungefähr hundert und funfzig Bfund. 8. Der Rug fommt um brei Biertel auf neun an und fahrt um fieben Minuten nach gehn ab. 9. haben Gie Ihre Uhr bei fich? Sa, aber bie Feder ift gebrochen. 10. Ich habe zwei Dutend Gläfer bestellt, aber sie find noch nicht angekommen. 11. Wir haben unfere Rettern eingelaben, mahrend ber Ferien vierzehn Tage bei und zuzubringen. 12. Wir effen im Sommer um halb zwei zu Mittag. 13. Ich wurde gern mit Ihnen spazieren fahren, wenn Sie mich einlüben. 14. Der hund verbarg ben Knochen in ein Loch, welches er hinter bem Apfelbaum grub. 15. Die Magd fteht früh (bes) Morgens auf, mafcht bie Rleider und bact Brot. 16. Johann ift ein fehr einfältiger Knabe; er hat noch nicht bas Einmaleins gelernt. 17. Wie viel Uhr war es, als ber Minutenzeiger auf fechs und ber Stundenzeiger zwischen brei und vier ftand? 18. Der Bauer frug ben Reifenden, wie viel Uhr es fei (ware), und diefer jog feine Uhr aus der Tafche und fagte ihm, es fei halb eins. 19. Abbiere brei Biertel, vier Siebentel, neun Dreizehntel und elf 3manzigstel; wie viel ift (macht) bas? 20. Der Sund würde ben Anaben gleich beißen, wenn berfelbe ibn fchluge. 21. Geben Sie zur Gefellschaft ber Frau B.? 22. Ich bin nicht eingelaben; mein Bruber wurde eingelaben, aber ich nicht.

B. 1. In six days God created Heaven and earth. 2. The patient drank two glasses of wine and three cups of tea yesterday. 3. This silly boy has not even understood what I said to him. 4. Here is good, strong cloth; it costs two and a half dollars a (the) yard. 5. This tree grows quickly; it is at least four times as high as it was three years ago. 6. This exercise is very easy; we shall have finished (with) it in half an hour. 7. The dealer showed us many kinds of ribbon,

red, blue, yellow, etc. 8. Which do you prefer, (the) riding or (the) driving? It is all the same to me. 9. Please tell me what time it is? It is exactly thirteen minutes after eleven. 10. It is nine o'clock, for the hour-hand is (stands) at (auf) nine and the minute-hand at twelve. 11. These three school-boys bought themselves a melon, which weighed almost five pounds. 12. The coachman drove first to the post-office and then to the bank. 13. Between April and September the little tree grew a foot and a half. 14. Precisely at five o'clock the Boston train left, and at 9.45 we arrived. 15. Was this house built before you came here? 16. Add 31/40, 42/51 and 82/99.

ORAL EXERCISE XXX.

1. Wie viel macht drittehalb, fünftehalb und neuntehalb?
2. Um wie viel Uhr kommt der Zug von Boston an? 3. Was sagte der Reisende, als der Bauer ihn fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei? 4. Wie viel Uhr ist es nach Ihrer Uhr? 5. Wie viele Sätze hast du schon gelesen? 6. Ist jemand während meiner Abwesenheit gekommen?

LESSON XXXI.

ADVERBS. - STRONG VERBS: fallen MODEL.

187.

ADVERBS.

Adverbs may be arranged according to their meaning as follows, with examples of the simpler and more commonly occuring ones under each class:

I. Time.

(a) Past: bamals, at that time eben, just, just now ge'stern, yesterday neulid, the other day, lately vor'gestern, the day before yesterday vorher', before (b) Present:

heute, to-day jett, nun,

(c) Future:

bald, soon
hernach', afterwards
morgen, to-morrow
nachher', afterwards
nimmer, nevermore
ü'bermorgen, the day after tomorrow

(d) Interrogative:

bann, then (past or fut.) einst, once upon a time (past); some day (fut.) enblich, at last erst, only (not sooner than) (fo) gleich, at once, directly indessen, in the meanwhile unterdeffen, immer, always, at all times je(mals), ever, at any time nie(mals), never, at no time noth, still, yet oft(mals), often fcon, already felten, seldom, farely

(e) General:

II. Place and Direction.

(a) Demonstrative:

ba, baselbst, there, in that place baselbst, (ba)sin, thither, to that place bort, there, in that place (ba)ser, thence, from that place hier, here, in this place bie(r)ser, hither, to this place

- (b) Negative: nirgends, nowhere
 - (c) Interrogative and Relative:

wo, where, in what place wohin, whither, to what place woher, whence, from what place

(d) General:

ir'gendwo, anywhere überall', everywhere

III. Measure and Degree.

auch, also, ever etma, about, nearly

beinahe, faft. almost

ganz, at all, very genug, enough gerabe, just, exactly faum, hardly, scarcely, no sooner noth, still, more

nur, only
fehr, very
fo, so
ungefähr, about
überhaupt', generally
wie? how?
zu, too
ziemlich, tolerably

IV. Affirmation.

ja, yes; to be sure jawohl, certainly freilich, to be sure, indeed fürwahr, truly, really

gewiß, certainly natür'lich, of course wirklich, to be sure, indeed zwar, it is true, certainly

V. Negation.

nein, no

nicht, not

VI. Possibility.

etwa, vielleicht, } perhaps wahrscheinlich, probably wohl, perhaps

VII. Necessity.

allerdings, certainly

durchaus, absolutely, entirely

VIII. Cause.

daher, darum, deshalb, therefore

warum, wherefore, why weshalb, (interrog. or rel.)

NOTE. — These last, as well as many of the others, are also used as Conjunctions. See Less. XL.

188. Strong Verbs: fallen Model.

INFIN. PR. IND. 2. 3. Sing. IMPF. P. PART.

(same as Inf.)

ie

Germ. Model: fallen fällft, fällt fiel gefallen Engl. Analogy: fall wanting fell fallen (incomplete)

Ablaut:

(NOTE. - This is only a seeming Ablaut; see § 192, Rem. 4.)

LIST.

blasen, blow	bläseft, bläft	blies	geblafen
braten, roast (tr. and intr.)	brätst, brät	briet	gebraten
fallen (N.), fall	fällft, fällt	fiel	gefallen
fangen, catch	fängst, fängt	fi(e)ng	gefangen
halten, hold	hältst, hält	hielt	gehalten
hangen, hang	hängst, hängt	hi(e)ng	gehangen
hauen, hew	haueft, haut	hieb	gehauen
heißen, bid; be called	heißeft, heißt	hieß	geheißen
laffen, let	läffeft, läßt	ließ	gelaffen
laufen (N. A.), run	läufft, läuft	lief	gelaufen
raten, advise (gov. dat.)	rätst, rät	riet -	geraten
rufen, call	rufft, ruft	rief	gerufen
schlafen, sleep	schläfft, schläft	schlief	geschlafen
stoßen, push	ftößeft, ftößt	ftieß	gestoßen
Also the irregular			

Also the irregular:

gehen (N.), go geheft, geht gi(e)ng gegangen

REMARKS. — 1. Observe in braten, halten, raten the contracted forms of the 3. sing. Pres. Ind.

2. Sangen is the strong verb (hieng, gehangen) and is properly intr. (= 'to be suspended'); hängen is weak (hängte, gehängt) and trans., but the distinction is not strictly observed.

3. Observe that heißen and stoßen, having the root vowel long, retain fi throughout; whereas lassen varies according to rule, thus: ich lasse, gelassen, but er läßt, ließ, wir ließen.

VOCABULARY.

to begin, commence, an'fangen receive, get, erhalten please, gefallen leave, leave behind, lassen skate, Schlitt'schuh lau'sen kick, strike, bump, stoßen cut down, um'hauen butter, die Butter play-mate, der Gespiele mouse, die Maus*

man-of-all-work, (farm-) servant, der Knecht
beef, das Nindsleisch
skate, der Schlitt'schuh
skating, das Schlitt'schuhlausen
bacon, der Speck
language, die Sprache
study, das Studium
last, preceding, vorig

- Idioms : 1. What is the name of? Bie heift?
 - 2. What is your name? Bie heifen Gie?
 - 3. My name is Henry, 3d, heiße Beinrich.
 - 4. I think highly of him (i. e., esteem, value him highly), 3th halte viel von ihm.
 - 5. How do you do? (How are you?) Bie geht es Ihnen?
 - 6. He has not been here for a long time, Er ist lange nicht hier gewesen (Er ist nicht lange hier gewesen = He has not been here long).

EXERCISE XXXI.

A. 1. Mit Speck fängt man Mäuse. 2. Der Knabe fiel, als er Schlittschuh lief, und stieß sich den Kopf aufs Eis. 3. Ein schlafender Fuchs fängt kein Huhn. 4. Im Herbst bläst der Wind kalt, und pfeift durch den Wald. 5. Essen, trinken und schlafen, heißt (ist) das leben! 6. Im Winter schläft man gewöhnlich länger als im Sommer. 7. Man läßt jett die Fenster offen, denn das Wetter ist warm geworden. 8. Ich laufe nicht gern Schlittschuh, aber meine Gespielen sind große Freunde davon. 9. Die Magd ging zum Laden und kaufte drei Pfund Thee, zwei Pfund Butter,

gehn Bfund Buder und zwei Flaschen Bier. 10. Dort ftand ber Baum, ben ber Rnecht neulich umgehauen hat. 11. Sagen Sie mir, wohin Sie vorgeftern gingen, als ich Sie in ber Ronigsftraße traf. 12. Der Schüler ließ feine Bucher zu Saufe, aber er ift gleich nach Saufe gelaufen und hat biefelben geholt. 13. Boriae Boche erhielt meine Schwester einen Brief von ihrer Freundin; fast jede Boche erhält fie einen. 14. Dieselbe schrieb, daß sie den gangen Winter in Bofton gubringen wurde, wenn es ihr bafelbft gefiele. 15. Der Wind blies b en Tag fo heftig, daß Georgs Bater ibm riet, nicht aufs Baffer zu geben. 16. Ich bitte um Berzeihung, daß ich Sie fo lange allein gelaffen habe. 17. Das franke Rind wurde beffer gefchlafen haben, wenn die andern Rinder weniger Larm gemacht hatten. 18. Bor zwanzig Sahren bing bas Bilb meines Baters an ber Wand über bem Kamin, und es hängt noch immer ba. 19. Wenn er nicht fo früh gegangen wäre, fo hätte ich ihn zum Mittagseffen eingelaben. 20. Guten Morgen, Frau Bell; wie geht es Ihnen? 21. Es geht mir gang gut; wie geht es Ihrer Familie? 22. Friedrich II. von Breugen wurde Friedrich ber Große genannt.

B. 1. My father speaks German almost as well as English.
2. Good evening, my little friend; how do you do? 3. I have not seen you for a long time.
4. A cold, cutting wind blew through the open window.
5. When I was young, I liked to skate.
6. Do you like (to eat) beef?
7. It was a quarter past eight when the concert began.
8. That horse kicks; take care.
9. At what o'clock will you be at home? I shall not be at home before half past ten.
10. When we were going home, we met our friends, who were coming out of church.
11. What is the name of the long street, which runs from King Street towards (nad) the north?
12. My friend, of whom I thought so highly, died in his nineteenth year.
13. In September we began to learn German, and the study of that language pleases us very much.
14. A lost child was crying

upon the street, and calling after its mother. 15. Some one asked it what its name was. 16. The poor child answered that its name was William, and that it lived in Frederick-Street. 17. I wrote to my cousin a month ago, but I think he is angry, for the letter has not yet been answered.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXI.

1. Was ist geschehen, während die Knaben Schlittschuh liefen? 2. Weshalb sind diese Fenster offen gelassen worden? 3. Was kaufte die Magd auf dem Markte? 4. Weshalb ist der Schüler so schnell nach Hause gelaufen? 5. Wann haben Sie Nachricht von Ihrem Bruder erhalten? 6. Sprechen Sie Deutsch?

LESSON XXXII.

ADVERBS (continued): - FORMATION AND COMPARISON. TABLE OF STRONG VERBS AND CENERAL REMARKS
ON THE SAME.

189. FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

- 1. From Adjectives (including most adverbs of manner):
 - (a) Most adjectives may be used without change as adverbs, as:

Er läuft schnell, He runs quickly.

(b) By adding -lin (Engl. -ly), sometimes with Umlaut, as:

freilid, of course, to be sure ganglid, entirely füralid, recently

neulich, lately, the other day schwerlich, hardly, scarcely

Also to participles, as: hoffentlish, it is to be hoped

wissentlich, knowingly

(c) By adding -lings, as:

blindlings, blindly

(d) By adding -s, -ens, as:

anbers, otherwise bereits, already befonders, especially linfs, to (on) the left rechts, to (on) the right übrigens, moreover

Also to participles, as:

eilends, hastily

- 2. From Substantives, by the use of the genitive case (sometimes with article), to express:
 - (a) Time, as:

abends (or des Abends), in the evening morgens (or des Morgens), in the morning

nachts (or des Nachts), by night (anomalous, Nacht being fem.) anfangs, in the beginning

(b) Manner, as:

fluas, in haste

teils, in part

3. From *Prepositions*, by adding -en, sometimes with b(a)r-prefixed, as:

außen, outside, out of braußen, doors innen, brinnen, binten, behind

born(e), before
oben, above
unten, below
brüben, over there

NOTE. — Prepositions in composition with verbs are really adverbs (also the particles ab, ein, empor, weg, zurüd).

4. By combination. For these see Part III.

190. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

1. Some adverbs are compared, as:

2. Adjectives are used as adverbs in the comparative, as in the positive, without change, as:

Er läuft schneller als sein Bruder, He runs more quickly than his brother.

3. In the superlative degree, the form with am is used for the relative superlative (see §§ 127, 2, and 128), as:

Er läuft am ichnellsten von allen, He runs most quickly of all.

4. The absolute superlative (see § 127, 2) is usually formed by prefixing an adverb of eminence (such as fehr, höchst, äußerst, etc.), as:

Er schreibt äußerst schön, He writes most (i. e., very) beautifully.

5. Adverbs from adjectives in -ig, -lin, -iam use the uninflected form for the superlative absolute, as:

Er läßt freundlichst grüßen, He desires to be most kindly remembered.

Also a few monosyllables, as: längft, long ago; höchft, most highly.

6. The superlative absolute may also be expressed by auf bas (aufs) prefixed to the superlative adjective, to express the highest possible degree, as:

Er besorgt seine Geschäfte auf das (auss) Gewissenhafteste, He attends to his business in the most conscientious manner (possible).

7. A few superlative adverbs end in -ens, with special meanings, as:

höchstens, at most meistens, for the most part wenigstens, at least nächstens, shortly

Also the ordinal adverbs, erstens, etc., see § 183, (c).

191. Position of Adverbs.

Adverbs generally precede the word they modify (except genug, see § 178, Note).

For further particulars as to their position in the sentence, see § 45, Rule 5.

192. TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION OF STRONG VERBS.

Class.	Div.	German Model.	English Analogy.	Ablaut.				
				Infin.	IMPF.	P.PART.	2.3.sing. Pr. Ind. 2.s. Imp.	Lesson.
Į{	a	beißen	bite	ei	ĭ	ĭ	-	XXII.
4. 1	6	bleiben	(wanting)	ei	iē	le_	-	XXIII.
II. {	a	fciegen	shoot	ie, etc.	ŏ	ŭ	-	XXIV.
11. }	6	frieren	freeze	ie, etc.	ō		_	XXV.
- (a	fingen	sing	ĭ.	ă	ìi	-	XXVI.
111.	6	fpinnen helfen	spin (wanting)	ĭ	ă.	Ď Ö	ĭ	}xxvii.
IV.	-	fprechen	speak	e, etc.	ā	ă	ĭ, ie	XXVIII.
v.	-	effen	eat	e, etc.	ā	e	ĭ, īe	XXIX.
VI.	-	fclagen	slay	a	u	a	Umlaut	XXX.
VII.		fallen	fall	various	īē	same as	Umlaut	XXXI.

REMARKS. — 1. The Umlaut of classes VI., VII. does not occur in the Imperative.

- 2. The varying vowels of the Imperf. Subj. are given in the lists, where necessary.
 - 3. The English Analogies printed in Italics are incomplete.
- 4. The vowel-change of class VII. is not an Ablaut, but the result of reduplication.
- 5. The lists of the various classes contain only the verbs of common occurrence; all others will be found in App. L.
- 193. Distinguish between the verbs of the following groups:

(bitten, beg, ask	bat	gebeten
(a) { beten, pray (intr.)	betete	gebetet
(a) { beten, beg, ask beten, pray (intr.) bieten, bid, offer	bot	geboten
(b) { liegen, lie (be recumbent, intr.) { legen, lay (trans.) { lügen, lie, tell a falsehood	lag	gelegen
$(b) \ $ legen, lay (trans.)	legte	gelegt
(lügen, lie, tell a falsehood	log	gelogen
(c) { zeihen, pull (trans.), move (intr.) zeihen, accuse zeigen, show	30g _	gezogen
(c) { zeihen, accuse	zieh	geziehen
(zeigen, show	zeiate	aezeiat

194. Remember the irregularities of:

essen (P. Part. gegessen) stehen, stand (or stund), geshauen (Impf. hieb) standen
gehen, ging, gegangen ziehen, zog, gezogen

Also the double forms in the Impf. of:

heben (hub, hob) schwören (fcmur, fcmor)

Note. — There are a few strong P. Parts. from verbs now otherwise weak, as: gemahlen, from mahlen, to grind (Impf. mahlen); gefalzen, from salzen, to salt (Impf. salzen); gespalten, from spalten, to split (Impf. spaltete); also some strong participles used only as adjectives, viz.:

erhaben (from erheben), exalted, sublime bescheiben (" bescheiben), modest verwarren (" verwirren), confused

VOCABULARY.

to wind up (a clock, etc.),

auf'ziehen

pass (an examination), be=
ftehen

greet, salute, grüßen

go (or be) too slow (of a
clock, etc.), nad'gehen

run after, nad'laufen (+ dat.)

cry, rufen

go (or be) too fast (of a
clock, etc.), vor'gehen

command, ber Befehl

visit, visitors, ber Befud

examination, das Examen kitchen, die Küche place, spot, die Stelle employed, busy, beschäftigt then (conj.), denn hungry, hungrig left, lint right, recht salt (adj.), gesalzen in spite of, trotz (+ gen.) improbable, unwahrscheinlich like, wie

Idioms: 1. I saw your friend to-day; he wishes to be remembered to you, 3ch habe heute Ihren Freund gesehen; er laft Gle grufen.

2. How do you like Boston ? Bie gefallt es Ihnen in Bofton ?

EXERCISE XXXII.

A. 1. Geht Ihre Uhr vor, oder geht sie nach? 2. Sie geht ganz richtig. 3. Haben Sie Ihre Uhr aufgezogen? 4. Ein kleines Mädchen fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei. 5. Ein Herr zog seine Uhr aus der Tasche und zeigte sie dem Kinde mit den Borten: "Sage du mir selbst, wie viel Uhr es ist." 6. Bo sind deine Schwestern? Marie ist oben in der Bibliothek und Sophie ist unten in der Küche. 7. Anfangs wohnten wir nicht gern in dieser Straße, aber jetzt gefällt uns dieselbe ganz gut. 8. Ich glaube, wir werden einen heißen Sommer haben; was meinen Sie? 9. Die meisten Leute essen lieber frisches Fleisch als ge-

falzenes. 10. Trop bes Befehls bes Rönigs betete Daniel jeben Tag breimal. 11. Meine Tante, die in Berlin wohnt und beren Bruber Sie fennen, ift fehr frank. 12. Grugen Sie freundlichft Ihre Eltern für mich; wenn Sie nach Saufe tommen. 13. Soffent= lich wird Frit sein Examen gut bestehen, benn er hat aufs gewissen= hafteste ftudiert. 14. Er wird es schwerlich bestehen, ba er erft feit zwei Sahren in ber Schule ift. 15. Der lügt, welcher wissentlich eine Unwahrheit fagt. 16. Ich effe gern gebratenes Rindfleisch, besonders wenn ich recht hungrig bin. 17. Rechts von ber Schule fteht eine Rirche, links fteht ber Markt. 18. Wir haben lieber abends Befuch als morgens, benn morgens find wir gewöhnlich beschäftigt. 19. Diefes Rind wird nächstens frank werben, benn es hat feit brei Tagen fast gar nichts gegeffen. 20. Es ftand früher eine Rirche auf ber Stelle wo wir jest find, aber fie ift schon längft verschwunden. 21. Bon wem wurde bie Rirche gebaut, wobon Gie fprechen ? 22. Ich weiß es nicht, es ift mir nie gefagt worden.

B. 1. Please show me the way to the post-office. 2. If George is up-stairs, tell him that I am down-stairs. 3. I do not like London; I prefer to live in a smaller city. 4. The pen still lies on the book upon which I laid it. 5. Please tell me who lives over the way. 6. This boy has been stung by a bee. 7. Of all animals the horse runs quickest. 8. Give me what you have in your (the) left hand. 9. Lessing died on the fifteenth of February 1781. 10. The soldiers ran blindly into the battle and fought like lions. 11. The train for (nach) Montreal leaves (ab'fahren) at twelve o'clock at night, and arrives in Montreal at ten o'clock in the morning. 12. A little beggar ran after a gentleman, and asked him for some money. 13. 'My father is dead,' cried he, 'my mother is dead, and all her children are dead!' 14. 'Who are you then?' asked the gentleman. 15. What answer was given to the beggar by the gentleman, when he was asked for money?

ORAL EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Was würden Sie sagen, wenn ich Sie fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei? 2. Gefällt Ihnen die Strasze, worin Sie jetzt wohnen? 3. Hat Fritz sein Examen gut bestanden? 4. Wo ist meine Feder? 5. Was für Sprachen haben Sie studiert? 6. Glauben Sie, dasz der Herr dem Bettler etwas gegeben hat?

LESSON XXXIII.

ADVERBS (continued): IDIOMS. - IRREGULAR STRONG VERBS.

195. IDIOMATIC USES OF CERTAIN ADVERBS.

1. nun, well.

Run, es ift mir einerlei,

Well (why), it is all the same to me.

NOTE. — nn is here really an interjection, and hence does not throw the subject after the verb.

2. eben, just, exactly.

Das ift eben berfelbe Mann.

That is the very (exactly the) same man.

Bir find (fo)eben angefommen, We have just arrived.

Das fann man eben nicht fagen, One cannot exactly say

3. gern, lieber, am liebften.

Ich effe gern Fisch, I am fond of (eating) fish.

Ich esse lieber Fisch als Fleisch, I prefer (eating) fish to meat.

Er würde es gern thun, He would be glad to do it, would do it with pleasure.

Belche Sprache sprechen Sie am liebsten? Which language do you prefer (speaking)?

4. crit, first, only, not before, etc.

Man muß erst benken, dann sprechen,
One must think first and then speak.
Mein Bruder wird erst morgen kommen,
My brother will not come before to-morrow.
Bir hatten erst zwei Meilen marschiert,
We had only marched two miles.
Mein Bruder ist erst zwei Jahre alt,
My brother is only (not more than) two years old.

5. zuerst, first of all; for the first time.

Dieses Schiff ist zuerst (vor allen andern) im Hafen angetommen, This ship arrived in the harbour first (i. e., before any other).

Ich werde zuerst (or erst) zum Schneiber, dann zum Buch= händler gehen, I shall go first (of all) to the tailor's, then to the bookseller's.

Ich habe ihn gestern zuerst (zum ersten Mal) gesehen, I saw him for the first time yesterday.

Note.— Buerst refers to time only, as above; erstens = 'firstly, in the first place,' refers to order only, as in enumerations, thus:

3d founte nicht fommen, erstens, weil es regnete, zweitens, weil ich frank war, I could not come, first (in the first place) because it rained, secondly, because I was ill.

6. schon, already, as early as, etc.
Sind Sie schon da? Are you there already?
If Ihr Bruder schon in Frankreich gewesen?
Has your brother ever been in France?
Ich bin schon drei Tage in der Stadt,
I have been in the city for the last three days.
Das Schiff ist schon gestern angesommen,
The ship arrived (as early as) yesterday.

Er wird ichon fommen, He will be sure to come (he will come, no doubt).

NOTE. — Softon is often, as in the fourth of the above sentences, to be left untranslated in English.

7. noch, yet, still, more.

(a) Of Time:

Sind Sie noch hier? Are you still here? Ich bin noch nie in Deutschland gewesen, I have never vet been in Germany.

Er war noch vor einer Stunde hier, He was here only an hour ago.

Noth heute, Even to-day (while it is yet to-day, not later than to-day).

NOTE. - Observe that noth precedes the negatives nie, nicht, etc.

(b) Of Number:

Roch eine Taffe Thee, Another cup of tea.

Roch zwei, Two more.

Roch (ein)mal fo viel, As much again.

8. both, yet, after all.

(a) Adversative:

Er wird body' fommen, He will come after all (emphasis on bod).

Er wird both fommen', He will come, I hope (emphasis on fommen).

habe ich es Ihnen boch gesagt! I told you so (did I not tell you so?).

NOTE. — Observe that in the last example the verb is at the beginning of the principal sentence.

(b) With Imperatives:

Rommen Sie boch herein, Pray come in (urgent).

(c) In answer to a negative question or statement:

Haben Sie ihn nicht gesehen? (Ja), boch.

Have you not seen him? Yes, I have.

I did not do it. Sie haben es boch gethan. Yes, you did.

(For both and noth as Conjunctions, see Less. XL.)

Note. — \mathfrak{D} od) gives an affirmative answer, where a negative one is expected.

9. auch, also, even, etc.

Auch sein Bater war gegen ihn, Even his father was against him.

Mein Bruder war nicht müde, und ich war auch nicht müde, My brother was not tired, and I was not tired either.

Haben Sie auch bedacht', was Sie fagen, Are you sure you have considered, what you say? (emphasis on bedacht).

10. wohl, indeed, etc.

Er leugnet es wohl, aber es ist boch wahr, He denies it indeed (to be sure) but yet it is true.

Sie sind mohl ein Fremder? I suppose (presume) you are a stranger (no doubt you are, etc.).

Note. — Gut, not wohl, is the adv. of the adj. gut, good, when modifying a transitive verb.

11. ja, yes, to be sure, etc.

Thun Sie es ja', Be sure to do it, do it by all means (emphasis on ja).

Er ist ja mein Bater', He is my father, you know (emphasis on Bater).

12. nur.

(With the Imperative.)

Rommen Sie nur herein, Just come in (reassuringly).

196. IRREGULAR STRONG VERBS.

I. Thun, to do, Impf. that, P. Part. gethan.

That, like Engl. 'did,' is a relic of the old Impf. by reduplication, the old form being te-ta, i. e., the stem ta-with reduplicating syll. te-prefixed, then te-te, tet, that. Thun rejects e of the termination throughout, except in 1. Sing. Pres. Ind., and in the Pres. Subj.

II. IMPERFECT-PRESENT VERBS.

PRES. IND. PRES. IMPERFECT P. PART. INFIN. 1. Sing. 1. Plur. SUBI. IND. SUBI. wiffen, know weiß wissen wiffe mußte mußte gewußt bürfen, dare barf burfen burfe burfte burfte aedurft fönnen, can tonnen fonne fonnte fonnte gefonnt fann mag mögen mögen, may moge mochte mochte gemocht müffen, must muffen muffe mußte müßte gemußt muß follen, shall Ini follen folle follte follte aefollt

III. Bollen, will, Pres. Ind. 1. Sing. will, 1. Plur. wollen, Pres. Subj. wolle, Impf. Ind. wollte, Subj. wollte, P. Part. gewollt.

REMARKS. — 1. Observe the following peculiarities in the verbs under II. and III.:

- (a) All have the same vowel (mostly with Umlaut) in the Inf. and the Plur. of the Pres. Ind.; but (except follen) a different vowel in the Sing. of the same tense.
- (b) The Impf. Ind. and P. Part. have the weak endings -te, -t, but the vowel is without Umlaut; wissen changes i to u; mögen changes g into h.
- (c) The Impf. Subj. has Umlaut, except in sollen and wollen.

(d) The Sing. of the Pres. Ind. of these Verbs is as follows, the Plural being regular:

Observe here the different vowel of the Inf. and Indic. (except foll); also the want of the person-ending in the 1. and 3. Sing. (id), er weiß, barf, fann, etc., not weiß-t, barf-t, fann-t; compare Engl. can, may, etc., not can-s, may-s, etc.).

- 2. The forms of the Present in the verbs under II. were originally *Strong Imperfects* (hence their want of person-endings), which came to be used with a *Present* meaning; the new (weak) Imperfects were formed from these, with vowel-change.
- 3. The Present of wollen was originally a Pres. Subj., used as Indic., and therefore also without full person-endings.
- 4. The Imperative is wanting in all under II., except wiffen, Imper. wiffe.

Notes.— i. Wiffen (= Fr. savoir) is used of knowledge, and of things only; fennen (= Fr. connaître) of acquaintance, of persons and things, thus:

Miffen Sie den Meg? Do you know the road? (i. e., do you know which is the right road?)

Rennen Sie den Beg? Are you acquainted (familiar) with the road?

Rennen Sie meinen Bruder? Do you know my brother?

Biffen Sie, mas er gefagt hat? Do you know what he said?

2. All these verbs, except miffen, govern another Verb in the Infin. without 3u (see Less. XLV), as:

3ch darf gehen, I am permitted to go.

VOCABULARY.

to put on (a hat), aussets expression, der Aussbruck*
French (language), Französsisch building, das Gebäude commandment, das Gebots

watch-key, ber Uhrschliffel dwelling-house, das Wohnhaus clear(ly), distinct(ly), deutlich although, obaleich'

- Idioms: 1. Will you be so kind as to lend me your pen? Bollen Sie fo gut sein und mir Ihre Feder leihen? (lit., will you be so kind and, etc.)
 - 2. I am sorry (I regret), Gs thut mir leib (leib to be treated as a separable particle).
 - 3. What is that in German? Die heift bas auf Deutsch ?
 - 4. I do not need to go to school to-day, Ich brauche heute nicht jur Schule ju gehen.
 - 5. He knows French, Er fann Frangisch.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

A. 1. 3th fann bich nicht verstehen; sprich doch beutlicher. 2. Rommen Sie nur berein, wenn Sie wollen. 3. Ift es Ihnen icon gelungen, Frangösisch zu lernen? 4. Ich werbe noch heute Diefe Lettion lernen muffen, und es ift icon brei Biertel auf gebn. 5. Noch por vierzehn Tagen liefen wir Schlittschub, und heute ift das Eis geschmolzen. 6. Das erfte Gebot beift (is): "Du follft feine andern Götter neben mir haben." 7. Es thut mir leib, daß wir erft morgen abreisen; ich wäre lieber heute abgereift. 8. Thut es Ihnen nicht auch leid, daß Sie bis morgen bleiben muffen? 9. Wie heißt ber englische Ausbruck 'Do vou know my friend?' auf Deutsch? "Rennen Sie meinen Freund?" 10. Mein Onkel und meine Tante find ichon gestern angefommen, aber meine Bettern und Coufinen werben erft übermorgen fommen fönnen. 11. Weißt bu, daß beine Mutter angekommen ift? 12. Ich will diesen Sut nicht aufseten, weil er mir zu lein ift. 13. Seute barf ich langer hier bleiben; ich brauche nicht vor zehn Uhr zu Hause zu sein. 14. Wollen Sie sich nicht seigen? 15. Ich werde mehr Geld haben müssen; ich habe nicht genug zur Reise. 16. Je mehr man hat, besto mehr will man. 17. Dieses unartige Kind weiß nicht, was es will. 18. Ich habe eben gehört, daß meine Mutter frank ist, aber ich werde sie nicht vor morgen besuchen können. 19. Wollen Sie gefälligst meinen Brief zur Post bringen? 20. Wilhelm wird den ganzen Tag zu Hause bleiben müssen, weil er sich erkältet hat. 21. Mein Bruder spricht gut Deutsch, obgleich er erst in in seinem siedzehnten Jahre das Studium dieser Sprache angefangen hat. 22. Wollen Sie so gut sein und mir sagen (mir zu sagen), wie viel Uhr es ist?

B. 1. A stranger wants to speak to (sprechen + acc.) you. 2. That building was first a bank, then a shop, but it is now a dwelling-house. 3. How do you know that? I know it because I have heard it from my father. 4. What shall I do? I have lost all my money. 5. Do you know who has torn this book? 6. No, I do not know who has torn it. 7. Can you write the name of that stranger? 8. Do you know German? No, but I know French. 9. Do you know the difference between the words 'fennen' and 'wiffen'? 10. I had already put on my hat, and was just on the point of going out, when the rain began. 11. These two ships set sail (abfahren) at the same time, but the smaller arrived first. 12. I could not wind up my watch yesterday evening; I had no watch-key about me. 13. I cannot remain now any longer; I must be at home at ten o'clock. 14. I know this street, but I do not know the name of it (say: how it is called). 15. A brave man is esteemed by everybody. 16. Of what is bread made?

ORAL EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Wie heiszt 'I am sorry' auf Deutsch? 2. Weshalb bleiben Sie heute nicht länger? 3. Können Sie Deutsch?

4. Sollte man gegen jedermann freundlich sein? 5. Wie gefällt Ihnen Paris? 6. Wie viel Uhr ist es, wenn der Stundenzeiger zwischen vier und fünf und der Minutenzeiger auf zehn steht?

LESSON XXXIV.

THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

- 197. The Verbs dürfen, fönnen, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen (see last Lesson), with the Verb Insien (Class VII, Less. XXXI) are called Modal Auxiliaries, or Auxiliary Verbs of Mood, since they are used to form combinations equivalent to various Moods. Thus: Insiet une gehen, 'let us go,' is really equivalent to an Imperative Mood 1. Pl. of gehen; ich fann gehen, 'I can go,' to a Potential Mood, etc.
- 198. These Modal Auxiliaries differ from the English Auxiliaries can, may, must, shall, will, in having an Infinitive and a Past Participle, and in the consequent ability to form a complete set of compound tenses, which are wanting in the English Verbs, and must therefore be supplied in that language by equivalent phrases, as shown in the following partial paradigms (see also Less. XXXV).

bürfen, to be permitted fönnen, to be able mögen, to like, be allowed (may)

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich barf, I am permitted, may able mag, I like, may

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

be permitted, | ich fönne, I (may) | ich möge, I (may) | be able | like

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich burfte, I was per- ich fonnte, I could, ich mochte, I liked, mitted was able might

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich bürfte, I might ich fönnte, I could, ich möchte, I might be permitted might be able like

PERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich habe gedurft,
I have been permitted

I have been able
I have liked

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe geburft,

I (may) have been permitted

ich habe gefonnt,

I (may) have been able

ich habe gemocht,

I (may) have liked

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

id hatte geburft,

I had been permitted

id hatte gefount,

I had been able

I had liked

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hätte geburft,
I might have been permitted ich hätte gefonnt,
I might have been able ich hätte gemocht,
I might have liked

FUTURE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde bürfen,
I shall be permitted I shall be able ich werde mögen,
I shall like

FITTIRE PERFECT.

ich werbe gedurft ha= ben. I shall have been permitted

ich werde gekonnt | ich werde gemocht haben, I shall have been able

haben, I shall have liked

SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich wurde burfen, I | ich wurde fonnen, I | ich wurde mogen, I should be permitted

should be able

should like

COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ben I should have been permitted

haben, I should have been able

ich würde gedurft ha= | ich würde gekonnt | ich würde gemocht haben, I should have liked

pelled (must)

(shall)

muffen, to be com- | follen, to be obliged | wollen, to be willing (will)

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich muß, I am com- ich foll, bu follst, pelled, must

I am (obliged) to, thou shalt

ich will. I will, intend to, am about to

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

compelled

ich muffe, I (may) be | ich solle, I (may) be | ich wolle, I (may) obliged

be willing

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich mußte, I was compelled

lich follte. I was (obliged) to, ought .

ich wollte, I was willing

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich müßte, I might be compelled

be obliged

ich follte, I might , ich wollte, I might be willing, would

PERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich habe gemußt, I have been compelled

ich habe aefollt. I have been obliged

ich habe gewollt. I have been willing

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe gemußt, compelled

ich habe gefollt. I (may) have been I (may) have been I (may) have been obliged

ich habe gewollt, willing

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich hatte gemußt. pelled

ich hatte gefollt, I had been com- I had been obliged

ich hatte gewollt. I had been willing

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hätte gemußt, I might have been compelled

ich hätte gesollt. I might have been obliged, ought to have

ich hätte gewollt, I might have been willing

FUTURE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde muffen. I shall be compelled

ich werbe follen. I shall be obliged

ich werde wollen. I shall be willing

FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gemußt haben, I shall have been compelled

ich werde gesollt ha= ben, I shall have been obliged

ich werde gewollt haben, I shall. have been willing

SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich würde müssen,
I should be compelled

I should be in ling

I should be wil-

COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gemußt ich würde gefollt has ich würde gewollt haben, I should have been compelled been obliged have been willing

199. FURTHER PECULIARITIES OF MODAL AUXILIARIES.

- 1. They govern an Infinitive without zu, as:
 Er muß gehen, He must go.
- 2. In the compound tenses, when a governed Infin. occurs, the weak P. Part. is replaced by the Infinitive (really the old strong P. Part. without prefix ge-, which coincides in form with the Infin.), as:
 - 3d habe gemußt, I have been obliged; but
 - Ich habe es thun muffen, I have been obliged to do it.
- 3. In subordinate sentences, their auxiliary of tense does not come last, but precedes both the governed infinitive and the participle of the Modal Auxiliary, as:

Er sagte, daß er es habe thun müssen, He said, that he had been obliged to do it.

NOTE. — The foregoing peculiarities are all shared by the verbs heißen, helfen, hören, lassen, machen, sehen; for other verbs governing an Infin. without zu, see Less. XLV.

4. The shorter (and older) forms of the Conditional (viz.: Impf. and Plupf. Subj., see § 111) are preferred to the longer ones (with murbe), thus:

SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich dürfte -	I	should	be permitted
ich fonnte -	I	"	" able
ich möchte -	I	"	like
ich müßte =	I	"	be compelled
ich follte =	I	66	" obliged
ich wollte =	Ι	"	" willing

COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

REMARKS. — 1. The Engl. auxiliaries also use by preference shorter forms of the Comp. Condit., but differently constructed thus:

Observe that the Engl. Verbs have the Modal Auxiliary ('could,' 'might,' etc.) in the Simple Tense (Impf.), and the governed verb ('have done') in the Compound Tense (Perf. Inf.); whereas the Germ. Verbs have the Modal Auxiliary (hätte...fönnen, etc.) in the Compound Tense (Plupf. Subj.), and the governed verb (thun) in the Simple Tense (Pres. Inf.).

2. Distinguish carefully between 'could,' *Indic.* (= was able, founte) and 'could,' *Conditional* (= would be able, founte); and so with the other verbs, thus:

Er fonnte es nicht thun = He could not (was not able to) do it (Indic.).

Er fünnte es thun, wenn er wollte = He could (would be able to) do it, if he were willing (Condit.).

VOCABULARY.

to remain up, sit up, auf'bleiben go out, auß'gehen thank, danken (+ dat.) bow to, greet, grüßen (trans.) depend, rely (upon), sich ver= lassen (auf + acc.) moment, der Au'genblick

railway, bie Gi'fenbahn

fellow-creature, neighbour,
ber Nächste
disaster, das Un'glück
untruth, falsehood, die Un'=
wahrheit
over again, noch (ein)mal'
whether, if, ob
else, otherwise, sonst

Idioms: 1. Will you have a cup of tea? No, thank you, Bollen Sie eine Taffe Thee ? Ich bante (Ihnen).

2. In fine weather, Bei fconem Better.

3. I have heard (it) said, etc., 3ch habe fagen horen, u. f. w.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

A. 1. Du hast beine Aufgabe sehr schlecht gemacht; du wirst sie gewiß noch (ein)mal'-machen müssen. 2. Darf ich einen Augensblick Ihren Bleistift brauchen? Ich habe ben meinen verloren. 3. Wir müssen gleich zur Schule gehen, sonst kommen wir zu spät. 4. Man sollte seinen Nächsten lieben, wie sich selbst. 5. Vorige Boche hätte mein Bater sein Haus verkausen können, aber er hat es nicht gewollt. 6. Jeht möchte er es gern verkausen, aber niemand will es. 7. Deine Vettern lassen dich freundlichst grüßen. 8. Wissen Sie, wie der Herr heißt, der mich soeben gegrüßt hat? 9. Du sollst zu deinem Vater gehen; er will dich sprechen. 10. Der Knabe mag sagen, was er will; ich weiß, daß er eine Unwahrheit gesagt hat. 11. Möchten Sie nicht bei diesem schönen Wetter spazieren sahren? 12. Hast du den Zug von Vussalo anstommen sehen? 13. Ja wohl, ich habe ihn ankommen sehen, aber es war niemand darauf, den ich kannte. 14. Er hat gedurft, aber

er hat nicht gewollt. 15. Ich habe in der Stadt sagen hören, daß ein großes Unglück auf der Eisenbahn geschehen ist. 16. Er soll von diesem Baum gesprungen sein, aber ich kann es kaum glauben. 17. Ich darf nicht so spät aufbleiben als mein älterer Bruder; ich muß jeden Abend um zehn Uhr zu Bette gehen. 18. Ich will thun, was ich kann; darauf können Sie sich verlassen. 19. Von wem wurde das Buch geschrieben, das Sie soeben lasen? 20. Es thut mir leid, daß Sie so lange auf mich haben warten müssen; ich konnte meine Handschuhe nicht sinden.

B. 1. By whom was this picture painted? 2. I should like to know what time it is. 3. May you go out, if you want to? No, we are obliged to stay at home the whole day. 4. I do not like (I like no) tea; I prefer (the) coffee. 5. Could you help me with my lesson? 6. I should certainly help you with it, if I could. 7. He may say, what he will; it is all the same to me. 8. My father could have sold his house last year, but now it is impossible, for nobody wants to buy it. 9. Charles has beaten his dog with a stick; he should not have done that. 10. May I offer you a piece of meat? No. thank you. 11. Have (let) the messenger wait, till I write an answer. 12. I should like to read this French book, but I do not know any French. 13. I am sorry that I have not been able to come sooner. 14. He will be obliged to study another year, if he does not pass his examination. 15. Sophia should not have gone for a walk, since the weather is so cold. 16. The horse I wanted to buy was already sold.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Wie heiszt das erste Gebot? 2. Wissen Sie, ob wir morgen zur Schule gehen müssen? 3. Darf ich Ihnen eine Tasse Thee anbieten? 4. Weshalb haben Sie mir mit meiner Aufgabe nicht helfen wollen? 5. Wie lange werden wir auf Fritz warten müssen? 6. Sollte man seinen Nächsten lieben?

LESSON XXXV.

MODAL AUXILIARIES (continued): - IDIOMS.

200. The following are the most important of the various meanings of the Modal Auxiliaries:

1. Dürfen denotes permission, as:

Darf ich fragen? May I ask?

Sie dürfen jest nach Hause gehen, You may go home now.

Er hat nichts fagen bürfen, He has not been permitted (allowed) to say anything.

2. Rönnen denotes :

- (a) ability (of persons), as:
 - Er tonnte schön schreiben, He could (was able to, knew how to) write beautifully.
 - 3th hätte nicht kommen können, I could not have (would not have been able to) come.
- (b) possibility (of events), as:

Es fann sein, It may be (so), it is possible.

- 3. Mögen denotes :
 - (a) preference, liking (of persons), as:
 - Ich mag dieses Gedicht nicht, I do not like (care for) this poem.
 - Er mochte nicht arbeiten, He did not like to work.
 - Ich hätte Ihren Bruder sehen mögen, I should have liked to see your brother.

NOTE. — This is the usual meaning in the first person; also in the Impf. (Indic. and Condit.) throughout.

(b) concession, possibility (in 2. and 3. person only), as:

Er mag gehen, He may go (as far as I am concerned), or: Let him go.

Das mag fein, That may be (for all I know).

Note. — The Engl. 'may' denoting permission must be rendered by burfen in the first person, as:

May I accompany you? Darf ich Gie begleiten?

(c) Observe this idiom:

Ich werde morgen ausgehen, mag es regnen ober nicht, I shall go out to-morrow, whether it rains or not.

4. Müffen denotes necessity, as:

Alle Menschen muffen sterben, All men must die.

Es muß gestern geschehen sein, It must have happened yesterday.

Wir werben ausgehen müffen, We shall be compelled (or 'obliged,' or 'shall have') to go.

Note. — 'To be obliged, compelled ' after a negative is rendered by brouchen, as:

I am not obliged to go, 3d brauche nicht zu gehen.

- 5. Sollen denotes duty or obligation, imposed on the subject by the will of another.
 - (a) Imposed by the speaker, as:

Du follst nicht stehlen, Thou shalt not steal.

(b) Imposed by some person other than, but recognised by, the speaker, as:

Ich foll gehen, I am to go.

Er hatte gehen follen, He ought to have gone.

Bas foll geschehen? What is to be done?

Bas follte ich thun? What was I to do?

(c) It also denotes a statement on the part of another as to the subject, as:

Er foll fehr reich fein, He is said to be very rich.

6. Mollen denotes

- (a) the exertion of the will on the part of the subject, as:
 Er will nicht gehorchen, He will not (refuses to) obey.
- (b) intention or impending action, as:

Er will morgen abreisen, He intends (means) to depart.

Das Gis will brechen, The ice is about to break (threatens to break).

Er wollte eben gehen (= war eben im Begriff zu gehen), He was just on the point of going.

(c) a statement or claim on the part of the subject, as:

Er will in Indien gewesen sein, He asserts that he has been (pretends to have been) in India.

7. Laffen is used

- (a) as auxiliary of the Imperative Mood, as:

 Raffen Sie uns hier bleiben, Let us remain here.
 - (b) to express permission, etc., as:

Man hat ben Dieb entspringen lassen, The thief has been allowed to escape.

(c) to express the agency of another, as:

Der Offizier ließ ben Solbaten bestrasen, The officer ordered the soldier to be punished.

Uschenhuttels Bater ließ den Baum umhauen, Cinderella's father had the tree cut down.

NOTE.—The infin. in the former of these examples is rendered by the passive infinitive in English, the object of the verb laffen being understood. Supply the ellipsis as follows:

Der Offizier hat jemand (obj. of lassen), ben Solbaten (obj. of bestrasen), bestrasen lassen, The officer has ordered somebody to punish the soldier.

(d) reflexively, as:

Er ließ fich leicht betrügen, He suffered himself to be deceived easily.

Ich ließ es mir gefallen, I submitted to it. Es läßt fich nicht leugnen, It cannot be denied.

201. How to render SHALL and WILL.

1. The Engl. 'shall' and 'will' must both be rendered by werden when they express mere futurity, as:

I shall be drowned and nobody will save me, 3d werde ertrinken und niemand wird mich retten.

2. But if they express more than mere futurity (e. g., obligation or determination), they must be rendered by follen and wollen respectively, as:

> I will be drowned and nobody shall save me. 3ch will ertrinken und niemand foll mich retten.

- 202. Observe the following parallel idioms:
- (a) Er hat es nicht thun fönnen, He has not been able to do it.
 Er fann es nicht gethan haben, He cannot (possibly) have done it.
- (d) Er hat es nicht thun mögen, He did not like to do it.
 Er mag es gethan haben, He may (possibly) have done it.
- (c) { Er hat es thun müssen, He has been obliged to do it.
 Er muß es gethan haben, He must have done it.
- (d) Er hat es thun sollen, He should (ought to) have done it.
 Er soll es gethan haben, He is said to have

Er hat es thun wollen, He intended to have

done it. Er will es gethan haben, He pretends (claims) to have done it.

VOCABIILARY.

to put on, draw on (coat, etc.) - Englishman, ber Engländer anziehen expect, erwarten chat, talk, plaubern reap, ichneiben disturb, interrupt, ftoren try, berfuchen last, continue, mabren American, ber Amerikaner physician, doctor, ber Arat * beggar-woman, die Bettlerin steam-engine, die Dampf= mafchine

naught, cipher; zero, die Null shoemaker, ber Schuhmacher proverb, das Sprichwort studying, bas Studieren lesson, die Stunde bunch of grapes, die Traube thermometer, der or das Ther= · mome'ter overcoat, ber Übergieber as far as, bis nach dangerous(ly), gefährlich sour, sauer

Idioms: 1. A doctor has been sent for, Man hat einen Arat holen

2. Every other day (every alternate day), Ginen Tag um ben anbern.

3. Every week, Alle acht Tage.

4. I should think so! Das follte ich meinen!

5. In the right way, Muf bie richtige Beife (acc.).

EXERCISE XXXV.

A. 1. Der Telegraph foll von einem Amerikaner erfunden worden fein. 2. "Wer im Sommer nicht mag ichneiben, muß im Winter Sunger leiben," heißt ein beutsches Sprichwort. 3. Wolle nur, was du kannst, so wirst du können, was du willst. 4. Nächste Woche follen wir einen Reiertag haben, wenn bis Sonnabend fleiftig ftubiert wird. 5. Marie wollte ihre Lektion in einer halben Stunde lernen, aber fie hat es nicht gekonnt. 6. Wir wurden alle glücklicher leben, wenn wir immer thaten, was wir thun follten. 7. Ich werde die Lettion nie lernen können. 8. Du wirft fie lernen können, wenn bu es nur auf die richtige Weise versuchft. 9. Man barf nicht in ber Schule plaubern; bas ftort ben Lehrer und die Schuler. 10. Beshalb hat Aschenputtels Bater ben Baum umhauen laffen? 11. Sollte Herr B. während meiner Abwesenheit kommen, so lassen Sie ihn auf mich warten. 12. Ich möchte nur wissen, warum Georg auf fich warten läßt! 13. Ich möchte Sie nicht ftoren, aber fagen Sie mir gefälligft, wie biefer Sat auf Englisch heißt. 14. George Bater foll gefährlich frant fein ; man hat zwei Arzte holen laffen. 15. Der Bogel wollte eben vom Baume fliegen, als der Jäger ihn ichoß. 16. Guten Morgen, herr Braun, mein Bater läßt Ihnen fagen, daß er Gie heute Abend erwartet. 17. Sabe ich Sie fagen hören, daß Sie jeden Tag eine deutsche Stundenehmen? 18. Rein, ich nehme einen Tag um ben andern eine Stunde. 19. Was mich betrifft, so möchte ich lieber alle brei Tage meine Stunden nehmen. 20. Das sollte ich meinen, benn Sie würden mehr Zeit zum Studieren haben. 21. Ehrlich währt am längsten, und Unrecht schlägt feinen eigenen Berrn.

B. 1. Let us take a walk; I cannot work any longer. 2. The beggar-woman, who has just asked us for money, says that she is (claims to be) a hundred years old. 3. She is not quite so old, but she is said to be at least above (über + acc.) ninety years old. 4. The fox said: 'The grapes are sour; I do not like them.' 5. The fox said the grapes were sour, and that he did not like them. 6. Might I ask you how far you are going? As far as Montreal. 7. Should I put on my overcoat? 8. I should think so! The thermometer is (stands) below zero. 9. Is it true that this traveller knows three languages? It may be [so], but I do not believe it. 10. If you should see little Freddy up-stairs; let him come to me. 11. By which shoemaker do you have your shoes made? 12. The steam-engine is said to have been invented by an Englishman. 13. Lazy boys learn only because they are obliged

to learn. 14. He must have been very ill, as (ba) he is still so weak. 15. This house is said to have cost four thousand dollars, but I should not like to give two thousand for it. 16. He has not been able to come on account of the storm, otherwise he would be here already.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXV.

1: Möchten Sie nicht eine Reise nach Europa machen?
2. Gehen Sie alle Tage nach der Stadt, oder nur alle zwei Tage? 3. Was machen Sie, wenn Sie nicht mehr studieren können? 4. Wer soll das Telephon erfunden haben? 5. Hat man einen Arzt holen lassen? 6. Haben Sie das Geld bezahlen müssen?

LESSON XXXVI.

COMPOUND VERBS.

203. The Prefixes of Compound Verbs may be either Inseparable or Separable.

204. A. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

REMEMBER: The omission of ge- in the P. Part.

The prefixes be-, er-, emp-, enf-, ge-, ver-, zer-, miß-, wider- are always inseparable and unaccented, the principal accent falling on the verb.

REMARKS.— 1. The particle miß—varies in usage, as shown in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 209, 1, below.

2. Remarks on the force and meaning of these particles are given in Part III.

205. B. SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

REMEMBER: 1. The Prefix is separated from the Verb only in Simple Tenses and Principal (including Direct Interrogative and Imperative) Sentences.

- 2. The ge- of the P. Part. and zu of the Infin. come between prefix and verb.
 - 3. The principal accent is on the prefix.

206. The Separable Prefixes are:

- 1. The simple prepositional and other adverbs, ab-, an-, auf-, aus-, etc.; ba(r)-, fort-, empor-, her-, hin-, etc.
- 2. The compound adverbs, such as: babon-, bazu-, etc.; boran-, borans-, etc.; entgegen-, entzwei-, zurüd-, etc.

Notes. -1. Observe that these compound adverbs are all accented on the *second* syllable.

2. The use of the compound prefixes with her- and hin- is defined in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 210, below.

EXAMPLES OF VERBS WITH PREFIXES.

(c) Separable (b) Inseparable (a) Simple Verbs. Compounds. Compounds. ausgehen, go out vergeben, pass away gehen, go zurückgeben, go back zerreißen, tear to pieces reifen, tear entgegenkommen, come bekommen, obtain fommen. to meet come ausfinden, find out finden, find erfinden, invent

Other Separable Prefixes are:

- 3. Substantives, forming one idea with the verb,
 - (a) as objects of the verb, as:

achtgeben, pay attention (attend); bantsagen, return thanks (thank); stattsinden, take place (occur); teilnehmen, take part (interest one's self).

Note. — The substantives in these combinations are usually spelt with a small letter, and written in one word with the verb when they precede it.

(b) with prepositions (= adverbial phrases), as:

sich in Acht nehmen (rest.), take care (be caresul); zu Leide thun, injure, hurt; zu Stande bringen, complete; zu Stande kommen, be completed; im Stande sein, be able; zum Borschein kommen, make one's appearance (appear); zu Mute sein, feel.

REMARK. — These substantives occupy the same position in the sentence as separable prefixes, thus:

I have observed his conduct.
Ich fagte ihm für seine Freundlichkeit bant,

I thanked him for his kindness.

Note. — Observe that in the above sentences the simple objects without preposition (acht, dauf) follow the prepositional phrases (auf scin Bestragen, für seine Freundlichseit), contrary to rule, on account of their character as separable prefixes.

4. Adjectives as prefixes are usually separable, as:

freilassen, set free (liberate); festhalten, hold fast (detain); sich lossagen (rest.), renounce.

But many are inseparable, of which fuller particulars are given in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 212.

For voll- as prefix see § 208, below.

207. C. Double Prefixes.

- 1. Separable + Separable prefix; these are compound adverbs, and both separable (see § 206, 2, above).
- 2. Separable + Inseparable; the former alone is separated, as:

an'erfennen, acknowledge, ich erfenne an (but see Suppl. Less. E., § 213).

3. Inseparable + Separable; both inseparable, as:

beauf'tragen, authorize, ich beauf'tragte ihn, I authorized
him; beranstalten, arrange, ich beranstaltete bies, I arranged this.

Note. — These are really not compound but derivative verbs, from compound nouns (Auf'trag, Au'stalt); hence also the verb (as in the former example) is always weak, not strong — beaustragte, beaustragte.

208. D. PREFIXES SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

The prefixes burn-, hinter-, über-, unter-, um-, voll- are sometimes separable, sometimes inseparable. They are:

- (a) Separable as long as both prefix and verb retain more or less of their *literal* or concrete meaning;
- (b) Inseparable when both have lost this meaning, and form together one new idea. Λ compound of the same verb and prefix may therefore be both separable and inseparable according to its meaning, as in the following examples:
- (a) Separable and Literal.
 (Accent on Prefix, Trans. and Intr.)
 burth'reisen, pass (travel)
 through, as:
- Er ist gestern hier durch' gereist, He passed through here yesterday.

hin'tergehen, go behind

übersegen (tr. or intr.), cross; jump over, ferry across, as: Er seste mit einem Sprunge über, He jumped over at a bound.

Fährmann, bitte, feten Gie mich über, Ferryman, please ferry me across. (b) Inseparable and Figurative.
(Accent on Verb, always Trans.)
burdrei'jen, traverse, travel
over, as:

Er hat das ganze Land burch:
reist, He has traversed
(travelled over) the whole
country.

hinterge'hen, deceive, as:

Er hinterging' seinen Freund, He deceived his friend.

überfet'en, translate, as:

I am translating a German book.

un'terschreiben, write under, subscribe, as:

Schreiben Sie Ihren Namen hier unter, Subscribe your name here.

um'gehen, go round, as:

Sie müffen um' gehen, You must go round.

voll'gießen, pour full, as: Er goß bas Glas voll, He poured the glass full. unterschrei'ben, sign, as:

Ich habe ben Brief noch nicht unterschriesben, I have not yet signed the letter.

umge'hen, evade, as :

Man umging' das Geset, They evaded the law.

vollen'ben, complete, as:

3th habe meine Arbeit vollen'bet, I have completed my work.

Notes. — 1. These separable prepositional prefixes are only rarely used with the verbs given above, except as *prepositions* proper, governing a case, as:

Er ging hinter ben Ofen (um das Haus), He went behind the stove (around the house).

- 2. The adverb mieder is separable, except in micherho'(en, repeat (but micherholen, fetch again).
- 3. Many compounds with these prefixes are used as inseparable compounds only; others as separable only.

VOCABULARY.

to meet with, an'treffen give up, auf'geben cease, stop, auf'hören open, auf'machen leave out, omit, aus'lassen pronounce, aus'sprechen assist, aid, bei'stehen go away, fort'gehen come out, heraus'sommen come in, herein'sommen

set (of the sun, etc.), un'tergehen
read to, vor'lejen (+ dat. of
leave, verlaffen [pers.)
promise, versprechen
present', introduce, vor'stellen
(+ acc. and dat.)
go past, pass by, vorbei'gehen
close, shut, zu'machen
come back, zurüd'sommen

collide, zusam'menstoßen send to, zu'schiden (+ dat.) coffee, der Kaffee Northern Railway, die Nord's cisenbahn slave, der Sklave marriage (-ceremony), die Trauung pale, bleich by heart, aus'wendig since, seitdem' (adv. and conj.) closed, shut (predicate), zu

even if, wenn . . . aud

Idioms: 1. What is the matter with him? 20a8 hat ec?

- 2. He feels ill, Ihm ist ichiecht zu Mute; or: Es ist ihm ichiecht zu Mute.
- 3. To translate Into German, 3ns Deutiche überfeten.
- 4. In fine weather, Bei iconem Wetter.
- 5. If you please, Wenn ich bitten barf (lit., If I may ask).

EXERCISE XXXVI.

A. 1. Bergift nicht, bas Fenster zuzumachen, wenn bu bas Rimmer verläßt. 2. Was man aufschiebt, tommt felten zu Stande. 3. Können Gie mir fagen, wie biefes Wort auf Deutsch ausge= sprochen wird? 4. Meine Schwestern famen mir entgegen, aber leider haben fie mich nicht angetroffen. 5. Biele haben versprochen, und beizustehen, aber nur wenige haben und wirklich beigeftanden. 6. Wir find jett mit bem erften Teile bes Buches beinahe fertig; nächste Boche fangen wir an, ben zweiten Teil zu überseten. 7. Awei Züge find auf ber Nordeisenbahn zusammengestoßen. 8. 3ch borte auf ju singen, weil ich heiser wurde. 9. Mein Bater machte ben Brief auf und las benfelben ber Familie vor. 10. Wer ein= mal lügt, bem glaubt man nicht, und wenn er auch bie Wahrheit spricht. 11. Saben Sie die Zeitung bekommen, die ich Ihnen aus ber Stadt zugeschickt habe? 12. Effen Sie gewöhnlich in ber Stadt Bu Mittag? 13. Sa wohl, ich gehe jeden Tag um neun Uhr fort und tomme erft um feche Uhr zurud. 14. Mancher hat angefangen, was er nicht vollendet hat. 15. Unfere Nachbarn muffen wohl fort sein, benn alle Laben sind bei ihnen zu. 16. Kommen Sie boch herein; ich will Sie herrn Braun vorftellen. 17. 3ch banke vielmals, aber ich bin ihm schon vorgestellt worben. 18. Bei schönem Wetter gehen wir unserm Bater entgegen, wenn er nach Hause kommt. 19. Findet die Trauung Ihres Betters morgen oder übermorgen statt? 20. Wollen Sie eine Tasse Thee? Geben Sie mir lieber eine Tasse Kassee.

B. 1. The Reformation took place in the sixteenth century. 2. Have you closed all the doors and windows? 3. What is the matter with you? You look so pale. 4. I do not know; since I have come back, I do not feel at all well. 5. In the year 1865 all slaves in the United States were set free. 6. Have you opened the letters which have just arrived? 7. The sun sets earlier now, and the weather begins to grow colder. 8. Mary is learning a poem by heart; she has already repeated it ten-times. 9. Have you found out at what o'clock the meeting takes place? 10. Do you know the gentleman who has just gone past? 11. When we were going past the church. the people were just coming out. 12. Pay attention to your work; you always leave out words, when you are copying. 13. Why have you closed the window? I was beginning to catch cold. 14. I have tried to learn this poem, but it is too hard for me, and I have given it up at last. 15. Goethe's 'Faust' has been translated into English by Bayard Taylor. 16. The marriage of my brother takes place to-morrow at eleven o'clock.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. In welchem Jahre wurden die Sklaven in den Vereinigten Staaten freigelassen? 2. Lernst du gern Gedichte auswendig? 3. Glauben Sie, dass unsere Nachbarn fort sind? 4. Kennen Sie den Mann, der am Hause vorbeigeht? 5. Wer hat diesen Brief aufgemacht? 6. Wie sprechen Sie das Wort G-o-e-t-h-e aus?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON E.

ON CERTAIN PREFIXES.

209. THE INSEPARABLE PREFIX miß-.

The particle min- is inseparable, but:

(a) With certain verbs it takes the ge- of the P. Part. and ju of the Infin. after it, as:

miß'handeln, act amiss miß'gehandelt miß'juhandeln

With other verbs miß- either :

- (b) Has ge- before it, as:
 - mißhan'beln, ill-treat P. Part. gemiß'handelt or:
- (c) Drops ge- altogether, as:
 miffgl'sen, displease P. Part. miffgl'sen

Note. - Observe that the principal accent:

under (a) is on the prefix throughout;

- " (b) is on the prefix in the P. Part. only, otherwise on the verb;
- " (c) is on the verb throughout.

210. Use of the Prefixes her- and hin-.

1. The particles her ('hither') and hin ('hence') are prefixed to verbs, both simple and compound, to indicate the direction towards or from the speaker respectively, as:

Rommen Gie ber, Come here (hither, to me).

Geben Sie bin, Go (there) thither (hence, from me).

Hence, a person standing up-stairs would say to one below:

Rommen Sie herauf, Come up here (up-stairs);

but to one up-stairs:

Beben Sie hinunter, Go down there (down-stairs).

2. The simple prepositional adverbs ab-, au-, au-, au-, ein-, niebe-, ibe-, un-, u-, u-

- 3. (a) When, with aus- and nor-, also with au-in the sense of 'down,' the place from which the motion proceeds is implied, but not specified, the direction to or from the speaker is further indicated by prefixing ner- and hin- respectively.
 - (b) When, with the remaining prefixes (an-, auf-, etc.), the place to which the motion is directed is implied, but not specified, heror hin- is similarly prefixed.
- 4. The following examples will serve to show more clearly the difference between verbs with the simple prefixes and those with her- or hin-:
 - (a) With Simple Prefix:

ansgehen, go out (for a walk, on business, etc.)

vorziehen, prefer absteigen, dismount ankommen, arrive

übergehen, desert [perish untergehen, set (of the sun); sink;

(b) With her- or bin-:

hinausgehen, go out (from the house)

hervorziehen, draw forth herabsteigen, descend

herantommen, come up to, approach

hinübergehen, go over, across hinuntergehen, go down (stairs, etc.)

5. When the place from or to which respectively is specified, these words are used as *prepositions proper*, governing a substantive, but may be repeated as adverbial prefixes with her or hin, as:

Er ging aus dem Zimmer (hinaus). Er jog ben Brief aus ber Tafche (heraus).

Notes. - 1. Ab-, meaning 'off, away,' does not require these prefixes, as:
abreisen, abgehen, to depart, go off; - but: hinabgehen, to go down.

z. \(\mathbb{E}(n-\) is replaced, when the place to which is specified, by the preposition (n with the accusative, as:

Er ritt in bie Stadt hinein.

3. Sometimes other prepositions are used to indicate the place from or to which, in which case the compound prefix is used, as:

Ich werbe nach Europa hinübergehen, I shall go over to Europe. Er ist vom Dache herabgefallen, He has fallen down from the roof.

OTHER PREFIXES.

211. Verbs derived from compound substantives are treated as simple Verbs, as:

Das Früh'ftud, the breakfast, früh'ftüden, to breakfast; ich früh's ftüdte, gefrüh'ftüdt.

Die Sand'habe, the handle, hand'haben, to handle; hand habte, achand'habt.

Der Rat'schlagt, the counsel, rat'schlagen, to take counsel; rat's schlagte, gerat'schlagt.

NOTE.— Observe that all such verbs are weak, as in the case of the last two of the above verbs, which are not compounds of haben or foliagen respectively.

212. Adjective Prefixes are frequently inseparable, but retain the principal accent and require ge-before them in the P. Part., as:

weiß'sagen, to prophesy, weiß'sagte, geweißiggt; recht'fertigen, to justify, recht'fertigte, gerecht'fertigt; lieb'fosen, to caress, lieb'stofte, gelieb'fost;

also the substantive compound:

luff'mandeln, to walk for pleasure, geluft'mandelt.

213. Some verbs with Separable + Inseparable Prefix are used only in constructions which do not require the separation of the former particle from the verb; thus we may say:

Christus ist auferstanden, Christ is risen from the dead, — or: Als Christus auferstand, — but instead of:

Er erstand auf, — we say: Er stand bon ben Soten auf. Similarly with auserlesen, porenthalten, and a few others.

EXERCISE E.

1. Have you answered all the letters? I have answered all except this one. 2. I have asked my sister, if (whether) she is ready, but she has not answered. 3. She has gone up-stairs; perhaps she has not heard. 4. Let her come down, for I cannot wait for her any longer. 5. I should like to speak to your father; is he at home? 6. Yes, he is up-stairs in his study; please go up. 7. Some one is shouting in the street; go out and see what is the matter. 8. Are you going out to-day? I am going out, as soon as I have breakfasted. 9. George, go out of the room; you have been behaving badly. 10. Many people say that Mr. B. has acted amiss in this affair, but he has justified himself. 11. We started so early yesterday morning that we had no time to breakfast. 12. Several people were standing on (auf) the street before a burning house, and were looking up. 13. A poor woman with her child was on the point of jumping down. 14. At last a fireman went up and saved both [of them]. 15. The boy has abused his dog, and therefore he was punished by his father. 16. The dog was howling in the street, but some one went out and brought him in.

LESSON XXXVII.

REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

- 214. I. All Reflexive Verbs are conjugated with haben. For an example of their conjugation see § 41, and observe the use of fith as special reflexive of the third person for all genders and both numbers.
- 2. The reflexive pronoun is introduced as near to the beginning of the sentence as possible, sometimes even before the subject, when the latter follows the verb and is not a pronoun, and especially if the subject has adjuncts, as:

Gestern hat sich mein lieber, alter Vater beschäbigt, My dear old father injured himself yesterday.

- 215. 1. Any transitive verb may be used reflexively, when the action of the verb is on the subject; but Reflexive Verbs proper are:
 - (a) Those which are used only reflexively, especially such as indicate a state of mind or feeling, as:

sich befleißen (gen.), apply

- " befleißigen, one's self
- " begnügen (mit), be contented
- " befinnen (gen.), recollect
- " erbarmen (gen.), take.pity, have mercy
- " erfälten, catch cold

- fich grämen (gen., or über + acc.), grieve
- "schämen (gen., or über+ acc.), be ashamed
 - " sehnen (nach), long (for), yearn
 - " wundern (über + acc.), be astonished
- (b) Those which, though used also as transitive verbs, have a special meaning as reflexives, as:

freuen (impers.), rejoice (tr.), fich freuen (gen., or über + acc.), make glad rejoice (intr.), be glad fürchten, fear

hüten, protect ftellen, place verlaffen, leave

autragen, carry (to)

sich fürchten (vor + dat.), be afraid

" hüten (vor + dat.), beware

" stellen, pretend

" verlassen (auf + acc.), rely (upon)

" zutragen (impers.) happen, occur

2. Transitive verbs are often used in English with the direct (personal) object unexpressed, e. g., 'change, turn, open, spread,' etc.; such verbs have the object expressed in German as the reflexive pronoun, e. g.:

The weather has changed, Das Wetter hat sich geanbert. The wind is turning to the east, Der Wind dreht sich nach Often.

The door opened, Die Thur öffnete fic.

The disease was spreading over the whole town, Die Krankheit verbreitete sich über die ganze Stadt.

- 3. For the use of Reflexive Verbs for the Passive Voice, see \S 114, (b).
- 4. From what has been said above, it will be evident that Reflexive Verbs are used to a much greater extent in German than in English, which indeed has no Reflexive Verbs in the strict sense defined above.

- 216. GOVERNMENT OF REFLEXIVE VERBS.

1. All true reflexives take the reflexive (personal) object in the accusative; the remote object (the thing) is in the genitive, or is governed by a preposition, as shown in the examples given in § 215, 1, above, thus:

3ch schäme mich meines Betragens, I am ashamed of my behaviour.

Erinnerst du dich dessen nicht? Do you not remember it? Bir sehnten uns nach unserer Mutter, We longed for our mother.

Ich erbarmte mich feiner, I had pity upon him.

- 2. Some spurious reflexives have the reflexive (personal) object in the dative, and the thing in the accusative, as:
 - 3ch fann mir bas benten, I can imagine that.
 - 3ch bilbete mir bies nur ein, I only imagined this.

Note. — Sich schmeicheln takes the dative of the person with a clause as direct object, thus:

3ch schmeichelte mir, daß ich es thun könnte, I flattered myself, that I could do it.

217. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs Proper are those used only in the third person sing., with the neuter pronoun to as subject.

- 1. Those expressing Natural phenomena, as:
- es schneit, it snows

es blist, it lightens

es regnet, it rains

es bonnert, it thunders, etc.

also with the verbs fein or werben, as:

- **Es** ift (wirb) falt, warm, bunfel, etc., It is (grows) cold, warm, dark, etc.
- Es ist (schlägt) fünf. It is (strikes) five.
- 2. Those expressing bodily or mental affections
 - (a) with accusative of person.
 - Es friert mich, I am (feel) cold.
 - Es verlangt mich (nach), I am (feel) desirous.
 - Es freut mich, I am glad (it rejoices me).
 - Es wundert mich, I wonder (it makes me wonder).

Es jammert mich (gen.), I pity (it moves me to pity).

Es reut mich (gen.), I repent (it rues me), etc.

(b) with Dative of person.

Es bunft (beucht) mir, Methinks.

Es gelingt mir, I succeed, etc.

(c) with sein or werben (Dative of person), as:

Es ist (wird) mir übel, wohl (zu Mute), I feel ill, well (it is ill, well to or with me in spirit).

Ge ist mir lieb, leib, I am glad, sorry (it is dear, sad to me).

NOTE. — In this class of verbs the subject es is omitted when the personal object precedes the verb, as: mid) wundert, etc.

3. Verbs used impersonally with a special sense, as:

Wie steht's mit Ihnen? How fares it with you? Es aeht mir aut. I am well.

Bas giebt's? What is the matter?

Bas fehlt Ihnen? What ails you?

Also sein and werben, as under 1 and 2, (c), above.

4. For the impersonal use of the passive voice, see § 113.

Note. — Of the above classes, those alone are strictly impersonal which admit only of £8 as subject; others, which are used with other subjects, but only in the third person (sometimes plur. as well as sing.) are properly called unipersonal.

218. CONJUGATION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

- 1. Impersonal Verbs form their various tenses, moods, etc., in precisely the same way as other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular.
 - 2. Some are weak, others strong, as:

frieren, to freeze, Impf. es fror, gefroren; schneien, to snow, Impf. es schneite, P. Part. geschneit.

3. Most of them are conjugated with haben, as:

Es hat geschneit, gefroren, etc.;

but some take sein, e. g., gelingen, glücken, to succeed; geschehen, to happen (compare § 53), as:

Es ift geschehen, It has happened.

219. GOVERNMENT OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

- 1. Impersonal Verbs expressing bodily or mental affections, etc., take the immediate (personal) object (= Engl. subj.) in the *Dative* or *Accusative* (see § 217, 2, 3, above).
- 2. Those under § 217, 2, (a), denoting a mental affection may be used
 - (a) impersonally, with the thing (cause of emotion) in the genitive, as:
 - Ge jammert mich seiner, I pity him (it moves me to pity of him).
 - Es reuet mich meiner Sünden, I repent (it makes me repent) of my sins.
 - (b) personally, with the thing (cause of emotion) as subject, as:

Er jammert mich, I pity him (he moves me to pity).

Meine Sünden reuen (pl.) mich, I repent of my sins (my sins move me to repentance).

REMARK. — Observe that the English subject is object in German, the verb remaining always in the third person, as:

Es freut min, I am glad.

Es freut bich, Thou art glad.

Es freut ihn, He is glad.

Es freut uns, We are glad, etc.

220. THERE IS, THERE ARE, etc.

- 1. The English there is, there are (was, were, has been, will be, etc.) must be rendered in German by cs giebt (gab, hat... gegeben, wirb... geben, etc.), when an indefinite existence is expressed, or in general assertions, as:
 - Es gab früher viele Leute, welche glaubten, etc., There were formerly many people who believed, etc.
 - Es wird dieses Jahr viele Pflaumen geben, There will be a great many plums this year.

REMARKS. — 1. The English subject is object of giebt in German, and is in the accusative, as:

- Es giebt einen Noman (acc.) von Didens, welcher "Nifolas Nidleby" heißt, There is a novel (nom.) by Dickens, called 'Nicholas Nickleby.'
- 2. The verb (geben) is always in the singular in German, being a true impersonal; and es is never omitted, as:

Diefes Sahr giebt es, etc.

- 2. There is, etc., must be rendered into German by cs iff, cs find (cs war, etc.), when definite existence is expressed, or in particular assertions, as:
 - Es ift ein Bogel in diesem Bauer, There is a bird in this cage.
 - Es find zwei Bögel auf diesem Baume, There are two birds on this tree.

REMARKS.— 1. The English subject is also subject (nominative) in German, as:

Es ist ein Noman (nom.) von Dickens auf dem Tisch, There is a novel (nom.) by Dickens on the table.

2. The verb (sein) agrees in number with the *real* subject, and es is omitted, unless it begins the sentence, as:

Ein Bogel ift in diesem Bauer, There is a bird, etc.

NOTE. — This shows that e8 is the *indefinite* e8, replacing the real subject (see § 39, 1), and *not* the impersonal e8.

VOCABULARY.

to dress (trans.), an'fleiden dress (intr.), sich ankleiden resolve, decide, sich entschließen explain, erklären be mistaken, sich irren turn around (intr.), sich um's brehen get married, marry (intr.), sich verhei'raten marry (trans.), hei'raten hurt (wound), verlegen

lightning, ber Blig
thirst, ber Durft
lemonade, die Limonade
caterpillar, die Raupe
sleighing, die Schlittenbahn
way, mode, die Weise
successful(ly), glücklich
now-a-days, heutzutage
long (adv.), längst
past, vorbei
in all ages, zu allen Zeiten

Idioms: 1. I feel well, Mir ift wohl ju Mute.

- 2. He has married the daughter of the doctor, Er hat fich mit der Tochter bes Doctors verheiratet.
- 3. In this way, Auf diefe Beife (acc.).
- 4. I was hungry (thirsty), 3d hatte Bunger (Durft).

EXERCISE XXXVII.

A. 1. Es donnert, und ich fürchte, es wird bald regnen. 2. Um wie viel Uhr wird bei Ihnen zu Mittag gegessen? 3. Es hat während der Nacht gefroren und heute werden wir Schlittschuh lausen können. 4. Weshalb donnert es, wenn es blitt? Das läßt sich nicht leicht erklären. 5. Ich habe meinen besten Hund verloren; so ein Hund sindet sich nicht leicht wieder. 6. Es freut uns sehr, daß Heinrich sein Examen glücklich bestanden hat. 7. Ich sürchte, es wird dieses Jahr nur wenige Apfel geben; die Raupen haben fast alle Blätter von den Bäumen gefressen. 8. Guten Morgen, Herr Braun; giebt's heute etwas Neues? 9. Mein ältester Bruder hat sich verheiratet. 10. Mit wem hat er sich verheiratet? 11. Mit der Tochter des Dostor B.; erinnern Sie sich

nicht ihrer? 12. Schmeicheln Sie sich, daß es Ihnen auf diese Weise gelingen wird? Sie haben nicht Geld genug. 13. Ich habe viel mehr Geld als ich brauche; ich würde mich mit der Hälfte begnügt haben. 14. Es würde mich gar nicht wundern, wenn wir noch heute Regen bekämen. 15. Als ich an dem Hause vorüberzging, öffnete sich die Thür, und ein alter Herr kam heraus. 16. Dich friert; du solltest deinen Überzieher anziehen. 17. Es waren noch viele Leute auf der Straße, als ich nach Hause kam. 18. Es wird dich bald deines Petragens reuen, wenn ich mich nicht irre; du solltest dich sich sich sich sich heutzutage Thoren, und leider hat es zu allen Zeiten Thoren gegeben. 20. Sie können sich benken, daß es mich wunderte, als ich mich umdrehte und meinen längst verlornen Freund vor mir sah.

B. 1. Are you afraid when it lightens? 2. Yes, I am always afraid of the lightning. 3. What is the matter with you? You do not look at all well. 4. I do not know what ails me; I do not feel well, perhaps I have caught cold. 5. It has been snowing the whole night, and to-day we have fine sleighing. 6. Have you hurt yourself? Yes, I have cut my finger. 7. There are two gentlemen at the door; do you know them? 8. I know one of them, but I cannot remember his name. 9. I must dress immediately, or else I shall not be ready at seven o'clock. 10. If you do not dress more warmly, you will catch cold. 11. I am thirsty; please give me a glass of lemonade. 12. I am glad that the thunder-storm is past; the lightning is dangerous. 13. Do you remember whether he was here on the 15th or on the 16th of January? 14. Have you decided to leave (the) town, and to pass the summer in the country? 15. I hear somebody shouting in the street; what is the matter?

ORAL EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Sollte man sich vor dem Donner fürchten? 2. Wie lange wohnen Sie schon in dieser Strasze? 3. Stehen Sie

gewöhnlich früh des Morgens auf? 4. Weshalb hast du die Fenster zugemacht? 5. Wie gefällt es Ihnen in diesem Hause? 6. Wird es dieses Jahr viele Pflaumen geben?

LESSON XXXVIII.

PREPOSITIONS.

221. The Prepositions with 'the Dative only have been given in §§ 46, 51; those with the Accusative only in §§ 34, 50; those with Dative or Accusative in § 65.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE.

222. The Prepositions governing the Genitive are chiefly nouns used adverbially. The following lines contain the principal ones, and will aid the memory:

Unweit, mittelst, fraft und während, Laut, vermöge, ungeachtet,
Oberhalb und unterhalb,
Innerhalb und außerhalb,
Diesseit, jenseit, halben, wegen,
Statt, auch längs, zufolge, trots
Stehen mit dem Genitiv;
Doch ist hier nicht zu vergessen,
Daß bei diesen letzten drei
Auch der Dativ richtig sei.

223. The meanings of these prepositions are as follows:

1. halb(en), halber, for the sake of, on account of 2. wegen,

REMARKS.— 1. Halber, halber, always follows the case; wegen may follow or precede a noun, but always follows a personal pronoun.

2. Salb is used only in beshalb and weshalb; halben after the personal pronouns or substantives with a determinative or attributive word; halber after a substantive used alone, as:

Des Friedens halben, For the sake of peace. Beispiels halber, For the sake of example.

3. The personal pronouns have a special form ending in -t before halben and megen, thus:

meinethalben, for my sake unsertwegen, on our account, etc.

- 3. außerhalb, (on the) outside of
- 5. oberhalb, above 6. unterhalb, below
- 4. innerhalb, (on the) inside of

EXAMPLES:

Unser Garten ist außerhalb (innerhalb) ber Stadt, Our garden is outside (inside) of the town. Montreal liegt unterhalb des Ontario=Sees, Montreal lies below Lake Ontario.

Remark. — Sinnerhalb in expressions of time may be followed by the dative of a substantive without article, as:

Innerhalb zwei Tagen, Within two days.

7. fraft, by virtue of

- 9. (ver)mittelft,) by means
- 8. laut, in accordance with
- 11. zufolge, in consequence of

REMARK. — Bufolge governs the genitive when it precedes its case, but the dative when it follows, as:

Er that dies zufolge meines Befehls, or meinem Beschle zufolge, He did this in consequence of my order.

10. bermoge.

12. Diesseit, on this side

13. jenjeit, on that (the other)

REMARK. — Diesseit and jenseit are prepositions (governing a noun); biesseits and jenseits adverbs (without a case), as:

Ich wohne biesseit, er jenseit bes Flusses, I live on this, he on that (the other) side of the river, — but:

Wir wohnen beide nahe am Flusse; ich diesseits, er jenseits, We both live near the river; I on this, he on the other side.

14. ftatt, auftatt, instead of

REMARK. — Anftatt is sometimes divided, thus:

Anstatt meines Brubers, Instead of my brother, — or: An meines Brubers Statt, (In my brother's stead).

15. ungeachtet, notwithstand- 16. trot, in spite of ing

REMARKS. - 1. Ungeachtet may precede or follow its case.

2. Trop governs the dative in the phrase troporm, 'in spite of that,' and with the meaning of 'as well as,' as:

Dieser Anabe reitet trot einem Manne, This boy rides as well as a man.

17. während, during

18. längs, along

REMARKS. — 1. Längs also governs the dative, and always precedes its case, as:

Längs bes Ufers, or bem Ufer, Along the shore.

2. Entlang governs the *genitive* when it precedes its case; but it more commonly *follows* its case, and governs the *accusative*, as:

Er ging ben Fluß entlang, He went along the river.

To these may be added:

20. angesids, in presence of 22. um... willen, for the sake 21. inmitten, in the midst of

REMARKS. — 1. Ilm ... willen takes the case between um and willen, as:

Um meines Baters willen, For my father's sake.

2. The personal pronouns have the same forms with um... willen as with halben and wegen, thus:

um seinetwillen, for his sake um Ihretwillen, for your sake, etc.

23. unfern, anot far from 24. unmeit.

224. GENERAL REMARKS ON PREPOSITIONS.

1. An Adverb of direction is frequently placed after an accusative, like a preposition after its case, as:

Den Berg hinauf, Up the mountain.

2. (a) Some prepositions may govern a substantive clause with baß, as:

Ehre Bater und Mutter, auf baß es bir wohl gehe, Honour father and mother, that it may go well with thee.

Notes.—1. Such are auf, außer (also used with wenn), bis, ohne, (an)statt, ungeachtet, während.

- 2. Bis, ungeachtet, mahrend are also used as conjunctions without daß.
 - (b) 11m, ohne, and (an)statt may govern an infinitive with zu, as:

Er kam gestern, um bich zu besuchen,
He came yesterday (in order) to visit you.
Ican nie daran denken, ohne zu lachen,
I can never think of that without laughing.
Dieser Mann sollte arbeiten, anstatt zu betteln,
This man ought to work, instead of begging.

REMARK. — But if the subject of the infinitive clause is different from that of the sentence on which it depends, bag must be used, as:

Ich fonnte nicht vorbeigehen, ohne daß er mich sah (not ohne mich zu sehen), I could not pass by without his seeing me.

3. Prepositions may govern adverbs, as: nad oben, upward; nad hinten, to the rear; auf immer, forever; bon fern, from afar; and the compounds with ba(r)—and wo(r)— (see § 38, Rem. 5; 83, 3; 96, 7).

4. A substantive governed by a preposition may be followed by an adverb, for nearer definition, as:

Rach einer Richtung hin, In one direction.

Bon allen Seiten her, From all sides.

Er ritt hinter bem Feinde her, He rode in pursuit of the foe.

Um das Haus herum, Round (about) the house.

Bon nun an, From henceforth.

Bon Jugend auf, From youth up.

VOCABULARY.

to observe, remark, bemerken elect, erwählen (+ zu) permit, allow, erlauben inquire (about), sich erkundigen (+ nach)

go about, around, herum'gehen ring (a small bell), flingeln go for a walk, spazieren gehen divide, teilen let (of houses, etc.), vermieten go away, weggehen the opposite, das Ge'genteil custom, habit, die Gewohnheit microscope, das Mitrostop'

(the) little Red (Riding)
Hood, das Notkäppchen
umbrella, der Regenschirm
drop, der Tropfen
drunkard, der Trunkenbold
will, testament, das Testament'
stairs, staircase, die Treppe
deceased, der (die) Berstorbene
warning, die Warnung
living, leben'dig
loose, slack, los
in_time, punctually, recht'=
yeitig
except that, außer daß

Idioms : 1. For all I care, Meinetwegen.

- 2. This house is for sale, Dicies Saus ift zu berkaufen (lit., to be sold).
- 3. He was elected mayor, Er wurde jum Bürgermeister erwählt (lii., to or for a, etc., jum = ju einem).
- 4. I have been here for a week, 3ch bin feit acht Lagen bier.
- 5. To laugh (at), make sport (of), Gid luftig machen (über + acc.).
- 6. What is the matter? 28as ift los?
- 7. There is a ring (at the door, etc.), & flingelt.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

A. 1. Das haus, welches zu verkaufen ift, steht außerhalb der Stadt, nicht weit vom See. 2. Wenn es nur innerhalb ber Stadt ftunde, fo wurde ich gern taufend Thaler mehr bafur geben. Wefällt es Ihnen beffer diesfeit des Fluffes zu wohnen, oder jenfeits? 4. Trot bes Sturmes fam bas Schiff rechtzeitig in New Norf an. 5. Diefer Trunkenbold hat um feiner Familie willen bas Trinken aufgegeben. 6. Er fürchtete, daß feine Göhne die ichlechte Gewohn= beit lernen möchten. 7. Der hungrige Wolf ging mehrmals um bas Saus und suchte Rotfappenen. 8. Bermittelft feines großen Ginfluffes bei ben Reichen hat sich Serr A. zum Bürgermeister erwählen laffen. 9. Seit wann wohnen Sie in dieser Strafe? Seit drei Jahren. 10. Um meinetwillen will er nicht mit mir geben; vielleicht wurde er um Ihretwillen geben. 11. Ift Georg oben? Ja, er ift foeben bie Treppe hinaufgegangen. 12. Laffen Sie uns lieber nach oben geben ; es wird uns beffer gefallen oben zu figen als unten. 13. Es hat vor einigen Minuten geklingelt; wer war da? 14. Es war jemand, der sich erfundigen wollte, ob diefes haus zu vermieten fei. 15. Dem Teftamente zufolge wurde bas Eigentum unter bie beiden Göhne bes Berftorbenen geteilt. 16. Meinetwegen mag er geben, sobald es ihm gefällt. 17. Außer bag Georg ein wenig größer ift, bemerkt man gar keinen Unterschied zwischen ben beiben Brübern. 18. Berr D. ist einer meiner besten Freunde; er geht fast nie am Sause vorüber ohne hereinzukommen. 19. Unweit ber Stadt B. fteht bas haus, worin ich geboren bin.

B. 1. I shall take my stick instead of my umbrella; I am not afraid of the rain. 2. Have you been taking a walk along the shore? Yes, in spite of the bad road. 3. Not far from the school I let my new knife fall into the snow, and could not find it again. 4. Do you know what was the matter? I heard a great noise down-stairs. 5. I do not know (it), but I shall inquire. 6. Were you allowed (perf.) to stay? No, we had (perf.) on the contrary to go away again immediately. 7. We have been here since yesterday, and we must wait three days more for the ship. 8. One part of the city lies on this side, the other on that side of a broad river. 9, I do not think much of this gentleman; he would do anything for money. 10. By means of a microscope living animals can be seen in a drop of water. 11. In consequence of this bad news we must be back inside of a week. 12. Should we make sport of other people? 13. No, that is a bad habit. 14. Yonder is the river; on this side stands my house, on, that side his. 15. Notwithstanding the warning of his father the youth often went on the water in bad weather. 16. Instead of taking the large boat he always took the small one.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Weshalb hat der Trunkenbold das Trinken aufgegeben?
 Auf welche Weise hat sich Herr B. zum Bürgermeister erwählen lassen?
 Haben Sie klingeln hören? Wer war da?
 Wo sind Sie geboren, und in welchem Jahre?
 Fürchten Sie, es könnte regnen?
 Kannst du mir sagen, was auf der Strasze los war?

LESSON XXXIX.

PREPOSITIONS (continued):-IDIOMS.

225. Prepositions vary more, perhaps, as to idiomatic usage in different languages than any other part of speech. Their proper use must be acquired chiefly by practice and memory, but below are given the German equivalents, in various idioms, of the most commonly occurring English Prepositions, more particularly in cases where the usage of the two languages differs.

226.

About.

- (a) In the sense of 'around' = um, as:

 Sie versammesten sich um ihn, They assembled about
- (b) Of time = ungefähr um (um alone = 'at'; see § 227, (b) 1, below), as:

Ungefähr um zehn Uhr, About ten o'clock. Ungefähr um Weihnachten, About Christmas.

(c) In the sense of 'nearly' (of number) = etwa, unges führ (adverbs), as:

Er hat etwa (ungefähr) tausend Thaler übrig, He has about a thousand dollars left.

(d) In the sense of 'with,' 'about' (the person) = bei, as: Ich habe fein Gelb bei mir, I have no money with me, about me.

227.

At.

- (a) Of locality:
 - in, when the action, etc., is within a building, etc.,
 as:

In der Schule, in der Kirche, im Theater, im Konzert, At school, at church, at the theatre, at the concert.

2. = an, when the action, etc., is adjacent to the object of the preposition, as:

Am Fenster, an der Thur, am Tische, At the window, at the door, at the table (but bei Tische, at table).

3. = auf, when the action is on the surface, or on an elevation, as:

Auf dem Markte, auf dem Balle, auf der Post, auf der Universität, auf dem Schlosse, At market, at the ball, at the post-office, at the university, at the castle.

4. = zu or in with proper names of towns (also with Saus, 'home'), etc., as:

Zu (in) Paris, At Paris. Zu Hause, At home.

(b) Of time:

1. = um (most usually), as:
11m halb vier 11hr, At half past 3 o'clock.

11m Ditern, At Easter.

2. = ju, with Beit and Stunde, as :

Bur rechten Beit, At the right time.

Ru biefer Stunde, At this hour.

NOTE. — Um with the acc. is also admissible with these words.

3. = bei, as:

Bei Tagesanbruch, At day-break.

(c) Of price = zu, as:

Dieser Zucker wird zu zwei Thalern das Pfund verkauft, This sugar is sold at two dollars a pound.

228. By.

(a) Expressing the *personal agent* after the passive voice = **bont**, as:

Das Rind wird von seinen Estern geliebt, The child is loved by its parents.

(b) Of a part of the body, etc. = bei, as:

Er nahm bas Kind bei ber Hand, He took the child by the hand.

(c) Unclassified:

Bei Licht, By candle-light.

Bei Nacht, By night.

Mit Gewalt, By force.

Mit ber Gisenbahn, By the railway.

Bu Land, ju Baffer, By land, by water.

229.

Rendered usually by für, but:

(a) Of purpose = zu (never für), as:

Dies ist schönes Wetter zum Spazierengehen, This is fine weather for taking a walk.

Er reist zum Bergnügen, He travels for pleasure.

For.

(b) Of time:

1. Past = jeit, as:

Seit einem Monate, For a month (past).

2. Future = \mathfrak{auf} + acc., as:

Ich werde auf einige Tage verreisen, I shall go away for a few days.

3. Duration = acc. without preposition, as:

Er war einen ganzen Monat hier, He was here for a whole month.

(c) Of cause = aus, as:

Er that es aus Furcht, He did it for fear.

(d) Unclassified:

Rur's Erfte, For the present.

Zum ersten (zweiten, etc.) Mal, For the first (second, etc.) time.

Bum Geburtstage, zu Beihnachten, For (as) a birthday-present, for a Christmas-present.

230. In.

Rendered usually by in, but:

(a) = auf, as:

In the street, Auf der Straße. In the country, Auf dem Lande.
In this manner, Auf diese Beise (acc.).
In German, Auf Deutsch.

(b) = unter, as:

Unter Elisabethe Regierung, In Elizabeth's reign.

(c) = zu, as: Zu Wagen, In a carriage.

231. Of.

(a) By the genitive without preposition, to express the relation of the possessive case, as:

Der Wille unsers Naters, The will of our father (i. e., our father's will).

- (b) = bon:
 - 1. After verbs, etc., as:

3ch spreche von ihm, I speak of him.

2. Between titles and names of places, as:

Die Rönigin bon England, The Queen of England.

3. After numerals and other partitives, as:

Einer bon meinen Freunden, One of my friends.

Der alteste bon meinen Brübern, The eldest of my

4. Replacing a genitive plural without article, as:

Er ist der Bater von vier Knaben, He is the father of four boys.

- 5. To avoid a succession of several genitives, as:

 Die Frau vom Better meines Onfels, The wife of my uncle's cousin.
- (c) Of cause, when the cause is a disease = an, as:

 Er starb an ber Cholera, He died of the cholera.
- (d) Of place, with names of battles:
 - 1. = bei, if named after a town, village, etc., as:
 Die Schlacht bei Leipzig, The battle of Leipzig.
 - 2. = an, if named after a river, as:
 Die Schlacht an der Alma, The battle of the Alma.
- (e) Unclassified:

Mangel an Gelb, Want of money. Liebe zum Gelbe, Love of money. Bas soll aus mir werden? What is to become of me?

232. On

Rendered usually by auf, but:

(a) Of time or date = Acc. without preposition, or = an + Dat., as:

Den (or am) zwölften Januar, On the twelfth of January.

- (b) Of modes of progression = 3u, as:
 - Bu Pferde, On horseback.
 - Bu Fuße, On foot.
- (c) Of situation, on a river, sea, etc.:
 - 1. When it means on the water = auf, as: Biele Schiffe fahren auf bem Hubson, Many ships ply on the Hudson; — but:
 - 2. When it means on the shore = an, as:
 - Hamilton liegt am Ontario-See, Hamilton lies on Lake Ontario.

(d) Unclassified:

Mit Fleiß, On purpose. Bei dieser Gelegenheit, On this occasion. Unter (or mit) dieser Bedingung, On this condition. Im Begriffe, On the point of.

233. To.

(a) When replacing the indirect object = Dative without preposition, as:

Ich habe meiner Schwester ein Buch gegeben, I have given a book to my sister (i. e., my sister a book).

- (b) Of motion or direction to persons = zu, as:

 3ch will zu meinem Bater gehen, I will go to my father.
- (c) Of motion to places:
 - 1. With proper names of countries, towns, etc. = nach, as: Ich gehe nach Baris, nach Deutschland, I am going to Paris, to Germany.
 - 2. With common nouns (i) = in, an, or auf respectively, with the *Accusative*, in various idioms, where these prepositions with the Dative = 'at' (see § 227, (a), above), as:

In die Schule, Kirche, ins Theater, Konzert u. s. w. gehen, To go to school, church, the theatre, concert, etc.

Uns Fenster, an die Thur gehen, To go to the window, door.

Auf den Markt, Ball, auf die Bost, Universität gehen, To go to market, to the ball, post-office, university.

(ii) Frequently = \mathfrak{zu} , which may usually replace the prepositions in the above idioms also, as:

Er ist zur Stadt, zur Kirche u. s. w. gegangen, He has gone to town, church, etc. 234.

With.

Observe the following Idioms:

Bon ganzem Herzen, With all my heart. Er zittert vor Kälte, He trembles with cold (cause).

Das ist bei uns nicht Sitte, That is not the custom with (= among) us.

In diefer Absicht, With this intention.

REMARK. — For the proper use of prepositions after particular adjectives and verbs, see Less. XLIX.

VOCABULARY.

to intend, gebenken be_enough, suffice, hinreichen bring with (one), mit'bringen sign, unterzeich'nen bring back, zurüchringen excursion, pleasure-trip, ber Ausflua *

harvesting, das Ernten favour, der Gefallen Louis, Lewis, Ludwig measles, die Masern (f. pl.) account, bill, die Nechnung dressing-gown, der Schlafrock* evil, das übel relative, der Verwandte treaty, der Vertrag* root, die Vurzel this evening, heute Abend thorough(-ly), gründlich fortunately, glücklicherweise possible, möglich absent (on a journey), verreist

Idioms : 1. To be accustomed, Die Gemobnheit haben (+ infin. with gu).

- 2. In the middle of summer, Mitten im Commer.
- 3. To take a pleasure-trip (excursion), Einen Ausflug machen.
- 4. It looks ilke rain, Es ficht nach Regen aus.
- 5. Two or three, 3wei bis brei.
- 6. He sprang out of the window, Er sprang jum Fenster hinaus (point of ingress or exit denoted by ju + dat.).

Note: It is customary, in referring to the relatives of the person addressed, to prefix Gett, Frau or Fraulein, as the case may be, but this is not done in speaking of one's own relatives, thus:

Bie geht es 3hrem Geren Bater? - But : Mein Bater ift gang mohl.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

A. 1. Auf welche Beife haben Sie die frangofische Sprache fo gut gelernt ? 2. Ich habe zuerft die Grammatik gründlich ftudiert, und bann habe ich anderthalb Sahre in Frankreich jugebracht. 3. Wie lange bleibt Ihr Berr Bater noch fort? Er fommt erft übermorgen nach Haufe. 4. Was gebenkst bu heute Abend gu thun? Sch weiß es nicht; für's Erfte muß ich meine Aufgaben machen. 5. Bo haft bu den hubschen Schlafrod bekommen? Sch habe ihn jum Geburtstage bekommen, und ziehe ihn heute jum erften Male an. 6. Es flingelt; wer ift an ber Thur? Es ift jemand, ber ben Berrn fprechen will, aber er ift bei Tifche und läßt fich nicht ftoren. 7. Du fitest am Fenfter; fieh boch einmal jum Fenfter hinaus, und bu wirft ihn vielleicht feben konnen. 8. Bu welcher Zeit lebte Molière? Er lebte unter ber Regierung Ludwig XIV. von Frankreich. 9. Ift es möglich, zu berfelben Zeit von einer Sache ju fprechen und an eine andere zu benten? 10. Die Liebe jum Gelbe ift die Burgel alles Ubels. 11. Unfer Saus fteht am St. Loreng=Rlug, und bon den Fenftern fieht man die Dampfschiffe vorbeigehen. 12. Willst du mir beine Grammatif leiben? Ia wohl, mit ber Bedingung, daß du diefelbe vor morgen zurudbringft. 13. Ift Berr B. ju Saufe? Rein, er ift auf brei Bochen verreift. 14, Bei Tagesanbruch singen bie Bögel am schönsten. 15. Alle Fenster und Thuren werden des Nachts aus Furcht vor Dieben bei uns zugeschloffen. 16. Weshalb find die Rinder nicht zur Schule gegangen? 17. Es find mehrere Rinder in ber Schule, die an ben Mafern gelitten haben, und bie Mutter fürchtet fich bor biefer Krantheit. 18. Reifen Gie lieber Bu Land ober zu Baffer ? Im Sommer ziehe ich es bor, zu Baffer ju reifen. 19. Mein Bater hatte bie Gewohnheit, uns Rinder um sich zu versammeln und uns Geschichten zu erzählen. 20. Mitten im Sommer, und bann wieber um Beihnachten, gebe ich aufs Land, um meine Berwandten ju befuchen. 21. Borigen Sommer blieb ich mehr als vierzehn Tage bei benfelben.

B. 1. Good morning; you have come just at the right time; I was on the point of going to your house (say: going to you). 2. There is a ring at the door; go to the door and see who is there. 3. When you go to the market, do not forget to go to the post also. 4. Do you intend to take a pleasuretrip this summer? Yes, I intend to leave the town for three or four weeks. 5. Last summer we stayed away only a week. 6. Does it not look like rain? 7. Yes, I am afraid it might rain, but fortunately I have brought my umbrella with [me]. 8. Have you any money about you? I should like to pay this bill, and have left my purse at home. 9. I have about seven dollars and a half with me; would that be enough (suffice)? 10. Would you do me the favour to lend me the half of it (batton) for two or three days? 11. What magnificent weather for harvesting; it has not rained for two weeks [past]. 12. Is the servant going to (the) market? No, she was at (the) market (already) two hours ago. 13. The battle of Waterloo took place on the 18th of June in the year 1815. 14. Some months afterwards the treaty of Paris was signed. 15. When (at what time) and in what war did the battle of the Alma take place? 16. It took place in the year 1855, during the war between England and Russia.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Wann gedenken Sie die Stadt zu verlassen? 2. Wo steht das Haus Ihres Herrn Vaters? 3. Auf welche Weise gedenken Sie diesen Sommer zuzubringen? 4. Wollen Sie einmal' zu mir kommen und den Nachmittag bei mir zubringen? 5. Es hat geklingelt; wer ist da? 6. Was für Wetter bekommen wir heute Abend?

LESSON XL.

CONJUNCTIONS.

235. Conjunctions are either:

- A. Cöordinating, or those which connect sentences of the same rank or order (principal with principal, or dependent with dependent), or:
- B. Subordinating, or those which connect one sentence with another, on which it depends, or to which it is sub-ordinate.

A. CÖORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

236. I. Conjunctions Proper. — The Cöordinating Conjunctions proper merely connect sentences without affecting their structure. They are:

und, and (general connective) allein,
oder, or (general disjunctive) auch,
benn, for (causative) fondern,

REMARKS.—1. Sondern is used after negative sentences only, and introduces a sentence correcting or contradicting the statement contained in the preceding sentence, in whole or in part, as:

I am not ill but (on the contrary) quite well.

But if there is no inconsistency or contradiction between the two statements, after is used, as:

> Er hat es nicht gethan, aber er wird es thun, He has not yet done it, but he will do it.

2. More does not necessarily begin the sentence and often comes after the verb. When after does not begin the sentence, it has rather the sense of 'however,' as:

Das bose Weib aber ging vor ben Spiegel, The wicked woman, however, went to the mirror.

Note. — When there is any other conjunction present, aber seldom begins the sentence.

237. II. Adverbial Conjunctions.—Many adverbs and adverbial phrases have the function of conjunctions, when they are used to express the relation between sentences, rather than to modify any particular member of the sentence in which they occur.

The principal coordinating adverbial conjunctions are:

augerdem, besides dann, then fogar, even	connective (relate	ed to und)
bennoch, both, still jedoch, benn, unless bessenungeachtet, nichtsbessenungeachtet, indessenungen, indessenungen, indessenungen, indessenungen, indessenungen, indessenungen, it is true, to be su	} nevertheless	adversative (related to aber)
baher, barum, beshalb, beswegen, also, folglish, mithin',	causative (relate	ed to denn)

REMARKS.—1. Unlike the conjunctions proper, these adverbial conjunctions, if they *introduce* a sentence, throw the subject *after* the verb; but they may also follow the verb, thus:

Er ist frant; bessenungeachtet wird er fommen (or: cr wird dessenungeachtet fommen), He is ill; nevertheless he will come.

Es regnete, darum (baher, beswegen) fonnte ich (or: ich konnte darum, etc.) nicht ausgeben.

2. Aud and fogar, when they refer specially to the subject or any other member of the clause preceding the verb, do not throw the subject after the verb, as:

Auch sein Bater war zugegen, His father, too, was present.

Sogar seinen Feinden hat er vergeben, He has pardoned even his enemies.

3. The verb often comes first in a sentence with both, to express a strong affirmation, as:

Sabe ich es both gefagt, Did I not say so?

238. III. Correlative Conjunctions. These are:

cutweder . . . oder, either . . . or } disjunctive

weder . . . noth, neither . . . nor }

nicht nur . . . fondern auch, } not only . . . }

fowohl . . . als auch, } but also } connective

nicht fowohl . . . als, not so much . . . as

balb . . balb, now . . . now (again), at one time . . .

at another

teils . . . teils, partly . . . partly

cincricits . . . andericits, on the one hand . . . on the

other.

REMARK. — The last three are *adverbial* conjunctions, and either follow the verb, or throw the subject after it, unless they modify a particular member of the sentence (compare § 237, Remarks 1, 2, above).

239. B. Subordinating Conjunctions.

- 1. Sentences introduced by subordinating conjunctions are always *dependent*, and therefore have the verb *last* (see § 32).
- 2. Some of these also are adverbial, but, as this distinction does not affect the construction, they are not separately arranged.
 - 3. The principal subordinating conjunctions are as follows:
 - (a) Introducing substantive clause:

baß, that ob, if, whether

(b) Introducing adverbial clause:

```
indeff'en.
indem'.
                   while, whilst
unterbeff'en,
während (baß),
                                     time
feit(bem), since
fobald, as soon as
fo lange, as long as
(in) wie, as soon as
wie, how - manner
benn, than
als. )
       than, as
                                     degree
inwiefern', inasmuch as
je nachbem', according as
ba, since
bak, that
weil, because
baß, that
auf daß,
          in order that
um baß.
bamit', in order that
wenn, if
als ob.
als wenn.
                                      condition
falls,
          in case
wofern,
obgleich, wenn gleich,
obidon, wenn ichon,.
ob auch, wenn auch,
                         although
obwohl,
wiewohl.
ungeachtet (bag),
wenn . . . nicht, if not, unless.
```

REMARKS.—1. **Wenn** and **ob** take the *subjunctive* when the verb of the principal clause is in the impf., plupf., or conditional, as:

- 3ch würde fommen, wenn ich wohl genug wäre, I should come, if I were well enough.
- 3d) wußte nicht, ob er gekommen wäre (sei), I did not know, whether he had come.
- 2. **Menn** may be omitted in conditional sentences; the verb then begins the clause, as in the question order (compare § 59). This construction is much more common than in English, and is generally used when the dependent clause, containing the condition, precedes the principal clause, containing the consequence, as:

South ich Geld, so würde ich Freunde haben, If I had had I) money, I should have friends.

Note. — The particle \mathfrak{fo} should not be omitted in the latter clause when the former is without weum.

3. In the compound conjunctions obgleich, obsain, obwohl, etc., the two parts may be separated, and the latter part placed after the subject, as:

Obgleich (obschon, etc.) er frank war, etc.; or: Ob er gleich frank war, Although he was ill.

Note. - With wenn the particles gleich, etc., always follow the subject.

4. The ob or twenn may also be omitted in these conjunctions and in als ob, als twenn ('as if'); the verb then begins the sentence, or immediately follows als, as:

Ift er gleich frank, Although he is ill.

Es scheint mir, als ob (wenn) ich Sie irgendwo gesehen hätte; or: als hätte ich, etc., It seems to me, as if I had seen you somewhere.

240.

INTERJECTIONS.

- 1. Interjections proper are not, strictly speaking, members of the sentence, and consist of sounds expressing either:
 - (a) Independent outbursts of natural feeling, as: o, oh, of various emotions; ah, hei, heifa, judhhe (hurrah), joy; ei, ha, poh, surprise; ah, au, pain; pfui (fie), disgust; hah, contempt; or
 - (b) Intimations of will, as: pft, fc (hush), enjoining silence; he, heda', ho, halloh, hollah, to call attention.
- 2. Various parts of speech, and even whole phrases, are employed interjectionally, as: heil, hail; weh, woe (subst.) hoth, hurrah; brav, bravo; leiber, alas; fort, weg, away (adverbs); gottlob, thank God; also in oaths and adjurations.
- 3. Akin to Interjections are imitations of natural sounds, as: hui, huid, whizz; piff, puff, shot; bauz, fall; plumps, splash.
 - 4. (a) The Interjections o, ann, pfui, are sometimes followed by a genitive, as:
 - O! (ach! pfui!) ber Schande! Oh! (ah! fie!) what disgrace;

or by über + accusative, as:

Pfui! über bich Feigen! Fie on thee for a coward!

(b) The substantives used interjectionally, as under 2, above, are sometimes followed by a dative, as:

Weh mir! Woe's me!
Seil bem Könige! Hail to the king!

VOCABULARY.

to call for, abholen go in, hineingehen wear (intr.), sich tragen prepare, vor'bereiten lay up, lay by, zurüdlegen old age, das Alter joy, delight, die Freude Lord, der Heris tortoise, die Schildfröte guilt, debt, die Schuld

to be to blame (for), schulb (adj.) sein (an + dat.) cheap, billig certainly, in any case, jedens falls
in vain, vergebens even if, although, wenn auch

Idioms: 1. I am studying (preparing) for an examination, 36 bereite mich auf ein Eramen (acc.) vor.

- 2. Do you consider that good? Salten Sie bas für gut?
- 3. To make calls, Befuche machen.
- 4. In the world, Auf ber Belt.

EXERCISE XL.

A. 1. Wir follten alle Menschen lieben, wenn fie uns auch. haffen. 2. Sie versprachen, mich abzuholen; allein ich wartete vergebens, benn Sie famen nicht. 3. Wenn ich an Ihrem Saufe vorübergebe, fo gebe ich gewöhnlich hinein. 4. Als ich aber geftern Abend porüberging, fah ich fein Licht und daber bin ich nicht hineingegangen. 5. Je mehr wir lernen, besto mehr find wir im Stande zu lernen. 6. Die Schüler bekommen morgen Ferien, barum fpringen und fingen fie bor Freude. 7. Wie febr ich mich auch bemühe, es gelingt mir leiber boch nicht, alle Gate biefer Aufgabe richtig zu schreiben. 8. Du tadelft mich, als ob ich schuld baran mare. 9. Gin porsichtiger Mann legt in feiner Jugend Gelb gurud, auf bag er in feinem Alter nicht Mangel leibe. 10. Außer wenn ich frank oder fehr beschäftigt bin, gehe ich jeden Tag spazie= ren. 11. Er ift nicht nur reich, fondern auch freigebig, und beshalb hat er fo viele Freunde gewonnen. 12. Sätten wir gewuft. baß Sie heute Besuch haben, fo waren wir erft morgen gefommen. 13. Wollen Sie fich erfundigen, ob Frau G. noch in bemfelben Saufe wohnt? 14. Es giebt noch viele Leute auf ber Welt, bie weder lefen noch schreiben können. 15. Sie hatten mir helfen fonnen, wenn Sie es gewollt hatten, allein Sie wollten es nicht:

- 16. Falls Sie des Nachmittags nicht kommen können, so kommen Sie doch des Abends. 17. Obgleich Karl schon zehn Jahre alt ist, kann er weder gut lesen noch gut schreiben. 18. Die Schildkröte lief, indem der Hase schlief, deshalb ist sie auch zuerst angekommen. 19. Hätte der Hase nicht geschlafen, so wäre er jedenfalls zuerst angekommen. 20. Du sollst deinen Bater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß du lange lebest im Lande, das dir der Herr dein Gott giebt.
- B. 1. We shall come, even if it rains. 2. Before I leave the town, I must make some calls. 3. Shall we go without him, or shall we wait till he comes back? 4. Whilst we were away, a thief came and stole the money. 5. Do you sit up late when you are studying? 6. Not generally; however, when I was preparing for my last examination I used to sit up late. 7. Do you consider this cloth dear? The price is not high to be sure, but it will not wear well. 8. Here is cloth, which is dear, but I believe that it is good. 9. I do not, on the contrary, consider it dear, but cheap, since it is good cloth. 10. Since I have been ill, I am allowed neither to read much nor to write much. 11. It seems to me that it is colder to-day than yesterday. 12. It is all the same to me, whether I travel by the steamer or by the railway. 13. [If] I had thought of that, I should have gone to meet you. 14. The hare slept, and in the meanwhile the tortoise arrived. 15. If the hare had not slept, he would have arrived first.

ORAL EXERCISE XL.

1. Die Fenster sind alle auf, wer ist daran schuld? 2. Legen Sie viel Geld zurück? 3. Weshalb haben Sie mich nicht abgeholt? 4. Können Sie mir sagen, in welcher Richtung von Hier der Fluss liegt? 5. Hast du dein letztes Examen bestanden? 6. Halten Sie diesen Hut für teuer?

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON F.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.

241. 1. Milein follows and limits, or corrects, affirmative statements, as fondern does negative, thus:

Er ift reich, allein er ift nicht glüdlich, He is rich, but he is not happy.

2. Defin or um fo (but not je) may be used with a single comparative, as:

Gilen Sie, damit Sie defto (um fo) früher antommen, Make haste, so that you may arrive all the sooner.

- 3. Daß is the most general in meaning of all the conjunctions. It may be omitted when it introduces a substantive clause, as in indirect statements. The sentence then has the construction of a principal clause (verb second; see §87, 3). But daß cannot be omitted when it expresses purpose or consequence.
- 4. The Engl. if must be rendered by of (not wenn) when it = whether, as:

I asked him if he could come, 3ch fragte ihn, ob er tommen tonne.

- 5. For the distinction between als, wenn (as conjunctions of time) and wann, see § 58.
- 6. 'Than' should be rendered by als after an adjective in the comparative degree, not by wie.
- 7. Denn = 'than' is obsolete, except when used to prevent the repetition of als, as:

Er ist größer als Dichter, benn als Mensch, He is greater as a poet, than as a man.

8. In comparisons of equality, as ... as = (even) io ... wie, or als, twie being more common, as:

He is as tall as I, Er ift (eben) fo groß wie ich.

After a negative, chen is omitted, as :-

Er ift nicht fo groß wie ich.

9. So... so are used with correlative clauses, containing adjectives compared together in the *positive* degree (compare the use of je or besto with the compar. degree, § 126, 4), as:

So groß er ift, so seige ist er aud, He is as cowardly as he is big; or: 'equally big and cowardly'; lit.: Big as he is, he is just as cowardly.

Note. — In the first clause of the above example to is subordinating; in the second coordinating, but does not throw the subject after the verb.

Observe also the following construction, where the clauses cannot be rendered as correlative in English:

So gern ich Ihnen (auch) helsen möchte, so ummöglich ist es mir, However glad I should be to help you, it is quite impossible for me (or: Glad as I should be, etc.).

10. As, when denoting cause (= 'since') must be rendered by ba, as:

I could not come, as I was not well, Ich konnte nicht kommen, da ich nicht wohl war.

11. As, in the sense of 'while' = indeffen, as:

He fell asleep, as I was reading to him, Er schlief ein, indeffen ich' ihm vorsos.

- 12. Distinguish carefully between the following uses of Engl. since:
 - (a) Since as preposition = feit (not feitbem), as: Since last Tuesday, Seit letztem Dienstag.
 - (b) Since as adverb or coordinating adverbial conjunction = feithem (not feit), as:

He was here the day before yesterday, but I have not seen him since, Vorgestern war er hier, seitdem habe ich ihn aber nicht gesehen.

- (c) Since as subordinating conjunction of time = feitdem or feit, as:
 - I have not seen him since he recovered from his illness, Id have ihn nicht gesehen, seit(dem) er genesen ist.
- (d) Since as conjunction of cause = ba, as:

Since I have no money, I cannot pay you, Da ich fein Gelb habe, fann ich Gie nicht bezahlen.

- 13. After ehe, bevor and mahrend, daß may be omitted.
- 14. Betor expresses time only, the may also express preference (= 'rather'), as:

Che ich bas thue, will ich sterben, Rather than do that, I will die.

15. Observe that the adverbial conjunctions indeffen, unterdeffen are cöordinating when they = 'meanwhile' (the pronoun deffen being demonstrative), but subordinating when they = 'whilst, while' (the pronound relative), as:

Sie sprachen mit einander; indessen (unterdessen) ging ich auf und ab, They were speaking to each other; (in the) meanwhile I was walking up and down; but:

Sie sprachen mit einander, indessen (unterdessen) ich auf und ab ging, They were speaking to each other, while I was walking up and down.

In the sense of 'however,' indeffen is coordinating only:

16. Indem is subordinating only, and denotes cause as well as time, as:

3th brauche mehr Geld, indem ich viele Schulden zu bezahlen habe,
I need more money, since I have many debts to pay (having many debts to pay).

Indem er mir die Hand gab, lächelte er, As he gave me his hand (giving me his hand), he smiled.

17. **Weil** must be used (not ba) in answer to the question why? or wherefore? as:

Barum kamen Sie nicht? Beil ich krank war. Why did you not come? Because I was ill.

18. 'Unless' is rendered by wenn ... nicht (if ... not), or by benn (cöordinating adv. conj.), as:

Wir werben nicht ausgehen können, wenn sich das Wetter nicht ändert. We shall not be able to go out, unless the weather changes.

3th laffe bith night, bu segnest mith benn, I will not let thee go, except (unless) thou bless me.

NOTE. - Denn in this sense always follows the verb.

. 19. 'But' after a negative = als, as:

3d hatte nichts als Unglüd auf meiner Reise, I had nothing but misfortune on my journey.

Note. — Richts weniger als = 'anything but' (not 'nothing less than'), as: Er ist nichts weniger als reich, He is anything but rich.

20. Distinguish between:

(a) Da = 'there': adverb of place, as:

3d war da, I was there.

- (b) Da = 'then': adverb of time, as:
 - Der Dieb ichlich ine Saus; ba ergriff ich ihn, The thief sneaked into the house: then I seized him.
- (c) Do = 'since,' 'as ': subordinating conjunction, as:
 - 3d fonute nicht fommen, ba ich frank war, I could not come. since (as) I was ill.
- 21. Distinguish between beffenungeachtet, 'nevertheless' (coord. adv. conj.) and ungegittet, 'although,' 'notwithstanding that' (subord. conj.).

EXERCISE F.

1. Our neighbour has failed, but he is only the richer on that account, since he has not paid his creditors. 2. The hare was sleeping, whilst the tortoise erept slowly towards the goal. 3. Rather than accept your conditions, I will give up my position. 4. He has not been here since last week, and I have not seen him since. 5. Since you have not seen him, I must either go and see him (say: go to him), or write to him. 6. I consider him an ignorant man; he is anything but learned. 7. Have you been at the railway-station? Yes, I was there as the train arrived. 8. We shall not go out this afternoon, because it looks like rain. 9. We shall not go out to-morrow either (audi), if the weather does not change. 10. The whole family was absent yesterday from eight o'clock till twelve o'clock at night; meanwhile the house took (fangen) fire.

PART SECOND.

SYNTAX.

LESSON XLI.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES: - NOMINATIVE AND CENITIVE.

242. Nominative.

- 1. The **Nominative** is the case of the *subject*, or of a word in apposition to the subject, or of a predicate noun qualifying it. The nominative is also used in address, there being no special form for the vocative.
- 2. Neuter verbs indicating a state or transition, such as fein, to be; merben, to become; bleiben, to remain; scheinen, to seem, appear; heißen, to be called, take a *predicate* nominative, as:
 - Er ist Solbat geworden (geblieben), He has become (remained) a soldier.
- 3. Verbs of calling take a predicate nominative, verbs of considering a nominative with als, in the passive, as:
 - Kaiser Heinrich I. wurde ber Bogler genannt, Emperor Henry was called the Fowler.
 - Mein Bater wurde immer von mir als mein bester Freund betrachtet, My father was always regarded by me (as) my best friend.

NOTE. — Verbs of choosing generally take the preposition 311 instead of the English nominative.

286

243. GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used chiefly as the complement of substantives, its use in this respect being much the same as the English objective with 'of,' and also covering that of the possessive. Thus we have:

r. The Genitive of Origin, as:

Die Früchte bes Baumes, The fruits of the tree.

2. The Subjective Genitive, indicating the agent or cause, as:

Der Glaube eines Christen, The faith of a Christian.

- 3. The Objective Genitive, indicating the thing affected, as:
 Die Entdedung Amerikas, The discovery of America.
- 4. The Possessive Genitive, as:

Der Garten des Königs, The garden of the king (the king's garden).

5. The Genitive of Quality, as:

3wei Rinder eines Alters, Two children of one age.

NOTE. - This genitive is frequently replaced by von, as:

Ein Mann bon hohem Alter, A man of great age.

6. The Partitive Genitive, as:

Einer meiner Freunde, One of my friends.

Der jungste meiner Brüber, The youngest of my brothers.

NOTE. — This genitive is commonly replaced by non after numerals and other partitives.

244. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives denoting posssession and interest, plenty, knowledge, desire, guilt, or their opposites, govern the genitive, as:

bedürftig, needing, in need begierig (also + nach), desirous

bewußt, conscious eingebenf, mindful fähig (also + 311), capable froh, glad
gewiß, certain
gewohnt (also + an with acc.),
accustomed
leer, empty
los (also + acc.), rid
mübe (also + acc.), tired
fatt (also + acc.), satisfied

ichelbig, guilty
ficher, certain
ü'berdrüffig, weary
verdächtig, suspected
voll (also + acc., or + von),
full
wert (also + acc.), worth
würdig, worthy

REMARKS. — 1. The neuter pronoun 'it' after most of these adjectives may have the form \$\epsilon\$, which is the old genitive, and is the origin of the later use of the accusative, first with the pronouns bas, was, and then, by analogy, with substantives, as:

3ch bin ce (bas) mude, I am tired of it (that).

2. With los, mube, wert the Accusative is more usual than the genitive.

245. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. Verbs of meanings similar to those of the adjectives under the previous section take a genitive of the nearer object, as:

achten (also + auf with acc.),
pay attention
bedürfen, need
begehren, desire
brauchen, want
entbehren, miss,
do without
erwähnen,mention

acc.)

benten (generally + an with acc.), think generaten, mention genießen (generally + acc.), enjoy bergeffen (generally + acc.), forget

Also the following:

harren (also + auf with acc.)
wait
warten (also + acc.), tend,
nurse

lachen, laugh at fpotten, mock fchonen (also + acc.), spare 2. Transitive Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquittal, deprivation, emotion, take a genitive of the remoter object, as:

ontlagen, accuse
berauben, rob

befchulbigen, accuse
entbinden (also + von), relieve
entfleiden (also + von), disrobe

logsprechen, acquit
überfüh'ren, convict
überzeu'gen (also + bon), convince
versichern, assure
würdigen, deem worthy
zeihen, accuse

3. Also many reflexive and impersonal verbs (see §§ 215, 216, 219).

246. ADVERBIAL GENITIVE.

For the use of the genitive in forming adverbs from substantives, see § 189, 2. The adverbial genitive may express place, time or manner, as:

Linfer Sand, On the left hand.

Seiner Bege gehen, To go one's way.

Diefer Tage, During these (last) days.

Abends, In the evening.

Morgens, In the morning, etc.

Mles Ernstes, In all seriousness.

Trodnen Juges, Dry-shod.

And particularly with Beije, 'manner,' after an adjective, as:

Glüdlicher Beise, — or: Fortunately (lit., in a fortunate Glüdlicherweise, manner)

247. For Interjections followed by a genitive, see \$ 240, 4, (a).

For the genitive after prepositions, see §§ 222, 223.

EXERCISE XLL

- A. 1. Guten Morgen, Karl; was hast du für Eile, mein Junge? 2. Guten Morgen, Herr B.; es ist bald neun Uhr und ich gehe jetzt in die Schule. 3. So, hast du noch weit zu gehen? 4. Bis nach der Friedrichstrasze; Herr G., unser Lehrer, besteht sehr auf Pünktlichkeit. 5. Steige nur ein, du kannst mit mir fahren, da mein Weg durch die Friedrichstrasze führt. 6. Ich bin Ihnen sehr dankbar: das ist sehr freundlich von Ihnen. 7. Sitzt du da bequem? 8. Ja, aber sind meine Bücher Ihnen nicht im Wege? 9. Nicht im geringsten, aber was für eine Menge Bücher hast du da! Du hast gewiss viel zu studieren. 10. Ich arbeite jetzt sehr fleissig, da das Examen nächstens stattfindet. 11. Auf welches Examen bereitest du dich vor? 12. Auf das Eintrittsexamen der Universität. 13. Was für Sprachen studierst du? 14. Ich studiere Englisch, Latein, Deutsch und Französisch. 15. Natürlich studierst du auch die Mathematik? 16. Wir müssen Rechnen, Algebra und Geometrie lernen. 17. Bist du ein Freund von der Mathematik, oder ziehst du die Sprachen vor? 18. Ich lerne sehr gern Mathematik, besonders Algebra; mein Lehrer glaubt, ich habe nicht viel Sprachtalent. 19. Deshalb solltest du desto fleissiger die Sprachen studieren, (auf) dass deine Bildung nicht einseitig werde. 20. Mein Vater ist auch derselben Meinung. 21. Hoffentlich wirst du dein Examen glücklich bestehen: da sind wir aber schon bei der Schule. 22. Ich danke Ihnen vielmals für den freundlichen Wunsch, wie auch für die Fahrt.
- B. 1. "An honest man is the noblest work of God." 2. A pound of iron is about as large as two pounds of silver.

 3. Mr. Cleveland was elected president of the United States in the year 1884. 4. I was to have taken (made) a journey to Europe this summer, but my father needs me in his busi-

ness and I shall be obliged to remain at home. 5. I have been offered five thousand dollars for my house, and I shall sell it, for I am glad of the opportunity of getting (to get) rid of it. 6. The Duke of Wellington, a great English general (Feld= herr), was called the "Iron Duke," as Prince Bismarck, the great German statesman, is called the "Iron Chancellor." 7. He (the former) has deserved that title not only as a soldier but as a man. 8. My neighbour, the merchant, has been accused of forgery, but I do not believe that he is capable of such a crime. 9. He was in need of money, and is said to have done it on that account. 10. I hope that he will be acquitted of this accusation, for I am convinced of his innocence. 11. The discovery of America by (burd) Columbus was perhaps the greatest undertaking of any man or of any age (Beitalter). 12. Columbus was a man of great bodily as well as mental power. 13. His whole fleet consisted of three small ships, of which two were very old. 14. Have you seen your brother the lawyer? 15. Excuse [me]; my brother is not a lawyer, but a doctor. I have not seen him since Christmas. 16. As a student he always used (pflegen) to say he meant to be (werben) a lawyer. 17. We are tired of studying; let us go out. 18. Shall I send for (nath) a carriage? 19. No, it is not worth while (ber Mühe wert), I would rather walk. 20. Unfortunately it has rained and the roads are bad. 21. We can try (the) walking, and if we get tired of it, we can take the street-cars (Bferbebahn, sing.).

LESSON XLII.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES (continued).—DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

248.

DATIVE.

The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object.

The Dative is used to denote the person for whose advantage or disadvantage a thing is or is done, as: Er hat mir ein Buch gefauft, He has bought me a book.

249. The Dative is very freely used in German to denote the person who has some *interest* in an action or thing. This is called the ethical dative or dative of interest, and must usually be left untranslated in English, in which language its use is obsolete, thus:

Ich have mir die Sache angesehen, I have considered the thing (for my own satisfaction).

Thu mir das nicht wieder, Don't do that again (I tell you).

For the *possessive* dative replacing, with the definite article, a genitive case or (with pronouns) a possessive adjective, see § 44, 6.

250. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. The Dative stands as the *Indirect Object of transitive* verbs, as:

Er gicht mir das Buch, He gives me the book (the book to me).

- 2. It stands as the *sole* object after verbs which express a personal relation only, such as verbs of:
 - (a) Approach or removal, etc., as:

begegnen, meet entgehen, escape entsprechen, correspond to fehlen, be wanting folgen, follow gleichen, resemble nachgehen, follow nachstehen, be inferior nahen, approach zusehen, watch

(b) Pleasure or displeasure, as:

behagen, please banken, thank drohen, threaten fluchen, curse

gefallen, please genügen, suffice grollen, be angry mißfal'len, displease schmeicheln, flatter steben, suit, become

(c) Advantage or disadvantage, as:

beifteben, assist bienen, serve belfen, help

mangeln, be wanting nüken, be useful schaben, harm

(d) Command, resistance and their opposites, as:

befehlen, command aebieten, order gehorchen, obey perbieten, forbid

tropen, defy weichen, yield widerste'hen, oppose widerstre'ben, resist

(e) After verbs expressing possession, trust, and various other personal relations, as:

antmorten, answer beistimmen, agree with erwibern, reply gehören, belong

glauben, believe icheinen, seem trauen, trust aureben, encourage

Also with fein and werden, expressing a state of feeling (with au Mute expressed or understood), as:

Wie ist Ihnen? How do you feel?

Observe also the idiom : Wenn bem fo ift, 'If that is the case,' in which bem is dat. neut.

(f) After many verbs expressing similar relations, compounded with the inseparable prefixes er-, ent-, ver-, wider; with the separable prefixes an-, auf-, bei-, entgegen-, nach-, vor-, qu-, etc., and with adjectives, nouns or adverbial phrases, such as:

leid thun, be sorry wohlmollen, be well-disposed ju Statten tommen, be of use bas Wort reben, defend

au Teil werben, fall to one's share

REMARKS.—1. The great majority of these verbs have become transitive in English, on account of the loss of distinction between the dative and accusative; their construction in German should be carefully observed.

2. Many of the verbs under (d), (e) above take a *direct* object, particularly in the shape of a clause or of a neuter pronoun, as:

Er hat mir verboten zu gehen, He has forbidden me to go.

3ch erwiderte, daß ich fommen wolle, I replied that I would come.

Mein Bater hat es mir befohlen, My father has ordered me (to do) it.

For the Dative with Reflexive Verbs, see §§ 215, 216; with Impersonal Verbs, see §§ 217, 219.

251. Dative after Adjectives.

The Dative stands after adjectives similar in meaning to the Verbs given in the foregoing section, such as:

(a) Approach, etc.: ähnlich, similar fremb, strange aleich, equal, like

ungleich, unequal, unlike nahe (also + bei), near verwandt, related

(b) Pleasure, etc.: angenehm, pleasant anätig, gracious

lieb, dear willfommen, welcome

(c) Advantage, etc.:

heilfam, wholesome
foulbig, indebted

treu, faithful

(d) Command, etc.: folgfam, gehorfam,

ungehorsam, disobedient widrig, repulsive

(e) Possession, etc. :

eigen, belonging

gemein(fam), common

Note. — Almost any adjective modified by au or genug may take a dative, as:

Diese Handschuhe sind mir zu groß (groß genug), These gloves are too large (large enough) for me.

For the Dative after Prepositions, see §§ 46, 51.

252.

ACCUSATIVE.

The Accusative is the case of the Direct Object, Time and Measure.

All transitive verbs take the direct object in the accusative.

REMARK. — Many verbs that are transitive in English are intransitive in German (see § 250, Rem. 1, above), and vice versa.

253.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

The verb lehren, 'to teach,' governs two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing; the verb fragen, 'to ask,' takes the latter accusative only when it is a neuter pronoun, as:

Ich werde bich die deutsche Sprache lehren, I shall teach you the German language.

3th wollte bith gerne etwas fragen, I should like to ask you something.

Verbs of calling, etc., have a second accusative as factitive predicate, as:

Ich nannte ihn einen Narren, I called him a fool.

Of Verbs of considering, etc., some, such as: betrachten, 'to regard'; ansehen, 'to look upon'; barstellen, 'to represent,' take a factitive accusative with als, as:

Ich sehe ben Regen als eine Bohlthat an, I regard the rain as a benefit.

Other verbs of considering, with those of choosing, etc., which take a second accusative of this sort in English, are followed by a preposition (für, 3u) in German (see Less. XLIX).

254. ACCUSATIVE AFTER INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

r. Intransitive Verbs may sometimes be followed by an accusative of a meaning akin to their own, called the *cognate* accusative, as:

Ich habe einen schönen Traum geträumt, I have dreamt a beautiful dream.

2. Intransitive Verbs may take an accusative of that which is effected or produced by the action they express, as:

Betrus weinte bittere Thränen, Peter wept bitter tears.

3. Intransitive Verbs may take an accusative followed by an adjective, etc., as factitive predicate, as:

3d have mich fatt gegeffen, I have eaten enough (lit., have eaten myself satisfied).

Das Kind weinte sich in den Schlaf, The child has cried itself to sleep.

REMARK. — The Accusative in all these constructions, except the last, which is not used in the passive, becomes a nominative in the passive construction; that of the thing after lebren remains accusative; with fragen and bitten, the acc. of the thing is not used in the passive.

For the accusative after Reflexive Verbs, see § 216; after Impersonal Verbs, see § 219; after Prepositions, see § 34, 50; after some Adjectives, it replaces the Genitive (see § 245, and Remarks).

255. ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE.

1. The Accusative is used adverbially to express time (see § 184, 1) and measure (see § 185, 4); also distance and way after verbs of motion, as:

Ich bin fechs gute Meilen gefahren, I have driven simi full miles.

297

Belchen Beg werden Sie gehen? Which way will you go?

The Accusative is used also in absolute constructions, especially with participles, as:

Er tam zu mir, ben hut in ber hand, He came to me

Er stand da, die Augen in die Höhe gerichtet, He stood there [with] eyes uplifted.

EXERCISE XLIL

A. 1. Also, Sie haben sich entschlossen, uns morgen früh zu verlassen? 2. Ich muss wohl, da meine Geschäftsangelegenheiten mir keinen längeren Aufenthalt erlauben. 3. Sie reisen natürlich mit dem zweiten Zug ab? 4. Wissen Sie, um wie viel Uhr derselbe in B. ankommt? 5. Ich kann es Ihnen nicht ganz genau sagen, aber er kommt gegen vier Uhr (des) Nachmittags an. 6. Das ist mir viel zu spät. Man erwartet mich schon um halb zwölf auf meinem Bureau. 7. In dem Falle müssen Sie wohl den Schnellzug nehmen, der schon um drei Viertel auf sieben abfährt. 8. Es lässt sich nicht ändern. 9. Gut, ich werde Sie Punkt sechs Uhr wecken lassen. 10. Ich danke Ihnen; das wird durchaus nicht nötig sein, da ich meine Weck-: uhr bei mir habe. 11. Wie viel Zeit brauchen Sie, sich anzukleiden? 12. Zwanzig bis fünfundzwanzig Minuten; aber ich werde noch mehreres einzupacken haben. 13. Dann wäre es jedenfalls besser, die Weckuhr auf halb sechs zu stellen. 14. Bitte, sagen Sie mir genau, wie viel Uhr es jetzt ist; ich fürchte, meine Uhr geht nach. 15. Es ist gerade neun Minuten vor elf. 16. Ist es möglich! Dann geht meine Uhr ja vor, anstatt nach. Sind Sie gewiss, dass Ihre Uhr richtig geht? 17. Jawohl; ich habe sie heute nach der Stadtuhr gestellt. 18. Es wird spät:

ich muss mich schlafen legen, um morgen früh aufstehen zu können. 19. Also machen wir es auf diese Weise: Sie stehen um halb sechs auf, um fünf Minuten nach sechs frühstücken Sie, um fünfundzwanzig Minuten nach sechs wird der Wagen vorfahren und in zehn Minuten sind Sie auf dem Bahnhofe. Dann haben Sie noch zehn Minuten übrig, um Ihr Billet' zu lösen und Ihr Gepäck einschreiben zu lassen. Jetzt, gute Nacht! 20. Gute Nacht, schlafen Sie wohl!

B. 1. Do not trust those who flatter you. 2. Do not believe them, for flatterers are liars. 3. I always considered my father as my truest friend. 4. The general commands the soldiers: the soldiers obey the general. 5. What is the name of the gentleman whom we have just met? His name has escaped me. 6. You should never forget to thank those who help you. 7. How does this hat, which I bought myself yesterday, please you? 8. It does not become you very well; it is too large for you. 9. When I was going to the railway-station, a boy met me and gave me a telegram. 10. May I ask you if Mr. H. is related to you? 11. He resembles me very much, but he is not related to me. 12. Mr. B. has been ordered, on account of ill-health, to go to a warmer climate. He has been forbidden to pass the winter in the North. 13. How long does he remain absent? 14. He is to remain absent at least four months. 15. Last week I ordered (myself) an overcoat at the tailor's, which he was to bring me to-day. 16. The Niagara Falls are considered (one considers, etc.) as one of the greatest wonders of the world. 17. People say of one who sleeps very soundly that he sleeps the sleep of the righteous. 18. May I ask you to assist me, or at least to advise me? 19. I should be very glad to be able to help you. 20. I am in need of money, and should not like to ask any one else for it.

LESSON XLIII.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD: - SYNTAX OF ITS TENSES.

256. The Indicative is the mood of reality and direct statement. As the tenses are used with reference to time in the Indicative only, their proper use is given here.

257.

THE PRESENT.

The Present Tense answers to all the English forms of that tense (e. g., ich lobe = I praise, am praising, do praise), and is used:

- 1. To denote action now going on, as:
 - Das Rind inläft, The child is sleeping (now).
- 2. To state a general fact or custom, as:

Der Schnee ift weiß, The snow is white.

Der Ochse frift Gras, The ox eats grass.

- 3. For the imperfect in historical narrative, to give greater vividness, as:
 - Geschwind hebt er einen Stein auf und wirft benselben bem Hunde, ber ihn beißen will, an den Ropf, Quickly he picks up a stone, and throws it at the dog, who is about to attack him.
- 4. For the English perfect (as in French), when the action or state continues in the present, the past being inferred and the present alone expressed, as:

Wie lange ist er schon frant? How long has he been ill? (N. B. — He is still ill.)

Ich gehe seit acht Tagen wieder zur Schule, I have been going to school again for the last week (and am still going).

Note. - This construction is very common with feit.

- 5. For the future very commonly, where no ambiguity would arise, particularly to replace the English form 'am going to,' as:
 - Ich ichreibe morgen einen Brief an meinen Bater, I am going to write a letter to my father to-morrow.

258.

THE IMPERFECT.

The Imperfect is used:

- 1. As the historical (narrative) preterite, when an event is told in connection with others, as:
 - Im Anfang schuf Gott Himmel und Erbe, und Alles war wüste und leer u. s. w., And in the beginning God created heaven and earth, and all was waste and void, etc.
- 2. To denote customary, continued or contemporaneous action, replacing the English forms 'was doing,' used to do,' as:

Er ging jeden Tag um vier Uhr aus, He used to go out every day at four o'clock.

Wir suhren an der Kirche vorbei, als die Uhr elf schlug, We were driving past the church, as the clock struck eleven.

259.

THE PERFECT.

- 1. The Perfect indicates a past event as complete and no longer continuing, thus:
 - 3ch have gelebt und geliebet, I have lived and loved (and both my life and my love are ended).
- 2. The Perfect is used of an event as a separate and independent fact, simply asserted as true without reference to any other, as:

Gott hat die Welt erschaffen, God created the world;

but in the sentence:

Gott schuf die Welt in sechs Tagen und ruhte am siebenten, God created the world in six days, and rested on the seventh,

the imperfect is used, because the two events are connected.

3. The Perfect is used (apart from historical narrative), in preference to the Imperfect, of an event which has not been witnessed or participated in by the speaker, as:

Gestern ist ein Kind ertrunten (Perf.), A child was drowned yesterday; - but:

Seftern ertrant (Impf.) ein Kind, als ich am Ufer stand, A child was drowned yesterday, when I was standing on the shore.

REMARK. — This distinction between the use of the Perfect and Imperfect is not accurately observed, but it is always better to render the English forms 'was doing,' 'used to do,' by the Imperfect.

4. The Perfect replaces the Future-Perfect, as the Present does the Future, as:

habe, I shall come, as soon as I have (i. e., shall have) finished my business.

260. THE PLUPERFECT.

The Pluperfect is used, as in English, of a past action completed before another was begun, thus:

Er hatte seine Aufgabe vollendet, ehe Sie kamen, He had finished his exercise, before you came.

261. THE FUTURE.

The Future is used:

1. Of an action about to take place, as:

Unfer Bater wird uns loben, Our father will praise us.

2. To denote probability or supposition, as:

Es wird mein Bruder sein, der angekommen ist, It is probably my brother who has arrived.

262. The Future-Perfect.

The Future-Perfect is the Perfect in the Future, and expresses *probability* even more frequently than the simple Future, as:

Der Brief wird schon gestern gesommen sein, The letter probably arrived yesterday.

EXERCISE XLIII.

A. 1. Diese Hitze ist unerträglich; ich glaube, nie einen so heissen Sommer erlebt zu haben. 2. Und wie schwül es ist! Sieht es nicht sehr nach Regen aus? 3. Richtig, da sind schon die ersten Regentropfen, und ich meine, vor einigen Minuten Donner in der Ferne gehört zu haben. 4. Das macht mir einen Strich durch die Rechnung. Bei diesem Wetter kann ich unmöglich zur Stadt gehen. 5. Für's Erste allerdings nicht, aber das Gewitter wird nicht lange anhalten. 6. Das ist ein wahrer Platzregen; so ein Regen ist dem Lande sehr nötig. 7. Ja. wir haben diesen Sommer überhaupt sehr wenig Regen gehabt, aber vorigen Winter desto mehr Schnee. 8. Hören Sie, das war ein Knall! 9. Ja, und wie schnell der Donner auf den Blitz folgte! Fürchten Sie sich vor dem Blitze? 10. Seitdem es voriges Jahr in unserer Nähe eingeschlagen hat, bin ich ein wenig ängstlich. 11. Das glaube ich schon, aber sehen Sie doch, jetzt hagelt es noch sogar! 12. Das braucht das Land gewiss nicht, aber die Hagelkörner sind nicht grosz genug, um viel Schaden anzurichten. 13. Es fängt schon an, sich aufzuhellen; das schlimmste ist vorbei. 14. Wie sich die Luft abgekühlt hat! 15. Und wie schnell! Das ist oft der Fall hier zu Lande. 16. Jawohl; erinnern Sie sich nicht des

wechselhaften Wetters, das wir vorigen Frühling gehabt haben? 17. Besonders im März und Anfang April. 18. Einen Tag thaute es, den nächsten fror es, und am dritten Tage regnete oder schneite es gar. 19. Dann gab es wieder eine Hitze wie mitten im Sommer; schon im April hatten wir fast achtzig Grad Fahrenheit. 20. Da scheint die Sonne wieder; ich sagte Ihnen ja, dass das Gewitter nicht lange anhalten würde. 21. Da haben Sie Recht; jetzt muss ich mich auf den Weg machen.

B. 1. A misfortune seldom comes alone. 2. Schlegel translated Shakespeare's works into German. 3. Is your father at home? No, he has been away for three weeks, but he is (probably) coming back to-morrow morning. 4. As soon as I have news of his arrival, I shall come again. 5. During my illness I used to go for a drive two hours every day. 6. Are you going (to go) to the concert this evening? I do not think I shall go. 7. Have you an engagement elsewhere? No, but I am going to bed immediately, as I start for Boston to-morrow morning at seven o'clock. 8. People (man) are often conscious of bad habits, which they cannot get rid of. 9. Have you been long in America? I have been here since my fifteenth year. 10. This is probably a letter from my mother, for that is her hand-writing? 11. We had hardly been at home half an hour, when it began to rain. 12. Shakespeare is considered the greatest poet of the English nation. 13. He was born at Stratford-on-Avon, and passed his youth in that place. 14. As a young man he went to London, became celebrated there, and died in the year 1616 in his native town. 15. The sun was setting, and the long [and] desperate combat was not yet decided. 16. For the third time our brave soldiers throw themselves upon the batteries of the enemy. 17. Nothing could resist this attack; the enemy wavers, and the victory is ours. 18. But what a dearly-bought victory! 19. He, who

led the soldiers into the combat, comes not back with them. 20. Yonder he lies cold and silent, and our triumph becomes bitter mourning.

LESSON XLIV.

THE CONDITIONAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

263.

THE CONDITIONAL.

- 1. The Conditional tenses are, in form, subjunctive past tenses, answering to the Future as a present.
- 2. They indicate possible futurity, and coincide with the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. in their use in conditional clauses, and will therefore be treated conjointly with them (see § 267, below).

Note. — The Tenses of the Conditional are a new formation; the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. having, in the older stages of the language, performed the function of the Conditional.

264. The Subjunctive Mood is used much more frequently in German than in English, the distinction between Indicative and Subjunctive being almost entirely obliterated in the latter language.

265. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Statements or Quotations (see also § 87), i. e., when the words used are quoted in *substance only*, and not as they were spoken, especially after a verb in the principal clause signifying:

(a) Imparting of information (statement, report, confession, reminding, etc.), as:

antworten, answer behaupten, assert berichten, report erzählen, relate gestehen, confess sagen, say

(b) Apprehension, as:

benken, think erinnern (refl.), remember fühlen, feel hören, hear meinen, be of opinion merfen, observe foließen, conclude wissen, know

(c) Contemplation with various emotions, as:

fürchten, fear freuen (refl.), rejoice glauben, believe hoffen, hope wundern (refl.), wonder wünschen, wish zweiseln, doubt

(d) Request, command, advice, etc., as:

befehlen, command bitten, ask ermahnen, admonish raten, advise verlangen, demand

266. THE TENSE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

The verb of the Indirect Statement is, as a rule, in the same tense as it would have, if the statement were made directly (see § 87, 2), i. e., the tense of the Indirect Statement is the same as that of the Direct.

REMARKS. — 1. An Indirect Statement is always a subordinate clause.

- 2. The conjunction baß may be omitted in such clauses, which will then have the construction of a principal sentence (i. e., verb second; see § 87, 3).
- 3. The Indicative may replace the Subjunctive in Indirect Statements, when the speaker wishes to represent his own belief in the correctness of the statement, as:

Ich habe gehört, daß mein Bruder frank ist, I have heard that my brother is ill (and he is ill).

Sie wußte, daß ber Spiegel feine Unwahrheit fprach, und merkte, daß der Säger sie betrogen hatte, etc. (GRIMM, Sneewittchen, p. 52, l. 1), She knew that the mirror did not tellea lie, and saw that the huntsman had deceived her (and he had deceived her).

But the Subjunctive is used, when the truth of the statement is not vouched for, or when any doubt is cast upon it, as:

Das boshafte Weib aß sie auf und meinte, sie hätte Sneewittchens Lunge und Leber gegessen (ibid., p. 49, l. 8), The malicious woman devoured them, and thought she had eaten Sneewittchen's lung and liver (whereas she had not eaten them).

4. The tense of the Indirect Statement does not depend on that of the principal clause, and the sequence of tenses which is observed in English is not found in German, as:

(Engl.) He said he was not ill. (Germ.) Er saste, er sei nicht krank.

Notes. — 1. The Subjunctive is unusual after the verbs under (δ) and (ϵ) in the previous section (except hören), if the principal clause has a present tense.

2. The rule as to tense is not always strictly observed, the tense used being sometimes determined by the want of distinctive subjunctive forms. Thus in the following sentence two different tenses are used:

Anch schloß er, es musse die Sage vom Glasmännsein nicht sehr bekannt sein, und den Spruch müßten nur wenige wissen (HAUFF, Das kalte Herz, p. 8, 1. 7), Further, he concluded that the legend of the Glass-manikin could not be very well known, and only a sew people could know the verse.

- 3. After an Impf. in the principal clause, the Subjunctive is usual in the Indirect Statement, except as in the second example under Remark 3, above.
- 4. The verb of the principal sentence sometimes remains unexpressed, or is replaced by a noun of kindred meaning, as:

Er sieß mich abweisen, weil er fraut sei, He refused to see me, because (as he asserted) he was ill.

3ch tief so schuell wie möglich, aus Furcht, ich möchte zu spät toutsmen, I ran as quickly as possible, from fear that I might come too late.

Das hätte id, gefagt? (Do you mean to say that) I said that?
This last construction is very frequent in German, to express emphatically a doubt as to the truth of a statement.

267. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL IN HYPOTHETICAL PERIODS.

Example of a Hypothetical Period:

If I had followed your advice, I should have been happy.

1. The above sentence consists of two parts. Of these the one expresses a *condition*, conceived, in this instance, as unreal or impossible, viz.:

If I had followed your advice (which I did not); the other expresses a result, also unreal or unrealized, which would have followed, had the condition been realized, viz.:

I should have been happy (which I am not).

2. In both parts of the above period (in the condition and in the result), the verb is in a past tense (Impf. or Plupf.) of the Subjunctive Mood, as:

Wenn ich Ihren Rat befolgt hätte (Plups. Subj.), so wäre ich glücklich gewesen (Plups. Subj.).

REMARKS. — 1. Either of the two clauses may stand first; thus, the sentence given above may have the form:

Ich wäre glüdlich gewesen, wenn u. f. w.

2. The conjunction menn may be omitted, especially when the condition precedes the result, in which case the verb will begin the sentence, as:

Sätte ich Ihren Rat befolgt, so wäre ich glücklich.

- 3. If the result clause follows the conditional clause, it is usually introduced by the particle fo, and always when wenn is omitted in the preceding conditional clause (see § 59, and Note).
- 4. The conditional tenses may replace the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. in the apodosis, result or conclusion only, as:

Benn ich Ihren Rat befolgt hatte, fo murbe ich gludlich gewesen fein.

5. If the condition is stated without its unreality being implied, the verb is in the Pres., Perf., or Fut. *Indicative*, as:

Benn er tommt, so werde ich fortgehen, If he comes, I shall go away.

6. A condition may be introduced by als wenn or als ob, 'as if,' thus:

Er sieht aus, als wenn (ab) er frank wäre, He looks as if he were ill.

Note. — In clauses of this kind, wenn or ob may be omitted, and the construction is then inverted accordingly (see § 239, 4), as:

Er fieht aus, als ware er frant.

268. Other Uses of the Subjunctive.

1. The Pres. Subjunctive replaces the missing persons (1. and 3.) of the *Imperative* Mood, the subject being then put after the verb, except in the 3. person, where it may also precede, unless the pron. Sic is used for the 2. person, as:

Gehe er (or er gehe) nach Hause, Let him go home.

2. The Impf. and Plupf. Subjunctive are used to express a wish, as:

Märe ich bei Ihnen! Would that I were with you!

NOTE. — This is really an elliptical conditional clause, with the result unexpressed; the full form may be supplied thus:

Bare ich bei Ihnen, (fo mare ich gludlich).

3. The Subjunctive is used in clauses expressing purpose, with the conjunctions baß, auf baß, bamit, as:

Er eilte, daß (auf daß, damit) er zur rechten Zeit antäme, He hastened, (in order) that he might arrive in good time.

4. It is also used after a negative or an indefinite relative, as:

here, who does not know me.

Ich werde es thun, was auch bavon kommen möge, I shall do it, no matter what may come of it.

Note. - The Indicative is also admissible in these constructions.

5. The Impf. Subjunctive is sometimes used to express possibility, as:

Das ginge wohl, That might (possibly) do.

3d bächte, bas wäre gut, I should think that might be good;

and especially with the Modal Auxiliaries, as:

Das möchte (fönnte, bürfte) wahr sein, That may (possibly) be true.

6. Observe the following idiom:

Die bem auch sei, However that may be.

EXERCISE XLIV.

A. 1. Ich habe gehört, dass Sie Ihr Haus verkauft haben; ist das wahr? 2. Ja, meine alte Wohnung gefiel mir nicht mehr. 3. Wie kommt das? Ihr Haus schien mir immer eine sehr elegante und bequeme Wohnung zu sein. 4. Ein besseres lässt sich nicht leicht finden; allein, seit (dem) die vielen Fabriken in der Nähe gebaut worden sind, gefällt mir die Umge'bung nicht mehr. 5. Das kann ich mir schon denken. Der Rauch von den Fabriken muss sehr unangenehm sein. 6. Das ist nicht das Schlimmste; das fortwährende Geräusch

bringt einen oft zum Verzweifeln. 7. Haben Sie ein anderes Haus gekauft? 8. Nein, vorläufig habe ich mir ein Haus in der Schillerstrasze gemietet, sobald ich aber einen passenden Bauplatz finden kann, werde ich bauen. 9. Haben Sie sich schon nach einem Bauplatz umgesehen? 10. Ich habe die ganze Stadt durchsucht, aber ohne Erfolg. 11. Sie müsseh sehr schwer zu befriedigen sein. 12. Das gerade nicht, nur bestehe ich auf drei Bedingungen: Frische Luft, eine ruhige Strasze und eine schöne Aussicht. 13. Warum bauen Sie nicht auf der Anhöhe in der Vorstadt, jenseit des Flusses? 14. Daran habe ich schon gedacht, nur sind mir die Preise ein wenig zu hoch. 15. Das würde mich nicht abhalten, so lange ich nur bekäme, was ich wünschte. 16. Es wird mir wohl nichts übrig bleiben, als mich dort anzukaufen. 17. Beabsichtigen Sie, mit Backstein oder mit Quaderstein zu bauen? 18. Ich muss das erst mit meinem Architekten besprechen. 19. Welchen Architekten haben Sie gewählt? 20. Herrn Kalk, der den Plan meines alten Hauses entworfen hat. 21. Dann bekommen Sie jedenfalls ein gutes Haus. Ich wünsche Ihnen Glück zu Ihrem Unternehmen. 22. Danke vielmals.

B. 1. An old beggar-man said: "When I was young, I could have worked if I had wished (wollen), and now I should be glad to work, if I could, but I cannot. Alas! had I only been more industrious." 2. A certain French king is said to have died of hunger, for fear that he might be poisoned. 3. I wish my house were not so far from yours. 4. I too; if the way were not so long, we could visit each other oftener. 5. We were astonished to see Mr. B. on the street this morning, as we thought he was still in England. 6. They say he intended to remain three months longer in England, but that he was obliged to come home on account of business matters. 7. What did the gentleman whom we just met ask

you? He asked me how far it was to the town-hall. 8. The messenger asserted that he could not wait longer because he had no time, but I believe it was for (aus + dat.) another reason. 9. A certain gentleman wanted to set his watch, and asked his servant what o'clock it was. 10. The servant answered that he had no watch, but that he had seen a sun-dial in the neighbour's garden. 11. To this the gentleman replied absent-mindedly: "Go immediately and ask him for permission to bring it up here." 12. Do you believe that the German language is as difficult as the French? 13. When I began to study German, I thought it was not so difficult as French, but now I believe otherwise. 14. I should be very sorry, if the news were true which I heard this morning. 15. The boys must not skate to-day; the ice is too thin, and they might break through and be drowned. 16. Please tell me who translated Shakespeare's works into German. 17. Would it be worth while to take a carriage to drive to the bank? No, I do not think so. 18. He said that of us! I should never have believed it. 19. I asked the bookseller: "Have you Schiller's works?" He answered: "I have not a single copy of them left. 20. I asked the bookseller if he had Schiller's works, and he answered that he had not a single copy of them left.

LESSON XLV.

THE IMPERATIVE AND INFINITIVE MOODS.

269. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The Imperative expresses a command and corresponds precisely to the English Imperative. The Imperative proper occurs only in the 2. person, the other persons being supplied by the Pres. Subjunctive (see § 268, 1, above).

REMARKS. — 1. The pronoun of the 2. Pers. is only expressed for the sake of emphasis or contrast, as:

Singe bu, Do you sing.

Weht ihr, wir werben bleiben, You go, we shall remain. Note. — The pronoun, if expressed, always follows the verb, as above.

2. Where no definite person is addressed (e. g., when an author is addressing his readers), man should be used with the Pres. Subj., as:

Man bente fich meinen Schreden, Imagine my fright.

3. The Modal Auxiliaries sollen, mussen, lassen are used with imperative force, as:

Du follst nicht toten, Thou shalt not kill.

Er muß ichreiben, He must write.

Laf (laft, laffen Sic) und geben, Let us go.

4. The Present and Future Indicative are sometimes used with emphatic imperative force, as:

Du bleibst bier ! You are to stay here!

Sie werden die Güte haben, morgen früher zu kommen, You will have the goodness to come earlier to-morrow.

5. The Past Participle and Infinitive are also used in exclamatory clauses with the force of an Imperative, as:

Bugefahren, Rutscher! - Drive on, coachman!

Still stehen! Stand still!

Einsteigen! All aboard!

6. In elliptical and exclamatory clauses a command is frequently expressed by an adverbial prefix or prepositional phrase, without a verb, as:

Frish auf! Rameraden, aufs Pferd! aufs Pferd!
Up! comrades, to horse! to horse! (Schiller.)

Drauf und bran! Up and at them!

for an mir! (Come) hither to me! (GOETHE, Faust.)

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

270. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBSTANTIVE.

The Infinitive is a verbal substantive, and any infinitive may be used as a substantive of the neuter gender, declined after the Maler Model (§ 16).

REMARKS. — 1. The Infin. as Subst. indicates action, as: Das Lefen, '(the act of) reading,'—but: gute Lecture, 'good reading, good literature.'

- 2. Some Infinitives have become substantives entirely, as : bas Leben, life; bas Entsepen, horror.
- 3. The Infinitive, either with or without zu, is often used as subject of a verb, and as such may have an object by virtue of its verbal character, as:

Gute Freunde (zu) haben ift beffer als reich (zu) fein.

271. THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT 21.

The Infinitive without au follows:

- (a) The Modal Auxiliaries (see Lesson XXXIV); also merben in the formation of the future tense.
 - (b) The following verbs:

bleiben, remain finden, find heißen, order, bid helfen, help hören, hear

lassen, let, allow, permit

lehren, teach lernen, learn machen, make sehen, see

and, in certain phrases, haben, as:

Ich habe nicht viel Gelb auf ber Bank liegen, I have not much money lying in the bank.

(c) After gehen and other verbs of motion in such phrases as spazieren gehen, reiten, sahren, 'to go for a walk, ride, drive';

schlasen gehen, 'to go to bed' (not = 'go to sleep,' which is einschlasen), etc.

(d) As predicative subject, with heißen, and as object with nennen, heißen, as:

Das heißt schnell fahren, That is quick driving.

Das nenne (heiße) ich schlecht anfangen, I call that beginning badly.

NOTE. — The Past Participle is also admissible in this construction; see § 281, 6, below.

REMARKS. — 1. After haben, bleiben, finden, hören, sehen, gehen, in the constructions given above, the German Infin. corresponds to a *Present Participle* in English, as:

Er blieb fiehen, He remained standing, etc.

2. The verbs under (b), except bleiben and heißen, also admit of a daß clause after them, as:

Ich habe gehört (gesehen), daß er angekommen sei, I have heard that he is come.

3. The verbs helfen, lehren, lernen also take an Infin. with au after them, as:

3ch habe gelernt, zu gehorden, I have learnt to obey.

4. For the use of the Infin. for the P. Part. with these verbs, see § 199.

Note. — The verbs helfen, lehren, lernen do not substitute the Infin. for the P. Part. when followed by an Infin. with zu (see Rem. 3, above, and example).

5. For the Infin. with passive sense after lassen, see § 200, 7 (c), Note.

272. THE INFINITIVE WITH 31.

The Infinitive with zu is used after other verbs, such as:

(a) Those implying something to be attained, done or left undone, as:

anfangen, begin beginnen, befehlen, command bitten, beg erlauben, allow fürdsten, fear hoffen, hope raten, advise

fuchen, bersuchen, try
versuchen, try
unternehmen, undertake
verbieten, forbid
wagen, venture
warnen, warn
wünschen, wish

(b) Those implying a suspension of judgment, as:

beschuldigen, accuse einbisden, (refl.), imagine glauben, believe seugnen, deny

fcheinen, seem schmeicheln (refl.), flatter one's self.

(c) Those indicating various states of mind, as:

bereuen, repent freuen (impers.), rejoice freuen (refl.),

lieb sein, be acceptable (be glad)
leib sein (thun), be unacceptable (be sorry)

REMARKS.— 1. With most of these verbs the Infinitive may be replaced by a bag clause, and must be so replaced unless the subject of the action in the dependent clause is either subject or direct object of the principal clause, as:

Er glaubt, sehr geschickt zu sein. He believes himself to be very clever; — or:

Er glaubt, bag er fehr geschickt ift.

Er hoffte, zu tommen, He hoped to come ; - but :

Er hoffte, daß sein Bater kommen werde, (see § 265, c), He hoped that his father would come.

Es that mir leid, Sie nicht gesehen zu haben, I was sorry not to have seen you; — or:

Es that mir leib, baf ich Sie nicht gefehen hatte ; - but :

Es ist mir lieb, baß Sie gekommen sind, I am glad that you have come.

2. The Infinitive clause as *direct object* is often represented in the principal clause by the neut. pron. cs (with prepositions by ba, see § 277, below), as:

Ich wage es nicht, allein zu kommen, I do not venture to come alone.

Observe the idiomatic use of the Infinitive with zu after haben, sein, stehen, in the following examples:

Ich habe ihm einen Brief zu übergeben, I have a letter

Es ist (steht) zu erwarten, It is to be expected.

NOTE. - In the latter example, the infin. has a passive signification.

EXERCISE XLV.

A. 1. Guten Morgen, alter Freund; nichts könnte mir gelegener sein, als dich anzutreffen. 2. Ich freue mich herzlich, dich zu sehen; ich habe schon lange einen Besuch von dir erwartet. 3. Du solltest doch wissen, dass man wenig Zeit hat, Besuche zu machen, wenn man sich auf ein Examen vorbereitet. 4. Das ist wahr, aber lass dir gratulieren; du hast ja ein glänzendes Examen bestanden. 5. Es ist mir freilich viel besser gelungen, als ich erwartete. 6. Was gedenkst du jetzt zu thun, da du promoviert hast? 7. Gerade das wollte ich mit dir besprechen; du kannst mir vielleicht mit gutem Rate beistehen. 8. Ich habe mich entschlossen, auf ein Jahr nach Europa zu gehen; wäre es nicht auch für dich sehr vorteilhaft, ein Jahr dort zuzubringen? 9. Sehr vorteilhaft, besonders wegen meines Sprachstudiums, aber ich fürchte meine Verhältnisse erlauben es mir nicht. 10. Das sehe ich nicht ein, es wird nur wenig mehr kosten dort zu leben als hier. 11. Bist du deiner Sache gewiss? 12. Ja wohl, weisst du, ein Vetter von mir ist kürzlich von Europa zurückgekommen, und ich habe

mich bei ihm genau nach Allem erkundigt. 13. Wo hat er die Zeit zugebracht? 14. Teils in England, teils in Frankreich (und) teils in Deutschland, und er behauptet, dass man in Europa wenigstens ebenso billig leben kann wie in Amerika. 15. Aber du hast die Reisekosten nicht mit eingerechnet. 16. Natürlich nicht, aber man reist jetzt viel billiger als man früher reiste. 17. Hast du dein Billet schon gelöst? 18. Noch nicht, aber ich habe mich darnach erkundigt und finde, dass man für hundert Thaler oder weniger über New York nach Liverpool reisen kann. 19. Zweite Klasse natürlich. 20. O nein, erste Klasse, und mit einer sehr guten Dampferlinie. 21. Ist es möglich? Du hast mich fast überredet, die Reise zu unternehmen. 22. Komm nur heute Abend zu mir und wir werden die Sache weiter besprechen. 23. Gut; also bis Abend.

B: 1. Have the goodness to read this letter for me; I have left my spectacles up-stairs, and cannot see very well. 2. Please read pretty loud, for my hearing is bad. 3. Help me to do my work, and I will help you to learn your lessons. 4. When you (man) do not know what to say (what you shall say), say nothing. 5. You will now close your books; we have read enough for the present. 6. "To err is human; to forgive, divine," is a verse from a poem by the English poet Pope. 7. I have so much work to do that I do not know where to begin. 8. Show the child how it is to learn its lesson. 9. I am tired of reading, and must now retire to rest. 10. "Eat, little bird, eat," said a child to her bird. 11. "Thou shalt not steal" is (called) the eighth commandment. 12. The habit of rising early is of great importance when one has a great deal of work to do. 13. If one wants to rise early, one should go to bed early. 14. An old, well-known proverb says: "Man does not live to eat, but eats to live." 15. Another proverb says: "Speaking is silver; silence is gold.' 16. When I arrived at the railwaystation I found that I had no money with me; imagine my

embarrassment. 17. The art of making glass was already known to the ancients. 18. Are there any houses to sell or to rent in your neighbourhood? 19. I wish to speak to Mr. Bell. 20. Have (Iaffen) John black my shoes, for I am in a hurry. 21. I have heard say that the celebrated bishop of G. is coming; would you not like to hear him preach? 22. Yes, I should like very much to hear him preach; when is (folion) he to come here? 23. We have had the good fortune to shoot three hares. 24. Some people would rather die than beg.

LESSON XLVI.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD (continued).

273.

INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE.

The Infinitive with zu is used to express purpose, as:

Mein Freund kam, mich zu warnen, My friend came to warn me.

REMARKS. — 1. The Infin. expressing purpose is generally governed by the preposition um (see § 276, 1, below), which begins the clause, as:

Ich komme, um Sie nach Hause zu bringen, I come to fetch you home.

- 2. An Infin. clause with 311 is always preceded by a comma in German.
- 3. This Infin. is also used, with or without zu, after adjectives preceded by zu, 'too,' or genug, 'enough,' as:
 - Ich war zu müde, (um) ausgehen zu können, I was too tired to be able to go out.

Er ist reich genug, (um) viele Diener halten zu fonnen, He is rich enough to keep many servants. Note. — After an adjective with ju, a clause introduced by als dag may be used, as:

Ich war zu müde, als daß ich ausgehen fonnte, I was too tired to be able to go out.

274. THE INFINITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES.

The Infinitive with \mathfrak{zu} is used after substantives, nouns and adjectives, akin to the verbs in § 272, to express purpose, etc., as:

- 3ch habe Luft, einen Spaziergang zu machen, I have a mind to take a walk.
- Ich hatte keine Zeit, mich nach ihm umzuschen, I had no time to look after him.
- Er ist stets bereit, ben Armen zu helsen, He is always ready to help the poor.

275. THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE.

The Accusative with the Infinitive is inadmissible in modern German; hence verbs denoting statement, knowledge, perception, etc., must be followed by a baß clause, as:

(Engl.) I know him to be a good man,

(Germ.) Ich weiß, daß er ein guter Mann ift.

(Engl.) I perceived her to be inattentive,

(Germ.) Sch mertte, baß fie unaufmertfam mar.

REMARKS. — r. In such sentences as those in the examples given in the above section, the passive construction with the Infin. is also inadmissible in German except impersonally, as:

(Engl.) He is known to be a good man,

(Germ.) Man weiß, daß er ein guter Mensch ist; - or : Es ift bekannt, daß er u. s. w.

2. Observe the different relations of the accusatives in the following sentences:

(Engl.) I begged him (obj. of 'begged') to come,

(Germ.) Ich bat ihn zu kommen.

(Engl.) I wish to see him (obj. of 'see'),

(Germ.) Ich wünsche, ihn zu sehen.

(Engl.) I wish him (subj. of 'come') to come,

(Germ.) Ich wünsche, daß er tomme.

3. After glauben, the Infin. is admissible in German, but not in English, when the subject of the action is the same in both clauses. as:

(Germ.) Ich glaubte, recht gehört zu haben,

(Engl.) I believed that I had heard aright.

When, on the contrary, the subjects are different, the Infin. (with accus.) is admissible in English, but not in German, as:

(Engl.) I believe him to be an honest man,

(Germ.) Ich glaube, bag er ein ehrlicher Mensch ift.

4. The English Infin. in objective indirect questions is unusual in German, and should be replaced by a finite clause, as:

(Engl.) He did not know where to go,

(Germ.) Er wußte nicht, wohin er gehen follte.

(Engl.) He told me what to do,

(Germ.) Er fagte mir, was ich thun follte.

276. THE INFINITIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

1. Only three prepositions can govern an infinitive (with zu) directly, viz.: um, 'in order,' ohne, 'without,' and (an) fiatt, 'instead of,' as:

Er fam, um mich von diesem Unfall zu benachrichtigen, He came, in order to inform me of this accident.

I could not look at him, without laughing heartily.

Unflatt mich gebulbig anzuhören, unterbrach er mich beständig, Instead of listening to me patiently, he kept constantly interrupting me.

REMARKS. — 1. Observe that in each of these examples the preposition stands at the beginning of the clause, the Infinitive at the *end*, with the words dependent on the Infinitive between.

- 2. The Infinitive after of the and (an) ftatt may be replaced by a daß clause. This is always the case when the subject of the action is different in the two clauses (compare § 224, 2, b, Rem.). Thus we may say:
 - Ich suchte vorbeizusommen, ohne gesehen zu werden (or : ohne daß ich gesehen wurde), I tried to go past without being seen;

but we must say:

Ich suchte vorbeizukommen, ohne daß man mich sah, I tried to go past without any one's seeing me,

because the subjects of the two clauses are different.

- 277. With other prepositions, the Infinitive or daß clause is represented in the principal clause by the adverb da prefixed to the preposition, as:
 - 3ch begnügte mich damit, ihn meine Unzufriedenheit merken zu lassen, I was contented with showing him my dissatisfaction.
 - Bir verlaffen uns barauf, baß Gie fommen, We rely on your coming.
 - 3ch fonnte ihn nicht daran verhindern, auszugehen, I could not prevent him from going out (or: his going out).
 - Er war eifersüchtig darauf, daß wir eingeladen worden waren, He was jealous of our having been invited.

- Wir sehnen uns danach, Sie wiederzusehen, We long to see you again.
- Er findet Bergnügen daran, Kinder zu neden, He finds pleasure in teasing children.
- Sie ärgerte sich darüber, daß wir so spät kamen, She was angry at our coming so late.
- Remarks. 1. The preposition 'of' is often omitted, as: Die Nachricht, daß der Friede unterzeichnet worden war, The news of the peace being (having been) signed.
- 2. The Infin. clause is only admissible when the subject of the action is the same as in the principal clause (compare § 276, Rem. 2, above).
- 3. The English Infinitive in -ing, or Gerund, must be carefully distinguished from the Present Participle, with which it has no connection.
- 4. The genitive or possessive adjective in English before this Gerund will become the *subject* of the **baß** clause in German, as:
 - She was angry at our coming late, Sie war bofe barüber, daß wir zu spät kamen.
 - He insisted on his sister's learning Latin, Er bestand barauf, baß seine Schmester Latein lernte (lernen sollte).
 - 5. In an indirect question, ob takes the place of daß, as:
 - Es geht mich nichts an, ob er kommt ober nicht, It does not concern me, whether he comes or not.
- 6. When the Gerund expresses an adverbial relation (time, cause, etc.), it must be expanded into an adverbial clause, as:
 - Before concluding, I shall make one more observation, Che ich schließe, werde ich noch eine Bemerkung machen.

On seeing me, he held out his hand to me, Als er mich fah, hielt er mir die Hand hin.

In persuading others we persuade ourselves, Indem wir andere überreden, überreden wir uns selbst.

278. THE INFINITIVE IN ELLIPTICAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

1. The Infinitive is used, as in English, in various elliptical constructions, without being dependent on any other word, as:

Wgrum mich weden? Why waken me?

Nach seinem Aussehen zu urteilen, To judge from his appearance.

2. For the Infinitive with the force of an Imperative, see § 269, Rem. 5, above.

EXERCISE XLVI.

A. 1. Nicht waar, Fräulein B., Sie waren gestern Abend im Konzert? 2. Ja, waren Sie auch dort? Ich habe Sie nicht gesehen. 3. Das ist gern möglich; unter so vielen Menschen findet man sich nicht leicht. 4. Der Saal war gedrängt voll, wahrscheinlich weil das Konzert zum Besten des neuen Waisenhauses gegeben wurde. 5. Nicht allein das, sondern auch weil die neue Sängerin, Fräulein M., zum ersten Male auftrat. 6. Das Publikum schien von ihr ganz entzückt zu sein, und die Zeitungen sind heute Morgen voll ihres Ruhmes. 7. Ich habe nie eine so klare und starke Stimme gehört. 8. In der Arie aus Lohengrin hat sie sich besonders ausgezeichnet. 9. Das Lied von Schubert mit Harfen-Begleitung gefiel mir am besten. 10. Frau S. sang auch sehr gut, aber Sie schien ein wenig heiser zu sein. 11. Trotz dem, was die Kritiker sagen, gefiel mir ihr Gesang besser als der von Frl. M. 12. Ich finde auch. dass sie mit mehr Gefühl singt und dass ihre Stimme geschulter ist. 13. Was halten Sie vom Geigenspiel des Herrn K.? 14. Es muss sehr gut sein, dem Beifall nach zu urteilen, aber ich ver324

stehe mich nicht auf die Geige. 15. Ich ziehe die Geige jedem andern Instrumente vor. 16. Spielt Ihr ältester Bruder nicht die Geige? 17. Nein, aber er spielt die Flöte und begleitet mich oft, wenn ich auf dem Klavier spiele. 18. Ihre Familie ist überhaupt sehr musikalisch. 19. Ja wohl, wir spielen fast alle mehr oder weniger. 20. Selbst Ihre kleinen Geschwister? 21. Ja, Marie spielt die Guitarre, Anna die Geige und Friedrich nimmt seit einigen Monaten Stunden auf dem Violoncell. 22. Wissen Sie, ob viel für das Waisenhaus übrig bleibt, nachdem alle Kosten bestritten sind? 23. Etwa füns hundert Thaler, doch beabsichtigt man, ein zweites Konzert im Laufe des Winters für denselben Zweck zu geben.

B. 1. Let us (indef.) not return evil for evil. 2. Do what is right, let it cost what it may. 3. The eighth commandment says that we are not to steal. 4. He was punished for having neglected his duty. 5. The teacher told us we should close our books, we had read enough for the present. 6. Freddy, do you stand, and give your little brother your chair. 7. In German they say of one who buys anything without seeing it that he buys a cat in a bag. 8. Do you care to go for a drive with us? 9. No, thank you. Do you ride (fahren): I prefer to walk. 10. Who has left these books lying on the table? 11. John; and he says he forgot to take them up. 12. Bid him carry them up immediately into the study, and then let him come down here. 13. Every one thought Mr. N. to be a rich man, but he failed (perf.) lately. 14. I have not a single pen fit to write with, and I have a dozen letters to write. 15. Do not allow yourself to be disturbed by my coming; do not stop writing. 16. The beggar, of whom we were speaking in another exercise, passed his youth in idling instead of working. 17. Little Frederick had the misfortune to break an arm while skating, and he was obliged to remain lying in bed a week. 18. Alfred the Great divided the day

into three parts: one part was devoted to business, the second to reading, praying and studying, and the third to eating, sleeping and pleasure. 19. We wished our friends to come in, but they had no time. 20. I am glad to have made your acquaintance. 21. If you go hunting without your father knowing it, he will be very much displeased. 22. Our teacher used to insist on our writing a German exercise every day, and it was impossible for us to neglect this duty without his knowing it. 23. Before going home we must go to visit your old friend L. If you went away without his seeing you, he would be very sorry. 24. We heard some one coming behind us on the street, and we remained standing at the corner to see who it was. 25. Our old neighbour has three sons, but instead of their supporting him, he is obliged to support them. Is he not very much to be pitied?

LESSON XLVII.

THE PARTICIPLES.

279. The Participles are properly Verbal Adjectives, and their uses and constructions are those of Adjectives. There are three Participles, the Present, the Past and the Future-Passive or Gerundive. The English compound Perfect Participle (e. g., 'having praised') has no corresponding form in German, and must be rendered by a clause (see § 284, below).

280. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The Present Participle has active force, and, like the Present Indic., marks a present or continuing state or action, the substantive which it qualifies being the subject of the action, as:

Das ichlasende Kind, The sleeping child (= 'the child that sleeps').

Gine haarsträubende Geschichte, A story that makes one's hair stand on end.

The Present Participle is for the most part used only attributively, as in the above examples. It is used predicatively only:

(a) When it is a true adjective in function, without any idea of time, as:

Seine Krantheit ist nicht bedeutend, His illness is not

Die Schönheit dieser Landschaft ist entzüdend, The beauty of this landscape is enchanting (i. e., delightful).

(b) In apposition with the *subject* (sometimes also with the *direct* object) of the sentence in which it occurs, when the action of the Participle is *simultaneous* with that of the principal verb, as:

Sich schnell nach mir umwendend, sah er mir ins Gesicht, Turning quickly around, he looked into my face.

Grrötend schlug sie die Augen nieder, Blushing she dropped her eyes.

Preisend mit viel schönen Reben Ihrer Länder Wert und Zahl, Saßen viele deutsche Fürsten Einst zu Worms im Kaisersaal. (Kerner.)

Praising with many fine speeches the worth and number of their territories, many German princes were sitting one day in the Imperial Hall at Worms.

REMARKS. — 1. This construction is more usual in poetic or exalted diction than in ordinary language, where it is generally replaced by an adverbial clause (see § 284, below).

2. The Present Participle is not used in German, as it is in English, with the auxiliary 'to be' (see § 31, Rem. 3).

281. THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The Past Participle of a transitive verb has passive force, not necessarily with any distinct reference to past time, as:

Das geliebte Rind, The beloved child (i. e., the child that is or was beloved).

But when the participle indicates a single action, it has perfect force, as:

Das gestohlene Bferd, The horse which has been stolen.

The Past Participle of an intransitive verb has active force, as:

Die Musit hat aufgehört, The music has ceased.

REMARKS. — 1. The Past Participle of transitive verbs may be used attributively as well as predicatively, as in the first two examples above.

2. The Past Participle of intransitive verbs conjugated with sein is sometimes used attributively and denotes a *state* produced by the action of the verb, as:

Das weggelaufene Pferd, The horse which had run away; but not: Das gelaufene Pferd.

3. The Past Participle, like the Present (compare § 280 b, above), may be used predicatively in apposition to the subject (or sometimes to the *direct* object) of the sentence in which it occurs, as:

Das Bolf, vom Fürsten unterdrück, empörte sich gegen ihn, The people, oppressed by the prince, revolted against him.

- 4. For the Past Participle with Imperative force, see §269, 5.
- 5. The Past Participle replaces the English *Present* Participle after fommen to specify the manner of the motion, as:
 - Er fam gegangen, gelaufen u. f. w., He came walking, running, etc.
 - 6. After verbs of calling, it is used for the Infinitive, as:

 Das heißt (nenne ich) für die Zukunst gesorgt, That is (I call that) caring for the future.
- 7. It also replaces an Infinitive in such phrases as the following:
 - Ich muß fort! Lieber hier Alles im Stiche gelaffen! I. must go! Rather (would I) leave everything in the lurch here. (Lessing.)
- 8. It is used in a few absolute constructions, with or without a substantive, which is usually in the accusative when present, as:

Bugegeben, daß dies wahr ist, Granted that this is true. Meinen Bruder ausgenommen, waren alle zugegen, Except my brother, all were present.

282. THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

This Participle, also called the **Gerundive**, has the form of the Present Part. preceded by \mathfrak{zu} . It is formed from *transitive* verbs only, and is only used attributively, being replaced in the predicate by an infinitive with \mathfrak{zu} , as:

Eine zu lobende Handlung, An act to be praised; but: Eine Handlung, welche zu loben ist.

283. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE PARTICIPLES.

1. Many words with the form of Participles have the value of adjectives. Some occur as adjectives only (see also § 194, Note), others with a special meaning, as: gelehrt, learned; befannt, acquainted; verschieben, different; bejahrt, aged, etc.

- 2. All Participles (except the Past Part. of some intransitive verbs, see § 281, Rem. 2, above) may be used as pure adjectives, and as such may be compared or used as adjectival substantives (see § 122), frequently with concrete meaning, as: ber Reisende, the traveller; ber Lefende, the man who reads : ber Borfitende, the chairman ; bas Gelesene, what one has read.
- 3. Participles, unless they have become pure adjectives, are used sparingly as adverbs; but the Participle in apposition (see §§ 280, b; 281, 3, above) may sometimes be construed as an adverb, e.g.:

Someigend brudte er mir bie Band, Silently (in silence) he pressed my hand.

REMARK. — This participial adverb of manner may be replaced by an adverbial clause with indem.

4. The Participle, when used attributively, always follows all words qualifying or modifying it, and immediately precedes its substantive; as predicate, it sometimes, especially in poetry, precedes them (see § 280 b, above), but generally and more correctly follows, as:

> Das von seinen Eltern innig geliebte Rind, The child, dearly beloved by its parents.

> Dit ber einen Sand ichwimmend, mit ber andern bas Rind über bem Waffer emporhaltend u. f. w., Swimming with one hand, with the other holding the child above water, etc.

> Das Bolf, vom Fürsten unterbrudt u. f. w., The people, oppressed by the prince, etc.

ENGLISH PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

1. The Present Participle is never used in German, as it so frequently is in English, to express adverbial relations of time or cause, and must be replaced, where so used, by a regular adverbial clause, introduced by the proper adverb or conjunction, as follows:

(a) To express time, the conjunctions ba, als, 'when,' indem, wantend, 'while,' must be used, as:

Seeing him turn pale, I hastened to his assistance, Da (als) ich ihn erbleichen sah, eilte ich ihm zur Hilfe herbei.

Recovering himself, the orator continued, Indem er sich sammelte, suhr der Redner fort.

REMARKS. — 1. The English Perfect Participle is replaced by a clause with nandem (or als), with the Pluperfect, as:

Having examined his papers, they let him go, Nachbem man seine Papiere untersucht hatte, ließ man ihn gehen.

- 2. The clause with **indem**, indicating simultaneous action, may be replaced by a participial clause in the case specified in \S 280, b, above.
 - (b) To express cause, the conjunctions ba, indem, 'as,' 'since,' or weil, 'because,' must be used, as:

Being an honest man, he may be trusted, Weil er ein ehrlicher Mann ist, so kann man ihm trauen.

Hoping to see you soon, I remain ever yours, Indem ich hoffe, Sie balb zu sehen, verbleibe ich stets ber Ihrige.

Not having found him at home, I went away, Da ich ihn nicht zu Hause gefunden hatte, ging ich fort.

- 2. The Present Participle qualifying a preceding substantive or pronoun is changed:
 - (a) Into a regular relative clause with finite verb, as:

A loaf was found at Herculaneum, still retaining its form, Gin Brot wurde zu Herculanum gefunden, welches noch die Form beibehielt.

The ship, having come straight towards us, showed the black flag, Das Schiff, welches gerade auf uns zugekommen war, zeigte die schwarze Flagge.

NOTE. — The tense of the verb in the adverbial clause will correspond with that of the principal verb, as shown above, the Pluperfect, however, generally replacing the English Perfect Participles.

(b) Into an attributive participial clause, in which the Participle will immediately precede the substantive (see § 283, 4, above), as:

A man passing on the street, Ein auf der Straße borbeigehender Mann.

3. A Participle preceded by an adverbial conjunction is replaced by a finite clause with the corresponding conjunction, as:

While travelling in Europe, we met a great many Americans, Als wir in Europa reisten, trasen wir mit vielen Amerikanern zusammen.

For the Infinitive in -ing, or Gerund, and its German equivalents, see § 276, above.

EXERCISE XLVII.

A. 1. Haben Sie Ihr Billet schon gelöst? 2. Nein, noch nicht. 3. Dann müssen wir uns beeilen; wir sollten erst etwas geniessen, ehe wir abreisen. 4. Hier ist der Schalter; soll ich auch ein Billet für Sie nehmen? 5. Danke, ich habe meins schon gelöst. 6. Jetzt bin ich fertig, aber wir haben kaum drei Viertelstunden Zeit, bis der Zug abfährt. 7. Dann müssen wir nach der ersten besten Restauration gehen. 8. Dort drüben ist eine. 9. Das trifft sich gut; gehen wir gleich hinein. 10. Kellner, wir haben es sehr eilig. 11. Nehmen Sie Platz, meine Herren; ich werde Sie sofort bedienen; hier ist die Speisekarte. 12. Geben Sie mir gefälligst einen Teller Suppe. 13. Und Sie, mein Herr? 14. Bringen Sie mir zuerst eine Serviette. 15. Entschuldigen Sie, hier ist sie. 16. Ich nehme

eine Forelle. 17. Bedaure, es ist keine mehr da. 18. Nun, dann bringen Sie mir ein Stück Lachs. 19. Hier ist die Weinkarte; trinken die Herren Wein? 20. Bringen Sie eine Flasche Rotwein und Gläser. 21. Wie schmeckt Ihnen der Fisch? 22. Ausgezeichnet. 23. Diese Suppe schmeckt mir gar nicht. 24. Lassen Sie sich doch Fisch kommen. mache mir nichts aus Fisch; - Kellner! 26. Zu Befehl. 27. Eine Portion Entenbraten mit grünen Erbsen. 28. Wünschen Sie keine Kartoffeln? 29. Jawohl, gebratene Kartoffeln. Bringen Sie auch Brot. 30. Noch etwas? 31. Nein. Was wünschen Sie, Herr B.? 32. Bitte, reichen Sie mir die Speisekarte. Ich bestelle mir Kalbskoteletten mit Kartoffeln und gelben Rüben. 33. Sonst noch Gemüse? 34. Etwas Blumenkohl. 35. Erinnern Sie sich schon früher hier gespeist zu haben, Herr B.? 36. Nicht dass ich wüsste : die Restauration scheint neu zu sein. 37. Deshalb wird man vielleicht so gut bedient. 38. Ist den Herren etwas gefällig? : 39. Bringen Sie mir eine Portion Eis und eine Tasse Kaffee 40 Und mir eine Tasse Chocolade und eine Portion Erdbeeren mit Sahne, und schreiben Sie alles auf meine Rechnung. 41. Hier ist die Rechnung, mein Herr. 42. Wie viel beträgt sie? 43. Sieben Mark fünfzig Pfennig. 44. Hier sind acht Mark: das Übrige ist Ihr Trinkgeld. 45. Jetzt müssen wir fort; es hat soeben auf dem Bahnhofe zum ersten Male geläutet.

B. 1. A sleeping fox catches no chicken. 2. Sleeping dogs do not bite. 3. The past cannot be helped (changed); let us rather think of what is to come. 4. It is much better to think without speaking than to speak without thinking. 5. Man is a speaking animal, a fire-using animal, a laughing animal: these are some of the definitions which have been proposed by philosophers. 6. We learn to speak German in speaking German. 7. Well hit (treffen)! I call that well played! 8. I wanted to show you an article in yesterday's

paper, but it is nowhere to be found. 9. Let me know when you think of coming to town. 10. The skill of ants in the building of their nests is astonishing. 11. Smiling, he began to read the letter, but before having read the half of it, he threw it furiously on the floor. 12. A hussar came galloping down the street and said the battle was beginning. Paradise Lost of Milton is one of the most important works of English literature; it was written in the seventeenth century, but this does not prevent its being still much read. 14. After having been so well received by us, I wonder that he is not ashamed to speak evil of us. 15. The morning was cool and charming, but towards noon the heat became oppressive, and we saw great clouds rising in the west. 16. He says the matter is perfectly clear, but his saying so does not make any difference. 17. He went away complaining that there was no use talking to people who did not want to understand. 18. That was because he was angry, and because he had not succeeded in making himself understood (perstänblich). 19. Make no mistakes in copying your exercise, or else a second copying will be your punishment. 20. Besides making mistakes the last time, you wrote very badly. 21. "The danger to be avoided," said he, "is not yet past." 22. Going (hingehen) to visit our friends in Schiller-street this afternoon, we met them coming to visit us. 23. His being rich is no excuse for his being lazy; we do not need to be idle merely because we are not forced to earn our bread. 24. A certain man, just before dying, called his sons to him, and told them there was a treasure lying hidden somewhere in his field. 25. Believing they would find it, they began digging everywhere, but without finding the wished-for (ermunicht) treasure. 26. One of them, wiser than the others, finally guessed what his father had meant by having told them this. 27. This son said that since digging the ground the crop had been much better, and that this was the treasure the father meant.

LESSON XLVIII.

CONCORD AND APPOSITION.

285. CONCORD OF SUBJECT AND VERB.

- 1. The predicate verb (the *finite* part, or that containing the *copula*) agrees with its subject in number and person.
 - 2. Two or more subjects require the verb in the plural, as:

 Mein Bater und meine Mutter sind hier gewesen, My
 father and mother have been here.

REMARKS. — 1. If the subject nearest to the verb be singular, the verb is sometimes in the singular, especially if the subjects follow the verb, as:

Seine Habsucht, seine üppige Lebensart, sein hochschrendes Wesen brachte die Erbitterung gegen ihn aufs höchste, His avarice, his luxurious mode of living, his arrogant behaviour, excited the animosity against him to the highest point. (Schiller, Egmont's Leben und Tod.)

Oben bei dem Throne lag der König und die Königin, Above near the throne lay the King and Queen.

(GRIMM, Dornröschen.)

Note. — This is especially the case when the subjects, indicating things or abstract ideas, are regarded as forming together one idea, or are more less synonymous, e. g.:

Saus und hof ift vertauft, House and home are sold.

Gelb und Gut macht nicht glüdlich, Money and property (= wealth) do not make [one] happy;

or when particular attention is called to the last (as forming a climax), e. g.:

Mein Bermögen, mein Ruf, mein Leben fleht nicht auf bem Spiele, My property, my reputation, my life (the most important of all), are not at stake.

2. If the subjects be of different persons, the verb agrees in person with the first rather than the second or third, and with the second rather than the third, the plural pronoun of the proper person being usually (always with the second person) expressed before the verb, as:

Du und ich (mein Bruder und ich), wir gingen aus, You and I (my brother and I) went out.

Du und beine Schwester, ihr seid ausgegangen, You and your sister went out.

3. With titles of rank and compliment the verb is usually in the plural (see also § 49), as:

Seine Majestät haben geruht u. s. w., His Majesty has been pleased, etc.

4. Collectives, if singular, take a verb in the singular, unless followed by a plural substantive in apposition or in the genitive, as:

Eine große Menschenmenge war zugegen ; - but :

Eine große Menge Menschen waren zugegen, A great number of people were present.

Notes.—1. The singular may also be used in such cases as that given in the second example above, unless the collective is considered with reference to its component parts individually.

2. With nouns of Number in the sing. (see § 185, 1) the verb is used in the plur. only when an *indefinite* quantity is meant, as:

Ein paar (= einige) Tage waren vergangen, A few days had passed ; - but:

Ein Baar Stiefel toftet fieben Thaler, A pair of shoes costs seven dollars.

5. When the real (logical) subject is represented by ¢8, or some other neut. sing. pron., before the verb (see §§ 39; 82, Rem. 2; 141), the verb agrees with the *logical*, not with the grammatical subject, as:

Es find meine Brüber, It is my brothers.

NOTE. — With a personal pronoun as subject, this est follows the verb (see § 39, 2).

6. If the subjects be separated by a disjunctive conjunction or conjunctions, the verb regularly agrees with the last only, but this rule is by no means so strictly observed as in English, even by the best writers, e. g.:

Beder die Union noch die Ligue mischten sich in biesen Streit, Neither the Union nor the league took part in this dispute.

Sowohl die Lage als die Befestigung dieser Stadt schienen jedem Angriffe Trotz zu bieten, The situation, as well as the fortification, of this city seemed to defy every attack. (SCHILLER, 30jähriger Krieg.)

Notes. - 1. Constructions like the following:

Entweder bu ober id) bin tanh, Either you or I am deaf, are in German, as in English, felt to be awkward, and are therefore avoided by substituting some other construction, c. g.:

Eutweder ich bin taub, oder du bift es, Either I am deaf, or you are.

2. The sing is used after expressions of the time of day, and in the multiplication table, as:

Es ift gehn Uhr, It is ten o'clock.

Behn mal elf ift (macht) hundert und zehn, Ten times eleven is one hundred and ten.

286. REPETITION OF. SUBJECT.

When several connected sentences have a common subject, the subject must be repeated (as pronoun) when the order of the words is changed, as:

Der Zug kommt um neun Uhr an, und fährt um halb zehn wieder ab, The train arrives at nine o'clock, and leaves again at half-past nine; — but:

Der Zug kommt um neun Uhr an, und um halb zehn fährt er wieder ab, The train arrives at i ne o'clock, and at half-past nine it leaves again.

287. OMISSION OF PREDICATIVE VERB.

Saben and sein, as auxiliaries of tense, may be omitted in a subordinate sentence, as:

Nachdem sie den Brief gelesen, weinte sie, After she had read the letter, she wept.

288. OTHER CONCORDS.

- I. The Attributive (or Determinative) Adjective agrees with the substantives it qualifies in gender, number and case (for inflections see Less. XX, XXII, XXIV); the Predicative Adjective has no inflection (see § 14).
- 2. For the concord of Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives with their antecedent (in gender, number and person) see §§ 38, Rem. 4; 39; 43, Rem. 3, 4; 82, Rem. 1, 2; 83, Rem. 1; 86; 95, 1 (b); 162, 2.

NOTE.—A Relative Pronoun referring to an antecedent of the first or second person takes the verb in the *third* person, unless the relative is followed by the personal pronoun, as stated in § 95, r(b), e. g.:

Bist du es, der so gittert? — or: Bist du es, der du so gitterst? Is it you that tremble?

289. THE APPOSITIVE SUBSTANTIVE.

1. A substantive or pronoun may have another substantive attached to it attributively, giving a further description or definition of the person or thing spoken of. This latter substantive is said to be in apposition to the former, as:

Mein Freund, der Lehrer, trug seine einzige Basse, einen biden Stod, in der Hand, My friend, the teacher, carried his only weapon, a thick stick, in his hand.

- 2. A substantive or pronoun may also be placed in apposition to a sentence or clause, as:
 - Er sagte, daß er wieder ganz gesund sei, eine Behauptung, welche ich bezweiselte, or: was ich bezweiselte, He said he was quite well again, a statement which I doubted.

3. The appositive substantive is in the same case as the substantive which it defines, thus:

Rarl (Nom.), mein jüngster Bruder, ist frant, Charles, my youngest brother, is ill.

Die Krankheit Karls (Gen.), meines jüngsten Bruders, The illness of Charles, my youngest brother.

Eine gefährliche Krankheit drohte (intr.) Karl (Dat.), meisnem jüngsten Bruder; or: bedrohte (trans.) Karl (Acc.), meinen jüngsten Bruder, A dangerous illness threatened Charles, my youngest brother.

NOTES. — 1. A substantive in apposition to a sentence is put in the Nominative, as in the example under 2, above.

2. An appositive genitive without a determinative word before it, especially when governing another genitive, is uninflected, as:

Die Krankheit des Kronprinzen, Sohn des deutschen Kaisers, The illness of the Crown-Prince, son of the German Emperor; but:

Die Krantheit des Kronprinzen, des ältesten Sohnes u. s. w., The illness of the Crown-Prince, the eldest son, etc.

4. The appositive substantive generally agrees also in number with the word it defines, except in the case of abstract substantives and collectives, as:

Corneliens Rinder, ihr Stolz und ihre Freude, Cornelia's children, her pride and joy.

Da lebten die Hirten, ein harmlos Geschlecht, There lived the shepherds, a harmless race. (SCHILLER.)

5. The appositive substantive agrees in gender when there is a special form for the feminine, as:

Die Gravitation ist die Lenkerin der Bahnen aller Himmelskörper, Gravitation is the director of the courses of all heavenly bodies.

6. These rules are also applicable to an apposition introduced by als, 'as,' e. g.:

3dy tannte ihn als Anabe (Nom.), I knew him as (when) a boy (i.e., when I was a boy); — but:

Id fannte ihn als Anaben, I knew him when (he was) a boy.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

A. 1. Können Sie mir eine gute Buchhandlung empfehlen? 2. Was für Bücher wollen Sie kaufen? 3. Ich möchte mir die Werke einiger von den besten deutschen Schriftstellern anschaffen. 4. Sie sollten zu Herrn Braun gehen; er hat einen sehr groszen Vorrat, besonders von den deutschen Klassikern. 5. Wo ist das Geschäft? 6. Nur einige Schritt(e) von hier, Nummer fünf, um die Ecke; ich werde Sie begleiten. 7. Das wäre mir sehr angenehm. 8. Sie scheinen ein groszer Bücherfreund zu sein. 9. Ja, das ist eine Schwäche, die mich viel Geld kostet, aber mir auch viel Vergnügen macht. 10. Hier ist der Laden; ich erwarte Sie auf meinem Bureau, wenn Sie fertig sind. 11. Ich danke vielmals für Ihre Aufmerksamkeit. Also, auf Wiedersehen. 12. Zeigen Sie mir gefälligst einige Exemplare von Schillers Werken. 13. Gebunden oder ungebunden? 14. Zeigen Sie mir beides. 15. Aus wie vielen Bänden besteht dieses Exemplar? 16. Aus zwölf, und ich möchte Sie auf den ausgezeichneten Druck aufmerksam machen. 17. Der Druck ist sehr klar; haben Sie noch sonstige (andere) Ausgaben? 18. Wir haben Ausgaben in gröszerem Format', aber nur gebunden. Hier sind sie. 19. Das Format gefällt mir besser, aber ich mag den Einband nicht. 20. Dem ist leicht abzuhelfen. Ich bestelle Ihnen ein Exemplar und lasse es nach Ihrem Geschmack einbinden. 21. Gut, ich möchte es in braunem Leder mit Titel gebunden haben; aber wie viel soll ich Ihnen dafür bezahlen? 22. Die Ausgabe kostet zehn Thaler, der Einband fünf. 23. Bekomme ich Rabatt'? 24. Ja, zehn Prozent gegen bare Bezahlung. 25. Ich bezahle bar; das macht zwei und vierzig Mark. 26. Wünschen Sie noch etwas? 27. Ich

möchte auch Goethes sämmtliche Werke in demselben Format und Einband haben. 28. Es thut mir leid, dass wir keine mehr haben, aber ich kann sie bestellen und gleich mit der anderen Ausgabe einbinden lassen. 29. Zum selben Preise? 30. Nein, es wird mit Einband achtzehn Thaler netto betragen. 31. Dann besorgen Sie es gefälligst, und schicken Sie mir die Werke nebst Rechnung an diese Adresse; hier ist meine Karte. 32. Ich besorge alles aufs Sorgfältigste; binnen acht Tagen sollen Sie die Bücher haben.

B. 1. "Books," said Alfonso the Wise of Spain, "are my most honest councillors: neither fear nor hope prevents them telling me what my duty is." 2. "It is not my courtiers," said this king, "who tell me most honestly what my duty is, it is my books." 3. "No courtier dares to say to a king: 'Your Majesty is wrong,' but my books tell me so every day." 4. I asked a gentleman standing near me, if he knew what time it was, and he answered me that it was exactly twelve o'clock. 5. More than two hours have passed since then, so it must now be between two and three o'clock. 6. Was it you that came to see me yesterday, when I was away from home? 7. Yes, my brother and I wanted to visit you, and we were sorry not to find you at home. 8. Margaret, the eldest daughter of Henry VII. of England, married James IV. of Scotland. 9. These were the grand-parents of Mary Stuart, Queen of Scotland. 10. To do what is right, and to be happy, is one and the same, for virtue is its own reward. 11. Dear father and mother, do you remain sitting here until I go for a carriage to drive you home, for I know you are too tired to walk. 12. Twelve and twelve make twenty-four, and twelve times twelve is one hundred and forty-four. After having seen London and Paris, we had not much desire to see other cities. 14. I wrote to K., inviting him to pass his holidays with us, and by return of post received a letter,

saving we might expect him in a fortnight. 15. I asked you first as my oldest friend to assist me in this embarrassment. 16. I know we should avoid asking our friends for help until . we have done our utmost to help ourselves. 17. The huntsman whistled, and his dogs came running from the wood. 18. Our teacher was in the habit of telling us we should do what was right, let it cost what it would. 19. Is your teacher still living? Yes, he is still living, but he is getting very old now. 20. Goethe and Schiller are the two greatest poets of Germany: it is difficult to say which of the two is most beloved by the German people. 21. If you think we are right, give us some sign of approval: a word, a smile, a glance will suffice. 22. All the rest of our party arrived at the top of the mountain before sunset, but my friend and I arrived only at nine in the evening. 23. Expect us on Thursday next, health and weather permitting. 24. The gentleman coming out of that shop is Dr. B., and the lady accompanying him is his niece, Miss L. 25. Did you ever see the Emperor William? I have never seen him as Emperor of Germany, but I saw him many years ago as King of Prussia.

LESSON XLIX.

APPOSITION (continued): — APPOSITIVE ADJECTIVES. — SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

290. THE APPOSITIVE ADJECTIVE.

1. Attributive Adjectives and participles are said to be used appositively when they are separated from their substantive, as:

Der Bage, jung, hübsch und geistreich, war der Liebling des Hauses. The page, young, handsome and clever, was the favourite of the house.

- In der Schlacht seurig und surchtlos, war Monmouth sonst überall weichlich und unschlüssig, Ardent and intrepid in dattle, Monmouth was everywhere else effeminate and irresolute.
- 2. This appositive adjective or participle is, like the predicate adjective, uninflected, and is placed at the end of its clause. It is used much more sparingly in German than in English, and is almost wholly confined to apposition with the subject of the sentence (sometimes also with the direct object). In English the attributive adjective or participle is generally used appositively when it has more than one modifier, and always when it has a complement (as in the second example above). In German on the contrary the attributive adjective is freely used in all such cases before a substantive. All such appositive adjectives or participles, unless referring to the subject (or direct object) of the sentence, must be rendered in German either by an attributive or by a relative clause. The following examples will serve to illustrate to what extent the appositive adjective can be used in German, and to show how it is to be replaced in German in various connections.
 - (a) English Appositive = German Appositive (see also the examples under 1, above):
 - (Engl.) Beleaguered with present distresses and the most horrible forebodings on every side, roused to the highest pitch of indignation, yet forced to keep silence and wear the face of patience, Schiller could endure this constraint no longer. (Carlyle, Life of Schiller.)
 - (Germ.) Bon gegenwärtigen Nöten und den schrecklichsten Ahnungen von allen Seiten heimgesucht, bis auf den höchsten Grad entrüstet, gezwungen jedoch, stillzuschweigen und die Maske der Geduld zu tragen, konnte Schiller diesen Zwang nicht länger erdulden.

Note. — In this example, as in those under 1. above, the adjectives (participles) beleaguered, etc., are in apposition to the subject 'Schiller.'

- (b) English Appositive Adjective = German Attributive Adjective or Relative Clause:
 - (Engl.) To judge from the quantity of light emitted from the brightest stars, there is (one has) reason to suppose that some of them are much greater than the sun.
- (i) (Germ.) Nach der von den hellsten Sternen ausgestrahl=
 ten Lichtmasse zu urteilen, hat man Grund anzunehmen,
 daß einige davon viel größer sind als die Sonne; or:
 nach der Lichtmasse zu urteilen, welche u. s. w. ausge=
 strahlt wird u. s. w.
 - (Engl.) In the Isle of Man vast trees are found standing firm on their roots.
- (ii) { (Germ.) Auf der Infel Man findet man mächtige Bäume, welche auf den Burzeln feststehen; or : mächtige, auf den Burzeln feststehende Bäume.

NOTES. — I. The participles in these examples are in apposition to the objects 'quantity (of light)' and 'tree' respectively.

- 2. Observe the position of the Germ. attributive adj. immediately before, the substantive.
 - (c) English Appositive Adjective = German Attributive Adjective:
 - (Engl.) Bruce caused his men to lie down to take some sleep at a place about half a mile distant from the river.
 - (Germ.) Bruce ließ seine Leute sich an einer ungefähr eine halbe Meile vom Flusse entsernten Stelle nieder-legen, um ein wenig zu schlafen.

NOTE.—An attributive clause is preferable here, since a relative clause would separate the clause of purpose (um, etc.) from the infin. (uteberlegen) on which it depends.

(Engl.) During the eruption of the volcano, the dark-

ness occasioned by the ashes was so profound, that nothing like it was ever experienced.

(Germ.) Während des Ausbruches des Vulfans war die durch die Asche verursachte Finsternis so tief, wie man nie etwas Ühnliches wahrgenommen hatte.

Note. — Although the participle 'occasioned' is here in apposition to the subject 'darkness,' yet the position of the subject after the verb forbids the use of the appositive construction in German, as also in the following sentence:

- (iii) { (Engl.) It was a place advantageous for defence. (Germ.) Es war eine zur Berteibigung günstige Stelle.
 - (d) English Appositive Adjective = German Relative Clause:

(Engl.) This plant has changed into two distinct vegetables, as unlike each other as is each of

them to the parent-plant.

(Germ.) Diese Pflanze hat sich in zwei verschiedene Gemuseauten verwandelt, welche einander so unähnlich find, wie jede berfelben ber Mutterpflanze ift.

Note. - Here the attributive construction is inadmissible on account of the subsequent clause wie jebe u. f. w.

SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITIONS. 291.

The cases governed by the various Prepositions are fully treated of in Lessons IX, XIII, A, and XXXVIII, and their idiomatic use is further defined in Less, XXXIX.

The object of many verbs, as well as that of substantives and adjectives corresponding with them in signification, is expressed by prepositions. The proper use of prepositions after verbs, etc., must be learnt from practice and from the dictionary; but below is given, for convenient reference, the regimen of particular classes of verbs, etc., which differ most widely from their English equivalents.

i. at, of = "iber + Acc., of sorrow, joy, wonder, etc., as:

Verbs.

fich ärgern, be vexed erröten, blush erstaunen, be astonished fich freuen, rejoice fich grämen, grieve flagen, complain lachen, laugh sich schämen, be ashamed spotten, mock sich (ber)wundern, wonder

Substantives.

Arger, vexation
Errötung, blush
Erstaunen, astonishment
Freude, joy (also an + Dat.)
Gram, grief
Klage, complaint
Gelächter, laughter
Scham, Deschämung, shame
Spott, mockery
Verwunderung, surprise

Also the Adjectives argerlid, vexed; bose, angry (at things); empfindlid, sensitive; frob, lustin, merry.

Note. - Böse takes auf + Acc. when referring to persons.

- 2. for = auf + Acc., of expectation, etc., as: gefaßt, prepared; hoffen, Hoffnung, hope; warten, wait.
 - 3. for = nad, of longing, inquiring, etc., as:

Vients.

Substantives.

bürsten, thirst forschen, inquire hungern, hunger jagen, hunt suchen, search sich sehnen, long verlangen, desire Durst, thirst
Forschung, inquiry
Hunger, hunger
Fagb, chase
Lust,
Berlangen,
} desire

Also the Adjectives burftig, thirsty; ehrgeizig, ambitious; giezig, greedy; hungrig, hungry.

4. for = um, of entreaty, etc., as: bitten, ask; buhlen, court; flehen, beg; fich fümmern, concern one's self.

- 5. from = vor + Dat., of protection, etc., as: bewahren, preserve; hüten, protect; retten, save.
- 6. in = an + Dat., of plenty, want, etc., as: arm, poor; fruchtbar, fruitful; reich, rich; schwach, weak; start, strong.
 - 7. in or on = auf + Acc., of confidence, etc., as:

Verbs.

sich brüsten, boast sich verlassen, rely vertrauen, trust Substantives.

Stolz, pride Berlaß, reliance Bertrauen, confidence

8. of = an + Dat., of plenty, want, doubt, etc., as:

Verbs.

Substantives.

fehlen (impers.), be wanting mangeln " be wanting meifeln, doubt berzweifeln, despair

Mangel, want Reichtum, wealth Übersluß, superfluity Ameifel, doubt

Also the Adjectives front, sick; leer, empty.

9. of = an + Acc., of remembrance, etc., as:

Verbs.

benfen, think erinnern, remind sich erinnern, recollect Substantives.

Gedanke, thought Erinnerung, recollection

NOTE. — These verbs also govern the Genitive. See § 245.

10. of = auf + Acc. of suspicion, envy, pride, etc., as.

Substantives.

Adjectives.

Acht (geben), (pay) attention Argwohn, suspicion Eifersucht, jealousy Neid, envy Adjectives.

achtsan, aufmerksam, attentive argmöhnisch, suspicious eifersüchtig, jealous eitel, vain neidisch, envious stolz, proud

11. of = vor + Dat., of fear, etc., as:

Verbs.

Substantives.

sich fürchten, be afraid

Furcht, fear

" erschreden, be terrified

Schred, terror Grauen, dread

" grauen, dread

oranen, areaa

Also the adjectives bange, afraid; sicher, certain, sure.

12. to = an + Acc., of address, etc., as: adressieren, address; schreiben, write; sich richten, turn; sich wenden, apply.

13. to = gegen, after Adjectives signifying an affection of the mind, as: barmherzig, merciful; feinblid, hostile; freund-lid, friendly; gerecht, just; gleichgiltig, indifferent; gnäbig, gracious; grausam, cruel; nachsichtig, indulgent.

EXERCISE XLIX.

1. My sister is vexed at not receiving an invitation to the party. 2. I am tired of waiting for Charles; let us go without him. 3. Oh no, do not let us go yet; he will be angry at us, if we do not wait for him. 4. Charles has many good qualities, but you cannot rely upon him. 5. The boy is proud of the watch given to him by his father. 6. If you lose your way in a city, it is always safest to apply to a policeman. I have no doubt that this is good advice. 8. Mary is angry at Sarah, because Sarah has made sport of her. 9. Our neighbour has been ill for some days; he complains of rheumatism, and says he has caught cold. 10. I am less vexed at his not coming than at his not sending us word. 11. The war had already lasted more than four years, and people were longing for peace. 12. Diogenes is said to have gone once in daylight through the streets of the city, carrying at the same time a lantern. 13. People began to laugh at him and mock him, asking him what he was looking for. . 14. He replied that he was looking for an honest man. 15. The general postponed attacking the enemy, because his army was weak in artillery.

16. Mr. Kalk, the architect, promised that my house should be finished before the 1st July, but I doubt it. 17. The Province of Ontario is rich in iron, but is wanting in coal to smelt it. 18. We have been thinking for some time of selling our house, but we cannot find anyone who is willing to buy it. 19. Be good enough to remind me to buy some postage-stamps, when we go past the post-office. 20. We may learn as much by paying attention to what we see and hear as we can learn from books. 21. The horses, frightened by a passing train, shied, and were on the point of running away. 22. The first settlers in this country had much to endure: they lived for the most part in houses built of [the] trunks_of_trees and covered in many cases with bark. 23. (Just) as many people lost their lives (the life) by the famine occasioned by the earthquake, as by the earthquake itself. 24. The bad news received yesterday has prevented our going to town to-day. 25. There are men who grow richer by giving than others [do] by receiving.

LESSON L.

WORD-ORDER.

292. THE ESSENTIAL PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

1. Every sentence contains three essential parts, viz: the Subject, or that of which something is asserted, the Predicate, or that which is said of the Subject, and, thirdly, the Verb or Copula, the word which makes the assertion, and which may include the Predicate (as in the simple tenses of a verb), but does not necessarily do so. Thus, in the sentence: 'He sings,' 'he' is the Subject, while 'sings' contains both the Verb or Copula and the Predicate, i. e., it not only asserts something of the Subject, but also says what that something is, being equivalent to 'is singing.' In the sen-

tence: 'He has sung,' on the other hand, 'has' is the Verb (or Copula), 'sung' is what is asserted, or the Predicate.

2. The Verb (or Copula) is in German the member of the sentence, the position of which is most absolutely fixed; it is the cardinal point or hinge on which the sentence turns.

293. NORMAL POSITION OF THE VERB.

In German, there are three normal positions for the Verb, according to the nature of the sentence.

- (a) The Verb stands first:
 - In Interrogative Sentences expecting the answer 'yes' or 'no' (i. e., when the verb is the question-word, see § 23, 2), as:

If Ihr Bruder wohl? Is your brother well? Wird er fommen? Will he come? Seißen Sie Karl? Is your name Charles?

- 2. In sentences expressing a command or wish, as:
 - Besuchen Sie mich morgen, Come and see me tomorrow.
 - Bare ich zu Hause! Were I (would that I were) at home!

NOTE. - The verb may either follow or precede the subject in the 3. Sing. Subj. used as Imperative (see § 268, 1), as:

Gott behüte dich! or: Behüte dich Gott! God preserve thee!

- 3. In Conditional clauses, when the conjunction menn is omitted (compare § 59), as:
 - Bare das Wetter schön, so würde ich ausgehen, If the weather were fine, I should go out.
- (b) The Verb comes second (is the second idea) in all principal assertive sentences (compare § 20), as:

Der Mensch ift sterblich, Man is mortal.

Der jüngere Bruder meines Baters, welcher so frank war, ist tot, My father's younger brother, who was so ill, is dead.

Gestern Abend starb der Bruder meines Baters, Yesterday evening my father's brother died.

Sowohl (nicht nur) mein Bater, wie (sondern auch) mein Bruder war zugegen, Both (not only) my father, and (but also) my brother were (was) present.

REMARKS.— I. As in the last three examples above, the first member of the sentence may be complex, with several attributes, complements, etc.; the verb is still the second idea.

2. The coordinating conjunctions *proper* (§ 236) do not count as members of the sentence (see the last example above), but *adverbial* conjunctions throw the subject after the verb.

Note. — Certain adverbial phrases, of a more or less interjectional nature, such as: freilid, true; ja, yes; ja wohi, to be sure; nein, no; fur, in short; mit einem Bort, in a word; gut, well, are not regarded as part of the sentence, and do not throw the subject after the verb, thus:

Freilich, ich habe es nicht selbst gesehen, True, I did not see it myself.

Rurz (mit einem Wort), ich glaube es nicht, In short (in a word), I do not believe it.

Gut, ich werde tommen, Well, I shall come.

3. In assertive sentences of an *emphatic* or *exclamatory* character, the verb sometimes comes first, especially when the particle both is present, as:

Ist das ein Wetter! (= Was für ein Wetter ist das!)
What weather!

Sabe ich's dir boch gefagt! I told you so!

4. If a dependent clause or a quotation precede the principal sentence (compare § 294, b, Rem. 2, below), such clause or quotation is regarded as a single member of the sentence, and requires the verb immediately after it, as:

Da ich selbst nicht kommen konnte, schickte ich meinen Sohn, As I could not come myself, I sent my son.

Mis ich antam, war es schon nach 10 Uhr, When I arrived, it was after 10 o'clock.

Wenn er kommen sollte, werde ich zu Hause sein, If he should come, I shall be at home.

"Ich will meine Aufgabe nicht lernen," schrie der unartige Knabe, "I will not learn my lesson," cried the naughty bov.

NOTES. — I. After dependent conditional and adverbial clauses (except those of *time*) the particle $\{\mathfrak{g} \text{ usually introduces the principal sentence, as:}$

Da ich nicht felbft tommen tonnte, fo fchicte ich, meinen Sohn.

Wenn er tommen follte, jo werbe ich zu Saufe fein.

2. This particle (0 should always be inserted after a conditional clause with twenn omitted; in colloquial usage, however, the principal sentence sometimes has the subject before the verb, (0 being omitted, as:

Bare er früher gekommen, fo hätte er mich geschen; or (colloquially):

Bare er früher getommen, er hatte mich gefehen.

This latter construction, however, should not be imitated.

3. In proportional clauses introduced by ic, defin, or um io, the dependent clause comes first, and the verb is preceded by the word expressing the comparison, as well as by the particle ic, etc., as:

Se langer die Rächte find, besto fürzer find die Tage, The longer the nights are, the shorter are the days.

(c) The Verb is last in dependent sentences and questions (compare §§ 32; 88), as:

Ich weiß, daß ber Mensch sterblich ift, I know that man is mortal

Ein Mann, welcher gestern hier war, A man, who was here yesterday.

Ich gehe, weil es schon spät ist, I go because it is late.

Ich weiß nicht, wer hier gewesen ist, I do not know who has been here (dep. question).

REMARKS.— 1. Indirect statements with baß omitted have the construction of principal sentences (verb second; see §§ 20; 87, 3), as:

Er fagte, er habe es vergeffen, He said he had forgotten it.

2. Conditional clauses with menn omitted follow the question-order (verb first; compare § 59), as:

Bare bas Better schön, so wurde ich ausgehen, If the weather were fine, I should go out.

3. The Verb precedes two infinitives (or infinitive and part.; see § 199, 3), as in the compound tenses of Modal Auxiliaries, thus:

Er fagte, baß er nicht habe fommen wollen, He said that he had not intended to come.

- 4. Clauses with benn (='unless,' § 241, 18), having negative force, follow the construction of a principal sentence (verb second), as:
 - Ich lasse Dich nicht, Du segnest mich denn, I will not let Thee go, unless Thou bless me.
 - Ich werde nicht kommen, es sei benn, daß das Wetter schön werde, I shall not come, unless (it be that) the weather should become fine.
- 5. Saben and sein, as auxiliaries of tense, are frequently omitted at the end of a dependent clause, as:
 - Er leugnete, daß er das Fenster zerbrochen (habe understood). He denied that he had broken the window.
 - 3d fragte ihn, ob er zur rechten Zeit angekommen (fei understood), I asked him if he had arrived in good time.

294. Position of the Subject.

The Subject is placed:

(a) In Direct Questions, if it be the question-word, at the beginning; otherwise immediately after the Verb, as:

Wer ist hier gewesen? Who has been here?

Ift er hier gewesen? Has he been here?

Mann fommt 3hre Schwester? When does your sister come?

(b) In Principal Assertive Sentences, the normal position of the Subject is first; but if any other word precede the Verb, the Subject immediately follows the Verb, as:

36 werde morgen nicht ausgehen; or:

Morgen werbe ich nicht ausgehen, I shall not go out to-

REMARKS. — 1. In point of fact it may be said that, in a principal sentence, the Subject follows the Verb quite as often as it precedes it.

- 2. A preceding dependent clause, or a quotation, always throws the subject after the verb, except when, after a conditional clause with menn omitted, the principal sentence is not introduced by the particle is (compare § 293, 4, Note 2, above).
- 3. When the real (logical) subject is represented by estable before the verb as grammatical subject, the logical subject immediately follows the verb, as:

Es ift meine Schwefter gewesen, It was my sister.

(c) In Dependent Sentences, the Subject, if a relative pronoun, begins the sentence, otherwise the Subject immediately follows the connecting word, as:

Der Mann, welcher gestern hier war, The man who was here yesterday.

Der Mann, ben ich gestern sah, The man, whom I saw yesterday.

36 fagte ihr, daß ich kommen werde, I told her that I should come.

NOTE.—Personal Pronouns, and especially the reflective fid, sometimes precede the Subject, both in principal sentences with the Subject after the Verb, and in dependent clauses, as:

Morgen will sich mein Bruder verheitraten, My brother is going to get married to-morrow.

Er sagte, daß ihn dieser Mensch beleidigt habe, He said that this fellow had insulted him.

295. Position of the Predicate.

- 1. The Predicate, if not included in the Verb (see § 292, 1, above), may consist of a participle or infinitive (as in the compound tenses of the verb); or it may be a substantive, an adjective, or the separable prefix of a compound verb.
- 2. The Predicate is placed last in Principal Sentences and in Direct Questions; in Dependent Sentences it immediately precedes the Verb.
- 3. If the Predicate is compound, consisting of two or more of the elements under 1, above, they will occur in the following order: 1. Predicative adjective (or substantive); 2. Separable prefix; 3. Participle; 4. Infinitive; thus:

PRED. ADJ.

Er foll ftets gegen seinen armen Bruber fehr freigebig

genesen sein, He is said to have always been very liberal to his poor brother.

PREF. PART. INF.

Sie murde schon gestern ab = gereist sein, She would have departed yesterday.

REMARK. — Any one of these elements of the Predicate may, for emphasis, occupy the normal position of the subject in the *first* place (*before* the Verb), as:

Schön ist das Wetter heute nicht, The weather is not (at all) fine to-day (i. e., it is far from fine).

- Soldier, not a sailor.
- Singen will ich wohl, aber nicht spielen, I will sing, but not play.

Note. — The Separable Prefix and the Participle are, however, rarely placed in this position, except in elevated or poetic diction, or for contrast, as:

Rieber steig' ich jum Gesechte, I descend (down I go) to the fight. (SCHILLER.)

Burnde bleibt ber Rnappen Troß, The retinue of squires remains behind (ibid.).

Enticoloffen ift er alfobald, He is resolved at once (ibid.).

Gegeben habe ich ihm das Buch nicht, sondern nur geliehen, I did not give him the book, I only lent it to him.

296. Position of Objects and Cases.

1. Objects (not governed by a preposition) precede adjects (objects governed by a preposition), as:

I have written a letter to him (to my father).

2. Pronouns (unless governed by prepositions) precede substantives, as:

Ich habe ihm einen Brief geschrieben, I have written him a letter.

- 3. Of Pronouns, Personal before other Pronouns, as:
 - Ich habe ihm das (etwas) gegeben, I have given him that (something).
- 4. Of the cases of Personal Pronouns, the Accusative precedes the Dative, and both precede the Genitive; but the reflexive fifth usually precedes all others, as:
 - Er hat fin (Dat.) es gemerkt, He has taken_a_note_of it (for himself).

- 5. Of Substantives, the *Person* (unless governed by a preposition) precedes the thing; the *Indirect* precedes the Direct Object, and the *Remoter* Object (in the Genitive) follows both, as:
 - Ich habe Ihrer Schwester das Buch geliehen, I have lent your sister the book.
 - Er hat diesen Mann des Diebstahls beschuldigt, He has accused this man of thest.
- 6. The *personal* (or subjective) Genitive (compare § 243, 2) may either precede or follow the substantive which governs it, as:

Meines Baters Haus, My father's house; or: Das Haus meines Baters.

7. The *limiting* Genitive (see § 243, 3) follows, except in elevated or poetic diction, as:

Das Ende bes Rrieges, The end of the war.

- 8. Cases governed by adjectives precede the adjective, but a substantive with a preposition may follow the *predicative* adjective, as:
 - 3ch bin ihm bankbar für seine Bemühungen, I am grateful to him for his exertion.
 - 297. Position of Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions.
 - 1. In general, adverbs precede the word they modify, as: Ich bin sehr müde geworden, I have become very tired. Er hat das Buch nicht gelesen, He has not read the book.
- 2. Adverbs of Time precede objects (except pronouns) and all other Adverbs or Adverbial expressions, as:

Time. Object. Place. Manner. Er hat gestern das Buch zu Hause sehr sleißig studiert, He studied the book very diligently at home yesterday.

- 3. Adverbs of place precede those of manner, and both follow objects, as in the above example.
- 4. Of several Adverbs of like kind, the more general precede the special, as:

Morgen um zehn Uhr, At ten o'clock to-morrow.

REMARKS.— 1. Any object, adject, adverb or adverbial phrase may occupy the normal position of the subject at the head of a principal sentence (before the verb, compare § 295, Rem., above), as:

Meinen Bater habe ich nicht gesehen, I did not see my

Gestern fam ich zu spät, I came too late yesterday.

2. The relative position of objects, abverbs, etc., is the same in principal and subordinate sentences.

298. Position of other Members of the Sentence.

t. Attributive Adjectives and Participles immediately precede the substantive they modify, as:

Ein zur Berteibigung sehr gunstiger Ort, A place very favourable for desence.

Das auf dem Hügel stehende Haus, The house standing on the hill.

- 2. Prepositions precede their case, with the exceptions given in the lists (see §§ 46; 51; 223).
- 3. Conjunctions come between the words or clauses they connect, as:

Mein Bruder und seine Familie sind hier, My brother and his family are here.

3th weiß, daß Sie nicht kommen werden, I know that you will not come.

Note. — In dependent clauses that precede the sentence on which they depend the conjunction is first, as:

Meil id frant war, fonnte ich nicht fommen, Because I was ill, I could not come.

299. Construction of Incomplete Clauses.

The Word-order of Incomplete or Elliptical Clauses is the same as that of Complete Clauses, there being no Verb in the former. In Infinitive Clauses the Infinitive comes last; and in Appositive Clauses, the Adjective or Participle comes last, thus:

Gute Freunde (311) haben ist ein großes Glück, To have good friends is a great blessing.

Die Kunst in Öl zu malen, The art of painting in oil. Ich werde mich freuen, Sie morgen zu sehen, I shall be glad to see you to-morrow.

Dies alles bei mir benfend, schlief ich ein, Thinking all this to myself, I fell asleep.

Bon bem Lärm aufgeschreckt, sprang er aus bem Bette, Aroused by the noise, he jumped out of bed.

300. Interrogative Sentences.

- 1. Direct Questions always begin with the question-word, the other members of the sentence occupying the same relative position as in principal sentences. For the position of the Verb and Subject, see §§ 293, 294, above.
- 2. Questions in German very frequently have the form of a principal assertive sentence, the question being marked only by the rising inflexion of the voice, as:

Du hast beine Lektion nicht gelernt? You have not learnt your lesson?

Notes. - 1. This construction often occurs with a both in the sentence, as:

Du wirst both tommen? You will be sure to come (will you not?).

Er ist boch nicht fraut? He is not ill (is he? I hope not).

2. Exclamatory sentences frequently have the construction of dependent questions, but may also have that of direct questions, as:

Wer mitgehen dürfte! (Happy he) who might go with you! Wie ift das Wetter schön! How beautiful is the weather!

RECAPITULATION ...

301. GENERAL REMARKS ON GERMAN CONSTRUCTION.

The following are the principal points in which German differs from English Construction:

- 1. The Verb (containing the Copula) is the hinge on which the sentence turns, and has its position most absolutely fixed.
- 2. The Subject does not, as in English, necessarily precede the Verb in Principal Sentences; but if any other member of the sentence precede the Verb, an *inversion of the subject* takes place, and it is thrown after the verb.
- Notes.— i. The terms inversion, inverted sentence, often used by grammarians, refer to the Subject only, not to the Verb.
- 2. This inversion of the Subject is also found in Interrogative and Imperative Sentences (see §§ 293; 294; 300, above).
- 3. The relative rank of sentences is marked by the varying position of the Verb, which is last in Dependent Sentences.
- 4. All the other parts of the sentence, except what precedes the Verb, are included or bracketed between the Verb and the Predicate.
- 5. Dependent Sentences (including Infinitive and Appositive Clauses; see § 299, above) are marked off from the sentences on which they depend by commas.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON G.

COMPLEX SENTENCES. - CLAUSE-ORDER.

302. COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is compound when it contains more than one coordinate clause; complex when it contains a subordinate clause, thus:

Compound : 3ch ging an ihm vorbei, tannte ihn aber nicht,

I went past him, but did not know him.

Complex: Er sagte mir, daß er sommen werde,
He told me that he would come

2. Any subordinate clause may itself be complex, having another clause dependent upon it, as:

Ich erwartete ihn gestern, weil er mir geschrieben hatte, daß seine Geschäfte bald beendigt sein würden, I expected him yesterday, because he had written me, that his business would soon be finished.

Note. — In the above example, the clause weil er, etc., depends on the *principal* clause preceding it; whereas the clause baß seine Geschäfte, etc., depends on the clause weil er, etc., which is itself subordinate.

REMARK. — In the following observations as to the relative position or order of clauses, the term "principal sentence" includes all sentences, though themselves subordinate, which occupy the relation of a principal or governing sentence to the clauses dependent upon them.

303. I. In Complex Sentences, the position of the various dependent clauses is regulated by the following general principle:

Finish the principal sentence before introducing the subordinate clause.

2. Thus, in the example in § 302, 2, above, it would be wrong to insert the last clause (baß... wiirben) within the preceding clause on which it depends, thus:

Beil er mir, daß feine Geschäfte beendigt fein wurden, geschrieben batte.

3. Similarly the following construction would make the complex sentence quite unintelligible:

Die Gewohnheit muß die Fertigkeit eine Sache ohne über die Regel zu benten zu thun berleihen.

The observance of the above rule will require the clauses of this sentence to be arranged as follows:

Die Gewohnheit muß die Fertigkeit verleihen, eine Sache zu thun, ohne über die Regel nachzubenken, Habit (practice) must bestow the readiness of doing a thing without reflecting upon the rule.

4. In the following sentence, again, the isolation of the separable prefix is very objectionable:

heiter ging die Sonne an jenem Morgen, an dem wir abreisten, auf, The sun rose cheerfully on that morning on which we set out.

The prefix auf should be inserted after Morgen.

304. Appositive Clauses, must, however, stand immediately after the particular part of the sentence to which they refer, as:

Die Priesterin, von ihrer Göttin selbst gewählet und geheiligt, spricht zu dir. The priestess, chosen and consecrated by the goddess herself, speaks to thee.

Bas tonnen wir, ein ichmaches Bolf ber hirten, gegen Albrechts heere? What can we, a weak people of herdsmen, [do] against Albert's hosts?

3ch have thin diesen Fehler, daß er jede Handlung misdeute, shou oft vorgeworsen, I have often reproached him with this mistake of misinterpreting every action.

3d founte die Frage, ob mir famen, nicht beantworten, I could not answer the question, whether we were coming.

305. Relative Clauses must immediately follow the antecedent:

(a) When the latter (whether subject or not) precedes the verb of a principal sentence, as:

Der Mann, welcher gestern hier war, ist heute wiedergesommen, The man who was here yesterday came again to-day.

Den Mann, welcher gestern hier war, habe ich nicht gesaunt, I did not know the man, who was here yesterday.

Note. — If the antecedent does not precede the verb, the relative is introduced after the conclusion of the principal sentence, except as under (b), below, thus:

heute ift ber Mann wiebergetommen, welcher u. f. w. 3ch habe ben Mann nicht getannt, welcher u. f. w.

(b) When their separation from the antecedent would cause ambiguity, as:

Gestern habe ich meinen Freund, den ich sange nicht gesehen, bei meinem Bruder getrossen, Vesterday I met at my brother's my friend, whom I had not seen for a long time.

Norm. - If the relative clause were placed after the conclusion of the principal sentence, the relative ben might refer to Bruber.

- **306.** A Subordinate or Dependent Clause (with the exceptions specified in Remarks 3, 4, below) may also, whether subjective, objective or adverbial, *precede* the principal clause, in which case it throws the Subject after the Verb, as:
 - Db ich tommen fann (subjective clause), ist zweiselhaft, It is doubtful whether I can come.
 - Ber gar zu viel bedenst (subjective clause); wird wenig seisten, He who considers too much, will accomplish little.
 - Daß er mir nicht geschrieben (subjective clause), macht mir Sorgen, [The fact] that he has not written to me, causes me anxiety.
 - Ob ich merde fommen fonnen (objective clause), weiß ich nicht, I do not know, whether I shall be able to come.
 - Daß er frant ift (objective clause), habe ich gestern gehört, I heard yesterday, that he was ill.
 - Da ich frant war (adverbial clause), tonnte ich nicht tommen, As I was sick, I could not come.

REMARKS.— 1. Such a clause takes the place of a subject, object or predicate, as the case may be, before the verb (compare §§ 293, b, Rem. 4; 294, Rem. 2; 295, Rem.).

- 2. Adverbial clauses in this way bring expressions of time, place, etc., but more especially those of *cause*, nearer to the verb, which is the part of the sentence they modify.
- 3. Only subjective relative clauses with the compound relative wer, was, can stand at the head of a sentence, as in the second example above.

Note. —The relative ber is sometimes used instead of mer as compound relative (including both relative and antecedent), especially in the plural, as:

- Die sich zu hart vergangen hatten, flohen aus dem Lande. (Schiller); i. e., Diesenigen, welche u. s. w.; or: Wer sich zu hart vergangen hatte (sing.), floh u. s. w., Those who had committed too great offences, sled from the country.
- 4. Clauses which modify not the whole sentence but a particular member, cannot stand at the head of the sentence, but stand either immediately after the word to which they refer, or after the conclusion of the sentence (compare § 297, above). This remark applies especially to relative clauses (but see Rem. 3, above, and Note), and to comparative clauses with als, as:
 - Sein Unglud war größer, als er es ertragen fonnte (or: 3u groß, als daß er es u. f. w.), His misfortune was greater than he could bear.

Note. - Comparative clauses with wie may precede, as:

Bie im Laub ber Bogel fingt,

- Dag fich jeber gutlich thun,

As the bird sings amid the boughs, let every one enjoy himself. (SCHILLER).

EXERCISE G.

1. It seems impossible, says a great botanist, to give, in the present state of our knowledge, a complete definition of what (= that which) is to be considered as an animal, in contradistinction to what one must regard as a plant. 2. The good king Robert Bruce, who was always watchful and prudent, had received information (Runde) of (von) the intention of these men to attack him suddenly. 3. Bruce caused his men to lie down to take some sleep at a place about half a mile distant from the river (see § 290, c, i), while he himself, with two attendants, went down to watch the ford through which the enemy must pass, before they came to the place where king Robert's men were lying. 4. "If I go back," thought the king, "to call my men to (the) arms, these men will get (fommen) through the ford unhindered; and that would be [a] pity, since it is a place so advantageous for defence." 5. In the confusion, five or six of the enemy were slain, or, having been borne down by the stream, [were] drowned. 6. With the natural feeling of a young author (Schriftsteller), he had ventured (it) to go (fid) aufmachen) secretly and witness (beimohnen + dat.) the first representation of his tragedy at Mannheim. 7. He resolved to be free, at whatever risk (auf jede Gefahr hin); to abandon (= give up) advantages which he could not buy (erfaufen) at such a price; to quit his stepdame (ftiefmütterlich, adj.) home, and go forth (fortmanbern). though friendless and alone, to seek his fortune in the great market (3ahrmartt) of life. 8. Having well examined the place (Ort), the soldier reported his discovery to Marius, and urgently (bringend) advised (anraten + dat.) him, to make an attack upon the fort from that side where he had climbed up, offering (fid) erbieten) to lead (= show) the way. 9. He ordered his men to advance against the wall with their shields held together in the manner which the Romans named 'testudo' or tortoise (Schildfröte). 10. His mother was present on (bei) this joyous occasion. and she produced (= showed) a paper of (= with) poison, which, as she said, she meant to have given her son in his liquor (Getrant, acc.) rather than that he should submit (himself) to personal disgrace.

PART THIRD.

WORD-FORMATION. - HISTORICAL SKETCH.

LESSON LL

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

- 307. 1. New words are formed in a language by two more or less distinct processes: Derivation and Composition.
- 2. Derivation is of four kinds, viz.: 1. without change; 2. by internal change; 3. by Suffixes; 4. by Prefixes.

Note. — All grammatical terminations (inflexions) are really suffixes, but these are not considered under the present head.

308. A. WITHOUT CHANGE.

Verbs are derived from substantives, adjectives, adverbs, etc., by the simple addition of the endings of conjugation, as: Arbeit, labout; atbeit-en, to labour — Gras, grass; gras-en, to graze — trocken, dry; trocke-en, to dry — näher, near (compar.); nähern, to approach — gegen, against; begegn-en, to meet.

Note. — In many of these derivatives, and in most of those from adjectives, the vowel has Umlaut, as: Pflug; pflügsen, plough — Hammer; hämmersn, hammer — ftart, strong; stärtsen, strengthen — tot, dead; tötsen, kill — offen, open; öffusen, open — empot, up; empörsen, excite.

309. B. BY INTERNAL CHANGE.

Derivative Verbs. - Verbs are derived from other Verbs:

(a) By change (generally Umlaut) of the root or Stem Vowel, forming causative verbs, which are always transitive and weak, as: fallen, fall; fällen, fell (cause to fall) — trinten, drink; tränten, make to drink (drench) — siten, sit; seten, set — liegen, lie; segen, lay — sahren, fare, proceed; führen, lead, cause to proceed.

(b) By change of consonant, with or without vowel-change, as: stehen, stand; stellen, cause to stand, set or place upright — biegen, bend; buden, bow — neigen, incline; niden, nod (incline the head) — wachen, awake; weden, arouse (cause to awake).

NOTE. — Many weak verbs and nearly all strong verbs are primitive; but derivative verbs are generally weak.

310. Derivative Substantives.—These are derived from Verbs by internal vowel-change without suffix, and are mostly masculine, as: binden, bind; Band, bond, volume; Bund, union—fitten, sit; Sat, stake (thing set or laid down), etc.— siehen, draw; Jug, trait, etc.—treten, tread; Eritt, step.

Note. — Observe that in both the Verbs and Substantives above occasional consonant changes also occur.

C. BY SUFFIXES.

311.

VERB SUFFIXES.

- 1. eln forms derivatives from other verbs, as well as from substantives and adjectives, usually with Umlaut, implying diminution or contempt, as: ladjen, laugh; lädjeln, smile Runst, art; fünsteln, affect (artfully) fromm, pious; stömmeln, affect piety.
- 2. *ern from verbs, substantives and adjectives (sometimes with Umtaut), as: folgen, follow; folgern, infer Schlaf, sleep; foliäfern, feel sleepy arg, bad; ärgern, vex.
- 3. sieren, mostly from foreign stems, without Umlaut, as: maricipsieren, march regsieren, reign studsieren, study. Also from German roots, by analogy, as: buchstabsieren, spell.

312. Substantive Suffixes.

- 1. **(-ft, *ft), *d, *de (usually feminine) from verbs, usually with vowelchange, as: beug-en, bend; Buch-t, bay (bight) fahr-en, drive; Fahr-t, drive— trag-en, wear; Trach-t, costume— tomm-en, come; Kun-f-t, coming (Antunft, arrival; Zutunft, future) fönnen, can; Kun-f-t, art— brennen, burn; Bran-d, conflagration— fennen, know; Kun-de, information.
- 2., 3. shen and sein form diminutives, usually with Umlaut, as: House, house; Handle, little house, cot Mann, man; Mann-lein, manikin.

Notes. - 1. schen (Engl. -kin), originally Low (North) German only, is now more common than slein, which however is preferred after gutturals, as: Ringslein, Buchslein.

2. Sometimes a double diminutive suffix, et + hen, is used after gutturals, as: Rings elschen, Buchselschen.

- 4. ee forms a very large number of feminine derivatives from verbs, often with vowel-change; also, usually with Umlaut, from adjectives, as: fliegen, fly; Fliegee, fly (insect) geben, give; Gabe, gift sprechen, speak; Sprachee, speech, language gut, good; Gütee, goodness tren, faithful; Trenee, fidelity.
- 5. et (from Fr. -ie) forms feminine derivatives, with accent on the suffix:
 - (a) From verbs in sein, sern, as: schmeicheln, flatter; Schmeichelsei, flattery zaubern, enchant; Zaubersei.
 - (b) From substantives, indicating state, occupation, etc., most frequently from those in ecr, as: Jager, hunter; Jäger-ei, hunting
 Druder, printer; Druder-ei, printing (-trade or -office).

Notes. - 1. It sometimes implies contempt, as: Rinberset, childish nonsense.

- 2. By analogy with the formations from stems in ser, there has arisen the double suffix serri, added to other stems, as: Stlavserei, slavery (from Stlave).
- 6. et, from verbs (sometimes with vowel-change), generally indicating the instrument, as: beden, cover; Ded el, lid fliegen, fly; Flügeel, wing schließen, lock; Schlüssel, key ziehen, pull; Zügel, rein, bridle.
- 7. en, from verbs, including all infinitives, as well as others, e. g.: graben, dig; Graben (masc.), ditch schaden, hurt; Schaden (masc.), mjury.
- 8. eer, often with Umlaut, indicating the actor, chiefly from verbs, but also from substantives, as: bacen, bake; Bücer, baker maten, paint; Maler, paint-er tangen, dance; Tänger, danc-er Garten, garden; Gärtu-er, garden-er Schaf, sheep; Schäfer, shepherd.

Note. — Some derivatives from substantives insert n, as: Bilb=n=er, sculptor (from Bilb) — Glöd=n=er, bell-ringer (from Glode) — Reb=n=er, orator (from Rebe).

- 9. *heit (Engl. -head, -hood) forms feminine abstracts from substantives and adjectives, as: Gott-heit, God-head Rind-heit, child-hood Blind-heit, blindness Frei-heit, freedom.
- 10. steit replaces sheit after adjectives in sel, ser, sig, slich, sbar, sam, as: Eitelsteit, vanity Bittersteit, bitterness Billigsteit, cheappess Heimlichsteit, secrecy Brauchbarsteit, usefulness Sparsamsteit, economy.

Norn. — Some derivatives from adjectives insert sigs before steit, especially from those in shaft and slos, as: Silfsigsteit, sweetness — Stanbhaftsigsteit, steadfastness — Treus lofsigsteit, unfaithfulness.

- 11. in (compare § 89, 2, Note) forms feminine appellatives from masculine substantives, usually with Umlaut (always so from monosyllables), as: Graf, count; Gräfin, countess Freund, friend; Freund-in, (female) friend Gärtner, gardener; Gärtner-in, gardener's wife.
- 12. -ling forms masculine diminutives (sometimes with "Umlaut) from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: lehren, teach; Lehr-ling, apprentice Flucht, flight; Flücht-ling, fugitive fremd, strange; Fremd-ling, stranger jung, young; Jüng-ling, youth.
- 13. *nis (Engl. -ness) forms abstracts from verbs; also from a few adjectives, usually with Umlaut, as: begraben, bury; Begrabenis, funeral hinder, hinder; hinder-nis, obstacle gefangen, captive; Gefangenis, prison finster, dark; Finster-nis, darkness.
- 14. sal, sel form neuter abstracts, chiefly from verbs, but also from a few substantives and adjectives, as: schicken, send; Schick-sal, fate—raten, guess; Rät-sel, riddle— Wühe, trouble; Müh-sal, fatigue—trübe, sad; Trüb-sal, tribulation.
- 15. sichaft (Engl.-ship, -scape) forms feminine abstracts from verbs and adjectives, as: Bauber-scape, wandering Freund-scape, friendship Land-scape, land-scape Gemein-scape, community Eigenscape, peculiarity; also some collectives, as: Briester-scape, priesthood; Gesell-scape, society.
- 16. -tum (Engl. -dom) forms (generally neuter) abstracts from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: Bachs-tum, growth Eigen-tum, property Reich-tum (masc.), wealth Rönig-tum, royalty (king-dom).
- 17. -ung (= Engl. -ing in verbal nouns) forms a large number of feminine abstracts, chiefly from verbs, as: Belehr-ung, instruction Ber-geb-ung, forgiveness.
- 18. The suffixes send, sig, sint, sing are only found after stems which no longer have an independent existence, as: Absend, Dutsend, Effsig, Rafsig, Habeicht (hawk).

313. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES.

- 1. -bar (connected with baren, 'bear') from verbs (= Engl. -able) and substantives, also (rarely) from adjectives, as: eg-bar, eat-able frucht-bar, fruitful furcht-bar, frightful offen-bar, evident.
- 2. sen, sern form adjectives denoting material or kind from substantives, as : golbsen, golden bleisern, leaden filbersn, silver hölzsern, wooden.

NOTE. - Gifern, 'iron,' from Gifen, is anomalous.

3. -haft (connected with haben, 'have') forms adjectives, denoting the quality of the primitive, chiefly from substantives (also from a few verbs and adjectives), as: find-haft, sinful — tugend-haft, virtuous — wohn-haft, resident — bos-haft, malicious — wahr-haft, true.

Note. — The suffix sig is often added to adjectives in shaft, as: wahrhaftsig (compare also § 312, 10, Note, above).

- 4. -int sometimes replaces -in (see below) after names of materials, as born-int, thorny -- stein-int, stony; also in tör-int, foolish.
- 5. *ig (= Engl. -y, as in might-y, etc.) forms a very numerous class of adjectives, usually with Umlaut, from verbs, substantives and particles, and from other adjectives (including the possessive pronouns, see § 119, c), as: uadjgict-ig, yielding günft-ig, favourable mädjt-ig, might-y fdjulb-ig, guilt-y güt-ig, kind völl-ig, complete heut-ig, of to-day vor-ig, former.

NOTE. - For sig before steit, see § 312, 10, Note; for sig after shaft, see 3, above.

- 6. sift (= Engl. -ish) forms adjectives:
 - (a) From proper names, denoting origin, as: luther sift, Lutheran preuse ift. Prussian.
 - (b) From substantives, as: dieb-iff, thiev-ish himml-iff, heavenly; sometimes also with depreciatory sense, as in English, e. g.: find-iff, child-ish weib-iff, woman-ish (compare find-liff, child-like weib-liff, woman-ly).
 - (c) From foreign words (= Lat.-icus; Engl.-ic,-ical), as: hiftor-ifth, histor-ical log-ifth, log-ical.
- 7. =lei forms variative numerals; see § 182, (c).
- 8. ·[if) (Engl. -like, -ly) forms numerous adjectives from verbs (with active or passive sense), substantives (usually with Umlaut) and other adjectives (generally with diminutive meaning, like Eng. -ish), as: erfreuting, delightful schöd-lig, injurious begreif-lig, intelligible glaublig, credible verächt-lig, contemptible jähr-lig, year-ly männ-lig, man-ly untür-lig, natural röt-lig, redd-ish läng-lig, long-ish.
- 9. fam (Engl. -some) from verbs and substantives (also from a few adjectives), as: aufmerf-sam, attentive heil-sam, whole-some surditssam, timid ein-sam, lone-some.

D. BY PREFIXES.

314. VERB PREFIXES.

The Verb Prefixes coming under the head of derivation are those which are always inseparable, viz: be, ent. or emp., er., ge, miß., ter, ger. Their various meanings are given below.

- 1. be= (connected with the prep. bei) is intensive, and
 - (a) forms transitive verbs from intransitive (its most frequent use), as: fallen, fall; be-fallen, be-fall — gehen, go; be-gehen, commit (a crime, etc.) — flagen, mourn; be-flagen, mourn for;
 - (b) it forms verbs from substantives and adjectives, with the meaning 'provide with,' 'make,' as: be-freunden, be-friend be-stär-fen, make strong, strengthen.
- 2. ent: (emp: before an f, akin to ont:, as in antworten) corresponds frequently to the (Latin) prefixes dis-, de- in English words and denotes
 - (a) 'in return,' as: emp=fangen, receive; emp=fehlen, recommend;
 - (b) 'contrary,' 'against,' 'away from,' having privative force, from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: ent-binden, relieve—ent-beden, dis-cover—ent-gehen, ent-lausen, get away, escape;
 - (c) transition, origin, as: ent-schlafen, fall asleep ent-stehen, arise, originate.
 - 3. er= (Engl. a-, as in a-rouse, a-rise, etc.) denotes:
 - (a) 'out from,' 'upwards,' as: er=heben, raise er=weden, a-waken;
 - (b) transition (compare ents, above), as: ersbeen, begin to tremble
 ersblühen, come out in blossom ersblühen, grow cold;
 - (c) acquisition or attainment by the action of the verb (a very common use), as: er-bettein, get by begging er-liften, get by cunning;
 - (d) accomplishment, as: ersschießen, shoot (kill by shooting) erstrinten, be drowned.
- 4. ges often has no perceptible force, as in: gesnesen, recover (from illness) gesnießen, enjoy; but commonly it is frequentative and intensive, as: gesbieten, command gesbenten, remember, mention gesloben, vow.
- 5. miß- (Engl. mis-) has negative force, sometimes with the notion of falsehood or failure, as: miß-achten, despise miß-fallen, displease miß-glüden, fail miß-verstehen, mis-understand.
- 6. bets (Engl. for- in for-get, for-give) has the general meaning of 'away' and often, like ents, answers to a dis- or de- in English.
 - (a) It is intensive, and expresses excess, etc., as: ber-blühen, fade away ber-tommen, go to ruin ber-zagen, despair.
 - (b) It denotes a mistake, etc., as: per-führen, lead astray perlaufen (refl.), lose one's way — per-legen, mis-lay.
 - (c) It is privative (its most frequent use), and denotes loss, parting, waste, dissolution, as: ber-gehen, pass away ber-triusen, waste in drink ber-spielen, gamble away.

- (d) It forms verbs from substantives and adjectives denoting a change or transition into the state of the primitive, as: per-armen, grow poor per-golden, gild.
- 7. ger- denotes separation, destruction, 'to pieces,' as: ger-brechen, break to pieces ger-gliebern, dis-member.

315. Substantive Prefixes.

- 1. Erg- (= Engl. arch-), as: Erg-bifchof, arch-bishop Erg-feiub, arch-enemy.
 - . Ge forms usually neuter derivatives:
 - (a) Collectives, from substantives, as: Ge-birge, mountain-range
 Gesieder, feathers Ge-sträud, bushes.
 - (b) Associatives (of persons), from verbs and substantives, as:

 Ge-spiele, playmate Ge-schwister, brothers and sisters (of a family) Ge-selle, fellow.
 - (c) Frequentative or intensive abstracts, also from verbs, as:

 Gespräd, conversation Gesssüfter, (continued) whispering —
 Gestöse, uproar.

NOTE. - The substantives O-lud, O-laube contain this prefix.

- 3. Miß=, with the same force as in verbs, e.g.: Miffe=that, misdeed Mifi=nunft, envy.
- 4. 11n= is negative prefix, as in English, e.g.: 11n-glüd, bad luck—11n=recht, wrong—11n=finn, nonsense. It also expresses something monstrous or unnatural, as: 11n=that, unnatural or monstrous deed—11n=menfth, inhuman monster.
 - 5. Ur= (akin to er=, see above) denotes
 - (er-lauben), furlough, leave of absence;
 - (b) primitiveness, as: Ur-facto (original thing), cause Ur-menfc, primitive man Ur-malo, primeval forest.

REMARK. — Substantives with Verb Prefixes (see § 314, above) are derived from verb-stems having these prefixes (e. g.: Ub-zug, Be-zug, from abziehen, beziehen), except those with ge- (see 2, above).

316. ADJECTIVE PREFIXES.

The Prefixes of Adjectives are the same as those of substantives, and with the same force, except ges, which forms:

- (a) Past Participles, some without corresponding verbs, as: ge-fittet, well-behaved ge-fitifelt, booted;
- (b) adjectives from verb-stems, as: ge-nehm, agreeable, acceptable

 ge-wiß (from wissen, 'know'), certain;
- (c) from other Adjectives, as: gc=recht, just ge=treu, faithful.

317. OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

Pronouns, Numerals, Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections are for the most part either primitive or compound; for Derivative Numerals and Numeral Adverbs, see §§ 182, 183; for the derivation of other Adverbs, § 189.

II. COMPOSITION.

- 318. 1. A compound word is one made up of two or more words, each of which maintains its separate form and meaning.
- 2. In genuine compounds, the last component only is inflected; but there are also spurious compounds, in which one or more of the preceding components takes an inflectional ending (see § 319, 1, Notes 2, 3, below), without liability to further variation.

NOTE.—In a few words arbitrarily written as compounds, both elements are inflected; see § 319, 2, Note, below.

3. Compounds are made with much greater freedom in German than in English. Words that in English are written separately, are often written as one word in German, forming compounds of a length and complexity unknown in the English language, as: Feuerversicherungsgesellschaft, fire insurance company — Lustrührenschundlucht, bronchial consumption.

Note. — These long compounds are generally broken up by one or more hyphens as: Fenerversicherungs-Gesellicast, a capital letter usually following the hyphen.

- 4. When the last component is common to several successive compounds, it is expressed with the last component word only, the omission being indicated in the other cases by a hyphen, as: Apfels, Kirfchs und Birnbäume, apple, cherry and pear-trees eine freudens und nutslose Aufgabe, a joyless and profitless task.
- 5. The Composition of Verbs is fully treated of in Less. XXXVI, and Supp. Less. E.; that of Numerals in Less. XXVIII, and also in §§ 182, 183. The compound Prepositions will be found in Less. XXXVIII, and Conjunctions in Less. XL, and require no special explanation.

319. Composition of Substantives.

The last element is (with exceptions noted under 5, below) a Substantive, which determines the gender, and is alone inflected; the first element generally having the principal accent. The varieties of Compound Substantives are:

1. Substantive + Substantive, the first element being in apposition or in some case or other relation (usually genitive) to the other, as below, as: Himmel-reid), kingdom of heaven (apposition) — Aug-apfel, eye-ball — Landes-herr, sovereign — Freuden-fest, joyous festival — Kinder-stude, nursery (genitive elation) — Tinten-sas, inkstand (stand for ink) — Tanz-stunde, dancinglesson (dative relation) — Ratten-sanger, rat-catcher — Beg-weiser, guide, finger-post (accusative relation) — Ost-wind, East wind — Freuden-thräue, tear of joy (origin) — Fuß-tritt, kick (instrument) — Dach-senster, window in the roof (place) — Tage-weit, day's work.

Notes. — 1. Primary Compounds are those composed of stem + substantives, either with the stem-suffix et, as: Lagewert; or without suffix, as: Hand-wert, trade — Jagds horn, hunting-horn.

- 2. Secondary Compounds are made up with a Genitive case, Singular or Plural; if singular, the first component takes s\(\textit{8}\) after strong masculines and neuters, and s\(\textit{11}\) after weak substantives, whether sing. or plur.; thus: Sountag\(\textit{8}\)stress tleib, sunday-dress Freub\(\textit{11}\)respectively, cry of joy Worter\(\textit{12}\)buth, dictionary.
- 3. The suffix :8 is also added to feminines in :t, :heit, :leit, :lidaft, :ung, and the foreign endings :ion, töt, as: Geburt:8:tag, birthday Freiheit:8:liebe, love of liberty Mäßigleit:8:verein, temperance society Religion:8:trieg, religious war Univer: sität:8:gebäube, University building.
- 2. Qualifying Adjective + Substantive, as: Ebel-stein, precious stone, jewel Jungfrau, virgin Hoch-zeit, wedding (high time) Boll-mond, full-moon.

Note. — In a few spurious compounds of this kind, the adjective is declined, as: ein Hoherspriester, high-priest; der Hohersiester — die Lange-weile, tedium, ennui; Gen. der Langenweile.

- 3. Adverb or Preposition + Substantive, usually from compound verbs, but not always, as: Herefunst, origin Bohlethat, benefit Ansgahl, number Beisspiel, example Hinterslift, cunning Übersmacht, superiority.
- 4. Verb-stem + Substantive, sometimes with connecting suffix se, as: Lef-e-buch, Schreib-feder, Sing-vogel.
- 5. Other Compound Substantives. There is a special class of substantive compounds of a character different from those enumerated above, and of various composition, consisting of:

- (a) A limiting word (not a subst.) + Substantive, as: Blinde-luh, blind man's buff Ruhl-topf, bald-head Groß-manl, boaster Lang-bein, long-legged person Schrei-hale, bawler Biersed, square.
- (b) Limiting word + Adjective, as: der Nimmer-satt, the glutton das Immer-grün, the evergreen.

NOTE. — These compounds are masculine when referring to persons, otherwise neuter. The same rule holds good for the compounds under (c), below.

(c) Verb + Object, limiting word or phrase, as: Der Tanges nichts, the good-for-nothing — Der Springsinssssells, the romp — Der Störensfried, the kill-joy — Das Stellsdichsein, the rendezvous.

320. Composition of Adjectives.

Compound Adjectives consist of an Adjective preceded by a limiting word, viz.:

- 1. Adjective + Adjective, as: toub-flumm, deaf-mute buntel-blou, dark-blue rot-bödfig, red-cheeked.
 - 2. Substantive + Adjective:
 - (a) with connecting inflexional suffix (compare § 319, 1, Note 2, above), as: liebes-frant, love-sick gebanten-voll, pensive—hoffnungs-108, hopeless;
 - (b) without suffix, as: liebesvoll, affectionate -- huld-reich, gracious -- frendesleer, joyless.

Notes. — 1. The Adjectives 108, reith, boll are of such constant occurrence as to have almost acquired the character of suffixes.

- 2. In some of these compounds, the substantive expresses comparison, or has intensive force, as: freibeweiß, white as chalk feberleicht, light as a feather felsensest, firm as a rock.
- 3. Verb + Adjective, as: wiß-begierig, eager for knowledge mert-würdig, remarkable (noteworthy).

NOTE. — In Compound Adjectives like bankensemert, 'welcome' ('thankworthy'), the first element is the infinitive used as a Substantive.

4. Adverd or Preposition + Adjective, as: hochegeboren, high-born - wohlefeil, cheap -- unterethan, subject - übereklug, overwise.

321. Composition of Adverss.

Adverbs are compounded of various parts of speech:

1. With Nouns (mostly in the Genitive) affixed to other parts of speech, as: Rall: gleidsfalls, likewise; jebensfalls, in any case —

Wasse: einiger-maßen, in some degree — Seite: einer-seits . . . anderseits, on the one hand . . . on the other hand — Teil: meisten-teils, chiefly;
meines-teils, on my part — Beg: gerades-wegs, straightway; teineswegs, by no means — Beile: einste weisen, mittler-weile, meanwhile, meantime — Beise: glicklicher-weise, fortunately; treuz-weise, crosswise;
thorichter-weise, foolishly.

Note. — The mass. and neuter genitive-inflection :8, from its frequent use in adverbial genitives, has become an adverbial suffix, and is sometimes attached to fem. substs., as: bie Nacht. adv. nachts, by night. So also has the suffix :warts, as: himmel-warts, heavenward — norb-warts, northward.

- 2. With Prepositions (or original Adverbs) prefixed or suffixed to other parts of speech, as: zu-g(eid), at the same time gerade-zu, straight on auf-warts, upward; berg-auf, uphill unter-wegs, on the way; berg-unter, downhill heutzu-tage, nowadays jahre-lang, for years.
- 3. With Pronouns (or Stems originally Pronominal) compounded with each other, as: wohin? whither? dahin, dorthin, thither woher? whence? daher, dorthin, thence, etc.

For Numeral Adverbs, see § 182.

LESSON LII.

HISTORICAL SKETCH. - GRIMM'S LAW. - UMLAUT, etc.

322. RELATION BETWEEN GERMAN AND ENGLISH.

1. A comparison of German words and forms with their English equivalents will serve to show that a very large number of both words and grammatical forms are common to both languages. Though rarely absolutely identical in form, the resemblances are both so close and so numerous that they cannot be the result of mere borrowing on the part of either language from the other, but must imply relationship, or, in other words, a descent from a common source, a common origin.

English and German are therefore Modern Dialects of one and the same original language.

2. This original language is no longer extant, either as a spoken or as a written language. There are, however, other languages — some still spoken, some known to us only as written — which were once also

dialects of this common ancestor, or Grundsprache, as German philologists call it. This group or sub-family of languages is called the GER-MANIC or TEUTONIC, the common source or Grundsprage of which was itself a dialect of a larger family, all of whose members were dialects of, and derived from, one common primitive source (Uriprache). This family is called the Indo-Germanic, Indo-European or Aryan family, and includes most European and several Asiatic languages.

- 3. The divisions of this great family, with the chief representatives, ancient (written) and modern (spoken), of each, are as follows, beginning from the East:
 - (a) INDIC ancient: Sanskrit, etc.; modern: Hindustani, etc.
 - (b) PERSIC -Zend, etc.: Persian, etc.
 - (c) GREEK ancient and modern.
 - (d) ITALIC ancient: Latin, etc.; modern: the Romance languages (Italian, French, Spanish, etc.).
 - (e) LITHUANIC.
 - (f) SLAVONIC Russian, Polish, Bohemian, etc.
 - (F) GERMANIC see below.

THE GERMANIC LANGUAGES.

The Germanic or Teutonic group of languages may be classified as follows:

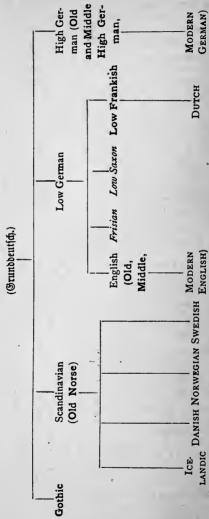
- 1. GOTHIC or EAST GERMANIC, once spoken by the Goths of Mæsia, on the Danube, represented only by a translation of portions of the Bible, made by Ulfilas, Bishop of the Goths, in the 4th century, A. D.
- 2. SCANDINAVIAN OF NORTH GERMANIC ancient: Old Norse: modern: Icelandic, Danish (Norwegian), Swedish.
- 3. Low German or West Germanic ancient: Frisian, Low Saxon. Low Frankish, Old English (Anglo-Saxon), Middle English; modern: Dutch, ENGLISH.

NOTE. - The modern representatives of the other Low German languages are mere dialects - known as Plattdeutsch (i. e., Flat German), the present (High) German literary language having displaced them.

4. HIGH GERMAN OF SOUTH GERMANIC, including the (no longer spoken) Old and Middle High German, and the GERMAN, as spoken and written at the present day.

The following diagram will serve further to illustrate the relationships of the German language:

PRIMITIVE TEUTONIC.



Notes. -- 1. The languages printed in heavy tye are extinct; those in Indics are now only represented by dialects; those in Capt-TALS are languages (not mere dialects) of the present day. 2. High-German includes also Middle German; it is now, and has been since the 16th century, the only literary language of the German empire, extending also into parts of Austria and Switzerland.

324. HISTORY OF HIGH GERMAN.

The High German (including the Middle German) branch of the Germanic sub-family has passed through three stages, as follows:

1. Old High German, to the 12th century. Its literature is chiefly ecclesiastical—its principal authors being monks, such as Otfrid, the Frank, author of a rhyming harmony of the Gospels, and Notker, of St. Gallen in Switzerland. Each author wrote in his own dialect.

NOTE. — The chief characteristic of this Old High German, which distinguishes it from the subsequent stages, is the comparative fulness and distinctiveness of its grammatical forms. Thus Eugen, Söhnen, Suben (dat. pl.) = O. H. G. tag-um, sun-um, geb-ôm respectively; and the pres indic. of nëman (nepmen) is as follows: nim-u, nim-is, nim-it, nëmam-(es), nëm-at, nëm-ant. It also has a fifth case (the Instrumental).

2. Middle High German (A. D. 1100—1500). Literature during this period passed from the hands of the clergy into those of the nobles; hence its courtly character. The branches of poetic composition therein represented were Epic and Lyric Poetry, the former comprising not only the great National Epics of the 'Nibelungenlied' and 'Gudrun,' but also the Courtly or Art Epics of Chivalry, such as Wolfram von Eschenbach's 'Parcival' and Gottfried von Straszburg's 'Tristan und Isolde'; the latter comprising the productions of the 'Minnesanger,' of whom the greatest was Walther von der Vogelweide. The Dialect of Suabia (which included Baden, Würtemberg and parts of Bavaria) became the leading literary language.

Note. — Middle is distinguished from Old High German chiefly by the loss of the full vowels of inflectional syllables, which were for the most part changed into e. Thus the O. H. G. datives pl. tag-um, geb-om are in Mid. H. G. tag-en, geb-en; and the pres. indic. of nëmen is: nim-e, nim-est, nim-et, nëm-en, nëm-et, nëm-ent. It is further distinguished from O. H. G. by the spread of the Umlaut (see § 326, below), which in the former is confined to the vowel a, to the vowels o and u also; and from both O. H. G. and Modern German by the large number of its diphthongal sounds (ai, ei, oi, öi, au, ou, öu, eu, ia, ie, io, iu; ua, ue, iie, uo), the greater number of which are unknown in both the preceding and the later stage of the language.

3. New or Modern High German, from 1500 to the present day, forming, since before the beginning of the 16th century, the standard literary language of all German-speaking people. Its basis is Doctor Martin Luther's translation of the Bible (1522—34), in which he adopted the "Ranzleisprache" or official court language particularly of the Duchy of Saxony, as being, in his own words, "die gemeine deutsche Sprache, welcher nachsolgen alle Fürsten und Könige in ganz Deutsche land."

Note. — The chief characteristic which distinguishes Modern (New) High German from Middle High German is the lengthening of all stem-vowels before a single consonant. Thus fagen, sprach, soben, all have the stem-vowel long in Modern German, but short in Middle High German. To this may be added the use of the letter $\mathfrak h$ to mark a preceding long vowel, as in nehmen, M. H. G. nemen (with short e); the change of $\mathfrak f$ into $\mathfrak f$ before $\mathfrak l$, $\mathfrak n$ as: Schlaf, Schnee, M. H. G. slåf, snê; and that of the long vowels $\mathfrak l$, $\mathfrak l$, into the diphthongs $\mathfrak e\mathfrak l$, au respectively, as: mein, bein, brei, Meib, Maus, Saus, Saut, Laut, M. H. G. min, din, dri, wib, mûs, hûs, hût, lût.

325. GRIMM'S LAW OF Lautberichiebung.

- 1. The law of the progression or shifting of mutes, Germ. **Lauf- verifyichung**, also called Grimm's Law after its chief discoverer, Jakob
 Grimm, the illustrious grammarian, is one of the most striking features
 of the Germanic languages.
- 2. The Mutes are divided into three classes, according to the organ with which they are uttered, viz.: LINGUALS (or DENTALS): t, th, d; LABIALS: p, ph (f), b; and PALATALS (or GUTTURALS): k (c), ch (h), g. Each of these classes contains a tenuis (or surd), an aspirate or spirant, and a media (or sonant), thus:

	Tenues.	ASPIRATES or Spirants.	MEDIAE.
LINGUALS:	t	th	ď
LABIALS:	P	ph, f	ъ
PALATALS:	k, c	kh, ch (h)	g

3. In the majority of the Germanic languages — Gothic, Scandinavian, Low German (including therefore English) -- as compared with the other members of the Indo-Germanic family (Greek, Latin, etc.; see § 322, 3, above), each of these mutes has undergone one "shifting," or been pushed forward one stage in its own class, the tenues having been changed into aspirates (or more strictly spirants), the aspirates into mediæ, and the mediæ into tenues. In High German alone they have undergone a second "shifting" in the same direction.

NOTE.—The accompanying diagram will serve further to illustrate this process, showing how the mutes observe the following rotation from primitive Indo-Germanic through general Germanic (including English) to High German, viz.: Tenuis, Aspirate, Media; Aspirate, Media, Tenuis; Media, Tenuis, Aspirate.

3. Taking Latin or Greek as representing the first or primitive Indo-Germanic stage, and English as representing the second, or general Germanic stage (the first shifting), the following scheme will show the theoretical working of this law:

K4= 0	LINGUALS.	LABIALS.	PALATALS.
Latin, Greek, etc.:	t, th, d	p, ph, b	k, kh, g
= English, etc.:	th, d, t	ph, b, p	kh, g, k
= (High) German:	d, t, th	b, p, ph	g, k, kh

- 5. The operation of the law is, however, subject to the following general exceptions:
 - (a) p and k were changed in the second shifting, not into aspirates proper, but into the *spirants* f and h (= f) respectively, and these spirants were not subjected to any further change.
 - (b) The lingual aspirate is represented in High German by 3, 8, 11, or 8.
 - (c) The second shifting of media to tenuis took place in High German in the *lingual series* only, except in one dialect (the Alemannian).
 - (d) The aspirate (or spirant) of is never found in Modern German at the beginning of a word.
- 6. Hence the modified scheme below will represent approximately the actual working of the law:

Latin, Greek, etc.: t, th, d p, ph (f), b k, kh (h), g

= English, etc.: th, d, t f, b, p h, g, k

= (High) German: d, t, z, s, ss, sz f, b, f h(d) g, k (d)

Note. — Latin has c, f, and h for k, ph and kh respectively; and the m at the bottom of the last column does not occur at the beginning of words; see 5, (d), above.

EXAMPLES OF Lautverschiebung.

(Note. - Examples from Lat. unless otherwise specified.)

- 1. Linguals: (a) t th d; as: tectum thatch Lad; tenuis thin dünn; tu thou du; tres three drei; frater brother Bruder; (b) th d t, as: thygatêr (Gr.) daughter Lodjter; thyra (Gr.) door Lüre; têr (Gr.) deer Lier; (c) d t z, s, ss, sz, as: domus timber Zimuer; dakr-y (Gr.) tear Zühre; sedere sit fiten; edere eat effen.
- 2. LABIALS: (a) p-f-f, as: pugno—fight—schleu; pedem—foot—Fish; piscis—fish—Fish; (b) ph (Lat. f)—p—b, as: frater—brother—Bruder; fagus—beech—Buche; (c) b—p—f, as: cannahis—hemp—Hans.
- 3. PALATALS: (a) k (Lat. c) h ch (h if initial), as: canis hound Gund; octo eight acht; noc-tem night Nacht; (b) kh (Lat. h) g g, as: hostis guest Gast; hortus garden Garten; (c)

g-k(c) - h (k if initial) as; gelidus -- cold - falt; genu - knee Kuie; jugum - yoke - Joh; frango - break - brehen.

Note. — A further class of exceptions is caused by the fact that the mutes are sometimes protected from change by an adjacent consonant, as: wander—wandern; stone—Stein; haste—Haft; craft—Raft. There are also other deviations from the strict rule too numerous to be mentioned here.

326. UMLAUT.

1. Umlaut is the modification of an accented a, o, u, au into \(\vec{a}\) (e), \(\vec{o}\), \(\vec{u}\), \(\vec{a}\) u respectively, and is caused by the influence of an \(\vec{t}\) or \(\vec{f}\) in the following syllable.

REMARKS.— 1. The vowels a, o, u, with the diphthong au, are guttural or "back" vowels, and approach the sound of the following i, which is a palatal or "front" vowel.

- 2. This i or i appears in Old High German, but has disappeared—with some exceptions, as under (d), (e), (f), below—in Modern German, and even in Middle High German. The following are a few examples of the origin and working of this law:
 - (a) In the plur. of Substantives of the Sohn Model (§ 21), the termination et is in O. H. G. -i, as: G¨afte, O. H. G. gast-i; ℜτα̈fte, O. H. G. krafti.

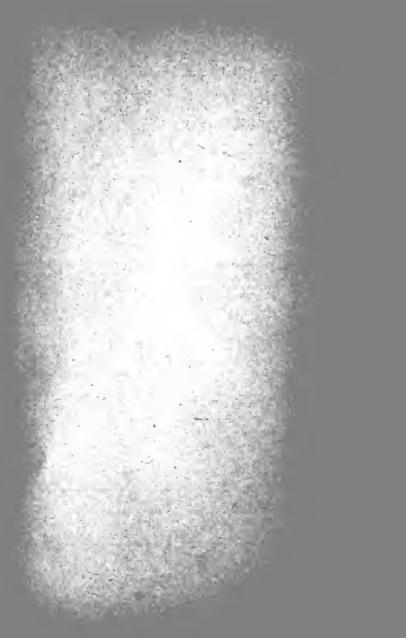
NOTE. — Not all substantives with Umlaut in the plural have this origin; a number of them (e.g., Sohn), which originally belonged to declension-forms without an -i, having followed the analogy of the others.

- (b) In the plur. of the Dorf Model (§ 36), the ending err is in O. H. G. -ir, as: Rülber, O. H. G. kalbir.
- (c) In diminutives in schen (orig. -kîn) and stein (orig. -lîn), as: Rnäbchen, Knäblein, from Knabe.
- (d) In fem. appellatives in sin, as Grafin, from Graf.
- (e) In substs. in =nis, as Begrabnis, from graben.
- (f) In adjs. in sig, as gutig, thatig, from gut, That.
- (g) In the impf. subj. of strong verbs, the final of is in O. H. G. -i, as: gübe, O. H. G. gabi.
- 3. Sometimes the Umlaut of a is represented by c instead of ä, as in Engel (angel), from angil, Gr. angelos; Eltern, parents, from alt.
- 4. Instances of Umlaut occur in English also, as in mouse, mice; goose, geese; old, elder; but they are comparatively rare, and the influence of Umlaut ceased in English at a very early period. In German on the contrary it is still an active principle.









APPENDICES.

A. SUBSTANTIVES OF Maler Model with Umlaut in Plural.

(Lesson V, § 17.)

Masculine. Ader, field Bruber, brother Hammer, hammer Schwager, brother-in-law Bater. father

Boben, bottom, loft Faben, thread Garten, garden Graben, ditch Hafen, harbour Laben, shop Dfen, stove Schaben, damage

Apfel, apple Hammel, wether Hanbel, affair, quarrel Mantel, cloak Rabel, navel Nagel, nail Sattel, saddle Schnabel, beak Bogel, bird

Feminine. Mutter, mother Tochter, daughter

Neuter. Rloster, cloister

Quart, quartz

B. MASCULINE MONOSYLLABLES OF Gund Model (WITHOUT UMLAUT).

(Less. VII, § 22, 1.)

Mal, eel Mar, eagle Arm. arm Borb, board, shelf Born, well Docht, wick Dold, dagger Dom. dome. cathedral Drud, pressure, print Grab, degree Gurt, girth Sag, hedge Sall, sound Salm, blade (of grass), etc. Saud, breath Sorft, eyry Sort, refuge Suf, hoof Sund, dog .

Ralt, lime Rort, cork Arabn, crane Lachs, salmon Lad. lac -Laut, sound Luchs, lynx Mold, salamander Mond, moon Morb, murder Ort, place Bart, park Pfab, path Pfau, peacock Pol, pole Buls, pulse Puntt, point Punich, punch

Dunft, tassel
Schuft, mean fellow
Schuß, shoe
Spat, spar (mineral)
Staar, starling
Stahl, steel
Stoff, material
Sund, strait, sound
Zaft, taffeta
Tag, day
Zaft, tact, bar (in music)
Taff, tale
Than, train-oil

Torf, peat Tu∫ch, flourish of trumpets Boll, inch

Thron, throne

C. FEMININES OF Sohn MODEL.

(All with Umlaut: Less, VII, § 22, 3.)

Angft, anguish	Haut, skin	Nacht, night
Musflucht, evasion	Kluft, cleft	Naht, seam
Art, axe	Rraft, strength	Not, need
Baut, bench	Ruh, cow	Nuß, nut
Brant, bride	Runft, art	Sau, sow
Bruft, breast	Laus, louse	Schnur, string
Fauft, fist	Luft, air	Stabt, town
Frucht, fruit	Lust, desire	Monb, wall
Gaus, goose	Madt, power	Burft, sausage
Gruft, grave	Magb, maid-servant	Bunft, guild
Saub, hand	Maus, mouse	Zusammentunft, meeting

Also those ending in -nis and -fal.

D. IRREGULAR FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

(Less. VII, § 22, 6.)

- 1. Der Raplan, chaplain, pl. Raplane.
- 2. The following foreign substs. with accent on last syll. follow the hund Model: ber Monolog', soliloquy; ber Dialog', dialogue; also those in -sr accented, as: ber humor', humour; ber Major', major.
- 3. The following are mixed (Ohr Model): ber Miga'tor, alligator; ber Damon, demon; ber Ron'sul, consul; bas Stereostop', stereoscope; bas Telestop', telescope; also those from the Lat. in -or unaccented, as: ber Dottor, ber Professor.
- 4. The following are weak or mixed (Ohr Model): ber Abamant', adamant; ber Diaz mant' (or Demant), diamond; ber Magnet', magnet.

E. NEUTER MONOSYLLABLES OF Sund MODEL.

(Less. VII, § 22, 5.)

Beet, flower-bed	Gift, poison	Moos, moss	Schilf, rush
Beil, hatchet	Gleis, rut	net, net	Schrot, shot
Bein, leg	Seft, handle	ÖI, oil	Schwein, pig
Bier, beer	Horn,2 horn	Pferb, horse	Seil, rope
Blech, tin-plate	Зоф, yoke	Pfund, pound	Sieb, sieve
Blei, lead	Rnie, knee	Bult, desk	Spiel, game
Boot,1 boat	Areuz, cross	Recht, right	Stüd, picce
"Brot, bread	Land,2 land	Reh, roe-deer	Tau, cable
Ding,2 thing	Licht,2 light	Reich, empire	Teil, share
Erz, ore	Loos, lot	Riff, reef .	Wehr, weir
Fell, hide	Ma(a)I, mole, mark;	Rog, horse	Werf, work
Fest, festival	time	Salz, salt	Bort,2 word
Fett, fat	Maß, measure	Shaf, sheep	Belt, tent .
Floß,1 raft	Moor, moor	Shiff, ship	Beng, stuff Biel, goal

Also eight in -r:

Hoar, hair Johr, year Boar, pair Tier, animal Heer, army • Weer, sea Rohr, reed Thor, gate

1 Also with Umfaut. 2 See also App. G.*

F. WEAK MASCULINES NOT ENDING IN -e.

(Less. XIV, § 57, 2.)

Bar, bear Bed, fop Raffer, Caffir Pring, prince Baier, Bavarian Befell, fellow Menich, man Span, sparrow Bulgar', Bulgarian Graf, count Mohr. Moor Steinmen, stone-Burid, lad Sageftoly, old bachelor Narr. fool Thor, fool [mason Chrift, Christian Selb, hero Merp, nerve Ungar, Hungarian Fint, finch herr, master Dás. ox Borfahr, ancestor Bommer. Pomeranian Kürft, prince Sirt, herdsman

G. SUBSTANTIVES OF MIXED DECLENSION.

(Less. XV, §§ 61-63.)

(a) Name Model (Masc.).

 Balle(n), beam
 Gloube, faith
 Shabe, injury (pl. Shaben)

 Buchflade, letter of the alphabet
 Hame, name
 Shred(en), fright

 Felf(en), rock
 Name, name
 Tropfc(n), drop

 Friebe, peace
 Same, seed
 Bille, will

Also one neut. : bas Berg, G. bes Bergene.

(b) Rachbar Model.

r. Masculines:

Bauer, peasant Lorbeer, laurel *Rantoffel, slipper *Stiefel, boot Gepatter, godfather Rachbar, neighbour Stachel, sting Better, cousin Kon'sul, consul

2. Neuters: Auge, eye Enbe, end * Also after Maler Model.

(c) Ohr Model.

. Masculines: Maft, mast Sporn, spur Strauß,3 ostrich Mhn, ancestor Pfau,1 peacock (also Sporen) Unterthan,2 subject Forft, forest Cau.1 district Schmers, pain Staat, state Riergt, ornament Sufar,2 hussar See, lake Strohl, beam Rins, interest 2. Neuters: Bett. bed Semb. shirt Ohr, ear

1 Also after Sund Model. 2 Also after Anabe Model.

To these may be added the foreign substantives in App. D. 3 See also App. G.*.

G.* DOUBLE PLURALS WITH DIFFERENT MEANINGS.

(Less. XV, § 64.)

Banbe, ties bas Ranb : Banber, ribbons bie Bant : Banfe, benches

Banten, commercial banks bas Dina : Dinge, things Dinger, creatures

ber Dorn : Dorne or Dorner, thorns Dornett, thorns (collectively) bas Geficht : Befichter, faces Gefichte, visions

bas Sorn: Barner, horns Sorne, kinds of horn Laben, shutters ber Laben : Läben, shops

Lanbe, provinces or districts bas Lanb: Länber, separate countries 1

bas Licht: Lichte, candles Lichter, lights ber Mann: Männer, men Mannen, vassals

ber Monb : Monte, satellites Monben, months (poetic) ber Drt : Örter, (single) places 2 Orte, places (collectively)

bie Gau : Gane, sows Sauen, wild boars

Sträuße, nosegays ber Strauf: Straufe or Straufen, ostriches

bas Tudy: Tücher, cloths

Tuche, kinds of cloth Warte, coherent words bas Bort : Börter, single words

ber Boll: Bölle, tolls Rolle, inches

- 1 For instance bie Länber Europas, the countries of Europe (individually considered); but bie Deutschen Lanbe, the German districts or provinces; bie Nieberlanbe, the Netherlands. Poets use the latter form also in the sense of the former.
- 2 For instance in allen Örtern ber Broving, in all (inhabited) places of the province; but an allen Orten, in all places generally, everywhere.

H. NOUNS (mostly abstract) WHICH FORM THEIR PLURAL BY MEANS OF A DERIVATIVE OR OF A COMPOUND FORM - WHICH ITSELF-IS USED BOTH IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

(Supp. Less. B., § 66, 3, Note.)

Singular. Plural. hie Bauten ber Bau, building (ber Bau, burrow, etc. bie Baue) bie Beftrebungen bas Beftreben, effort ber Betrug, deceit, fraud bie Betrügereien

ber Bund, alliance bie Bunbniffe ber Dant, thanks bie Dantsagungen bas Erbe, inheritance bie Erbichaften ber Friebe, treaty of peace bie Friebensvertrage bie Gemaltthätigfeiten bie Gewalt, force, violence

bie Gunftbezeugungen bie Gunft, favour ber Rummer, affliction, trouble bie Rümmerniffe

bas Lob, praise bie Lobfprliche ber Morb, murder bie Morbthaten ber Mat, counsel, advice bie Ratichläge

Singular.

(ber Rat, councillor ber Raub, robbery ber Segen, blessing

ber Streit, quarrel, dispute ber Tob, death, decease

bas Unalüd, misfortune ber Berbruf, vexation

ber Bant, quarrel

Plural.

bie Rate) bie Räubereien bie Seanungen

bie Streitigfeiten bie Tobesfälle

bie Unglüdsfälle bie Berbrieklichfeiten

bie Bantereien

I. EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULES ON GENDER.

(Less. XVII, XVIII, §\$ 80, 89, 90.)

80. 1. (a) Fem. : bie Mannsperson, male-person. Neut : all diminutives in -chen and -lein.

2. (a) Neut.: bas Beib, woman; bas Menfch, wench; bas Frauenzimmer, woman; and all diminutives in -fen and -lein.

(b) Trees, etc.:

ber Aborn, maple ber Apfel, apple bas Epheu, ivv

bas Geranium, geranium

ber Robl, cabbage ber Roblrabi, Brussels-spouts bas Rorn, grain

ber Lauch, leek ber Lorbeer, laurel ber Mais, maize

bas Moos, moss ber Roggen, rve ber Spargel, asparagus

ber Spingt, spinach ber Tabat, tobacco

ber Beigen, wheat

ber Safer, oats ber Sanf, hemp ber Rlee, clover

Also Compounds, as: ber Schwarzborn, blackthorn; bas Beigblatt, honey-suckle; bas Bergigmeinnicht, forget-me-not; bas Taufenbicon, daisy; and diminutives, as: bas Beilden, violet.

- 3. (a) Metals Masc.: ber Robalt, cobalt; ber Stahl, steel; ber Tombad, pinchbeck; ber Bismut, bismuth; ber Bint, zinc. Fem .: bie Blatina, platina.
 - (b) Countries, etc. Masc. : ber Beloponnes, Peloponnesus; ber Saag, the Hague; also those in -gau, as: Margau. Fem .: bie Rrim, Crimea; bie Levante, the Levant; bie Ufraine, the Ukraine; and those in -ei, -an, -3.

1. (a) Neut. : bas Meffing, brass.

(b) Feminines in -el:

Achfel, shoulder Ampel, lamp Amfel, black-bird Angel, fish-hook Bibel, bible Budel, boss (of a shield) Enmbel, cymbal Dattel, date

Deichsel, carriage-

Diftel, thistle Droffel, thrush Eichel, acorn Fabel, fable Fadel, torch Reffel, fetter Formel, formula Gabel, fork Beifel, scourge Gonbel, gondola

Gurgel, throat Summel, humble-Infel, island Rangel, pulpit Rartoffel, potato Fibel, spelling-book . Roppel, leash; brace (of dogs) Rugel, ball

Mufchel, shell Nabel, needle Meffel, nettle Orgel, organ Pappel, poplar Parabel, parable Primel, primrose Ruppel, cupola Rafpel, rasp Manbel, almond Regel, rule

Mangel, mangle

.Miftel, mistletoe

Rungel, wrinkle	Semmel, roll of bread	d Tafel, table	Baffel, waffle .
Schachtel, band-box	Sichel, sickle	Trobbel, tassel	Windel, swaddling-
Schaufel, shovel	Spinbel, spindle	Trommel, drum	cloth
Schaufel, swing	Staffel, step of a	Trüffel, truffle	Burgel, root
Schinbel, shingle	ladder	Bachtel, quail	Zwiebel, onion
Schiffel, dish	Stoppel, stubble		
In -er:			
Aber, vein	Folter, rack	Marter, torture	Steuer, tax
After, aster	Salfter, halter	Maner; wall	Tochter, daughter
Aufter, oyster	Rammer, chamber	Mutter, mother	Trauer, mourning
Blatter, blister	Relter, wine-press	Natter, adder	Besper, even - tide,
Butter, butter	Riefer, pine	Nummer, number	vespers
Ceber, cedar	Rlammer, cramp-iron	Oper, opera	Wimper, eyelash
Dauer, duration	Rlapper, rattle	Otter, otter	Biffer, cipher
Elster, magpie	Lauer, lurking-place	Rüfter, elm	Bither, guitar
Fafer, fibre	Leber, liver	Schener, barn	
Feber, feather, pen	Leier, lyre	Schleuber, sling	
Feier, celebration	Leiter, ladder	Schulter, shoulder	
Norn The names of	f wissens and ing in _ee a	m al ana alaa faminina	a m . bia Oban bia

NOTE. — The names of rivers ending in -er or -el are also feminine, e.g.: bie Ober, bie Befer, bie Mofel.

	ers		

Bunbel, bundle	Rapitel, chapter	Rubel, herd, flock	Giegel, seal
Dunfel, darkness	Mittel, means	Scharmütel, skirmish	übel, evil
Egempel, example	Orafel, oracle	Segel, sail	Diesel, weasel
In -en:			
Almofen, alms	Füllen, colt	Laten, sheet (bed-	Bappen, coat-of-
Beden, basin	Riffen, cushion	clothes)	arms
Eifen, iron		Lehen, fief	Beiden, token

And all infinitives when used as substantives.

In	-er	:
YG		٠.

Abentener, adven-	Gatter, grate, rail-	Messer, knife	Scepter or Bepter,
ture	ing	Mieber, bodice	sceptre
Alter, age	Gitter, trellis	Mufter, pattern	Gilber, silver
Bauer, bird-cage	Rlofter, cloister	Opfer, sacrifice	Steuer, helm
Citer, pus	Rupfer, copper .	Pflafter, plaster	Theater, theatre
Guter, udder	Lager, couch	Politer, cushion	Ufer, shore
Fenster, window	Lafter, vice	Bulver, powder	Baffer, water
Feuer, fire	Leber, leather	Regifter, register,	Better, weather
Fieber, fever	Luber, carrion	index	Bunber, wonder
Fuber, load	Malter, a grain mea-	Nuber, oar	Bimmer, apartment
Futter, fodder	sure	Schauer, shower	

Note. — Münster, 'minster,' occurs both as masculine — from its present form — and as neuter — from its derivation from the Latin monasterium.

(c) Feminines:

Mcht, proscription	Bant, bench	Brunft, conflagration	Burg, castle
Art, manner, kind	Bai, bay	Brut, brood	Juhrt, expedition
Bahn, path	Brant, bride	Bucht, bay	Flucht, flight

Flur, field		traft, strength	Scham, shame	That, deed
Flut, flood	1 5	luh, cow	Scar, host, troop	Thur, door
Form, for	m s	tur, (obsolete), elec-	Shau, show	Tradit, load, cos
Fracht, fre	eight	tion	Scheu, dread	tume
Frau, won	nan g	aft, load	Schicht, layer, stratum	Trift, pasturage
Frift, time		tift, cunning	Solacht, battle	Uhr, watch
Furcht, fea	ur 9	Mart, boundary	Solucht, ravine	Bacht, guard
Furt, ford	9	Rarfo, marsh, fen	Schmach, disgrace	Bahl, choice
Beiß, goat	. 9	Rauth, excise	Schrift, writing	Behr, defence
Gicht, gou	t I	Rild, milk	Schulb, guilt, debt	Belt, world
Gier, eage	rness 9	laht, seam	Schwilft, swelling	Bucht, bulk, heav
Glut, glow	, _ 9	Rull, zero	See, sea	weight "
Gunft, fav	our a	Bein, torment	Siфt, sight	Bulft, pad
Saft, custo	ody 🤋	Bflicht, duty	Spreu, chaff	But, rage
Saft, haste	9	Bost, post	Spur, trace	Bahl, number
bulb, grac	e a	Bracht, splendour	Statt, stead, place	Beit, time
Sut, guard	1 6	Qual, torment	Stirn, brow	Bier, ornament
Jagb, chas	se 9	Raft, rest	Streu, litter [sion	Bucht, discipline
Roft, food.	6	Saat, seed	Sucht, longing, pas-	Bunft, guild
		Also those in	App. C.	

Neuters:

Neuters:		
Mas, carrion	Glüd, luck	Leib, suffering
Amt, office	Golb, gold	Lieb, song
Bab, bath	Grab, grave	Lob, praise
Banb, ribbon	Gras, grass	Loф, hole
Bett, bed	But, property, estate	Lohn, wages
Bilb, picture	Harz, resin	Lot, plumb-line .
Blatt, leaf	Saupt, head	Mahl, meal, repast
Blut, blood	Haus, house	Malz, malt
Buch, book	heil, prosperity	Mart, marrow
Bund, bundle	Hemb, shirt	Maul, mouth (of
Dach, roof	Herz, heart	beasts)
Ding, thing	Heu, hay	Mehl, flour
Dorf, village	Sirn, brain	Mensch, wench
Ei, egg	Sols, wood	Mus, pap, jam
Eis, ice	Huhn, fowl	Nest, nest
Fach, compartment	-Ralb, calf	Dbst, fruit
Faß, cask	Rind, child	Dhr, ear
Feld, field	Rinn, chin	Pech, pitch
Fleisch, flesh	Rleib, garment	Pfant, pledge
Garn, yarn	Rorn, corn	Rab, wheel
Gelb, money	Araut, herb	Reis, twig
Olas, glass	Lamm, lamb	Rieß, ream
Gleis, groove, rut	Land, land	Hind, head of cattle
Glieb, limb	Laub, foliage	Scheit, log of wood
Also those in App. E.		App. E.

Schilb, sign-board Schloß, lock; castle Schmalz, grease, lard Schwert, sword Stift, foundation Strob, straw Thal, valley Tuch, cloth Bieh, cattle Bolt, nation Bachs, wax Bamms, jacket, vest Beh, woe Beib, woman Berg, tow Bilb, game Bohl, wellbeing Bort, word Brad, wreck Belt, tent Binn, tin

2. (a) Der Hornung, February; das Betschaft, seal.

(b) Der Abend, evening; bas Dupend, dozen.

(c) Masculines:

Buchftabe, letter of Glaube, faith Bille, will Löwe, lion Rabe, raven the alphabet Saufe, heap Affe, monkey Drade, dragon Rafe, cheese Friebe, peace Name, name Ralle, falcon Kunte, spark Same, seed Bebante, thought Schabe, injury Safe, hare

And names of males, as: ber Bote, messenger; ber Rnabe, boy, etc.

Neuters: Auge, eye; Enbe, end; Erbe, inheritance.

(e) Der Ratholit', Catholic.

3. (b) Masculines : Irrtum, error; Reichtum, wealth.

(c) Feminines in -nig:

*Bebrängnis, distress

*Befugnis, authority
Befümmernis, sorrow
Beforgnis, apprehension
Betrübnis, affliction
Bewanbtnis, conjuncture
Empfängnis, conception
Erfenntnis, cognition

*Schrechter
Trocknis,
Trocknis,
Trocknis,
Trocknis,
Trocknis,
Trocknis,
Trocknis,
Trocknis,

Erlaubnis, permission Erfpatnis, savings Băulnis, putrefaction *Jörbernis, furtherance Jinsternis, darkness Renntnis, knowledge *Schrednis, terror Trodnis, drought *Berbammnis, damnation Berberbnis, corruption (is also used as neuter) Berfäumnis, neglect, omission Wildnis, wilderness

* Also neuter.

Feminines in - sal: Drangsal, tribulation; Mühsal, trouble; Trübsal, affliction.

Masculine in - sel: Stöpsel, stopper, etc.

90. 4. Feminine compounds of Mut: Anmut, grace; Demut, humility; Großmut, generosity; Langmut, long-suffering; Sanftmut, meekness; Schwermut, melancholy; Behmut, sorrowfulness.

J. Nouns which have a double Gender.

(Less. XVIII, § 91.)

ber Banb (pl. Banbe), volumes ber Bund (pl. Bunbe), confederacy ber Bauer (pl. Bauern), peasant ber Chor (pl. Chore), chorus ber Erbe (pl. Erben), heir bie Erfenntnis, intuition ber Geifel, hostage bie Gift (Mitgift), dowry ber Sars, Hartz mountains ber Scibe (pl. Seiben), heathen ber Sut (pl. Sute), hat ber Riefer, jaw ber Runbe, customer ber Leiter, guide ber Mangel, want bas Mart, marrow ber Meffer, measurer, surveyor ber Reis, rice

bas Banb (pl. Bänber), ribbon bas Bund (pl. Bunde), bundle bas Bauer, cage bas Chor (pl. Chore), choir bas Erbe, inheritance bas Ertenntnis, verdict bie Beifel, scourge . bas Gift, poison bas Sarg, resin bie Beibe, heath bie Sut, heed, guard bie Riefer (pl. Riefern), pine-tree bie Runbe, knowledge, tidings bie Leiter, ladder bie Mangel, mangle bie Mart (pl, Marten), border-land bas Meffer, knife

bas Reis (pl. Reifer), twig

ber Schild (pl. Schitbe), shield bas Shilb (pl. Shilber), sign-board ber See (pl. Seen), lake bie See, sea, ocean ber Sproffe, offspring bie Sproffe, step (in a ladder) bie Steuer, tax, duty bas Steuer, helm ber Stift, pencil, tack bas Stift, pious foundation ber Teil, part bas Teil, share, portion ber Thor (pl. Thoren), fool : bas Thor (pl. Thore), gate ber Berbienft, gain bas Berbienft, merit

K. Monosyllabic Adjectives without Umlaut.

(Less. XXV, § 125.)

hohl, hollow platt, flat barid, harsh fdroff, rugged brav, good holb, favourable plump, clumsy ftarr, stiff bunt, variegated tahl, bald rajd, quick ftola, proud bumpf, dull (said fara, stingy rob, raw ftraff, tight, stretched of sound) fnapp, tight runb, round ftumpf, blunt fall; fallow Iohm, lame fact, gentle, low toll, mad laß, tired falfd, false fanft, soft . poll, full flad, flat matt, wearied fatt, satiated mahr, true frob, joyful morfo, rotten folaff, slack aabm, tame nodt, naked folant, slender glatt, smooth

The practice varies with bung or bunge, afraid; bluk, pale; fromm, pious; gefund, sound; flux, clear; nuk, wet; jutt, tender.

L. STRONG VERBS NOT GIVEN IN THE LISTS.

· (Less. XXXII, § 192. - Rare forms in [].)

1. bingen (W.), hire gebungen 2. ga(b)ren (W.), ferment apr gegoren 3. gebären,1 bear, bring forth gebar geboren 4. feifen (W.), chide, scold tiff getiffen 5. flieben (W.), split, cleave dalf gefloben 6. Ineipen 2 (W.), pinch Inipp aeknippen pfloa 7. pflegen.3 practise gepflogen [palla] (8. jaugen 4 (W.), suck gefogen fog [fdanb] 9. icinben (W.), flay gefdunben [found] } 10. foleifen (W.), frav fdlik gefcliffen 11. fcnauben (W.), snort idnob aefdnoben 12. fcrauben (W.), screw forob gefdroben idmor 13. ichmären,5 fester gefdworen [fcmur] \ 14. fpleigen (W.), split fplik aefpliffen 15. fteden (W. N.), stick, be stuck ita! [geftoden] 16. ftieben (W. N.), scatter ftob geftoben 17. ftinten, stink ftant aeftunten

¹ gebierft, etc. ² Rarely strong. ³ Weak in other meanings. ⁴ fäugft, fäugt, or faugft, faugt. ⁵ fcmiert. ⁶ ftidft, etc.; generally weak.

EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

EXPLANATIONS .- 1. References are to the §.

- 2. Words in Italics are not to be translated.
- 3. Words connected by _, if followed by a note, are included in that note; otherwise such connected words are to be rendered by a single word in German.
 - 4. The gender is not given, where it is according to rule.
- I. One may 1 say of the metaphysicians 2 what Scaliger said of the natives 3 of the Basque 4 Provinces 6: "I am told 6 that they understand each other, but I do not believe it."
- 1' can.' 2 Metaphysiter. 3 ber Eingeborene. 4 bastisch. 5 Proving, f. 6 x13, 2.
- II. "A friend of mine," says Lord Erskine, "suffered from continual sleeplessness. Various means were tried to send him to sleep but in vain. At last his physicians resorted to an experiment which succeeded perfectly. They dressed him in a watchman's coat, put is a lantern into his hand, placed him in a sentry-box, and he was asleep in ten minutes."
- ¹ x19, 3 (c). ² an + dat. ³ fortwährend. ⁴ Schlaflosigseit. ⁵ verschieden. ⁶ Mittel, n. ⁷ versahen. ⁸ ihn einzuschläfern. ⁹ vergebens. ¹⁰ versahen auf + acc. ¹¹ Bersuch, m. ¹² vollständig. ¹³ auziehen + dat. of pers. and acc. of thing. ¹⁴ Nachtwächtertittel, m. ¹⁵ stecken. ¹⁶ 44, 6 (b). ¹⁷ stellen. ¹⁸ Wachthänschen. ¹⁹ eingeschlafen.
- III. The great Goethe was not particularly ¹ fond ² of music. When a pianist ³ once, at a Court ⁴ concert in Weimar, was in the middle ⁶ of a very long sonata, ⁶ the poet suddenly ⁷ rose ⁸ up and, to the horror ⁹ of the assembled ¹⁰ ladies and gentlemen, exclaimed ¹¹: "If it lasts ¹² three minutes longer, I shall confess ¹³ everything."

1 besonder, adj. 2 Freund. 3 Klavierspieler. 4 Hof, m.; use compound word. 5 mitten in. 6 Sonate, f. 7 plötslich. 8 stehen. 9 Schrecken, m. 10 versammeln. 11 rusen. 12 dauern. 13 gestehen.

IV. In the first piece 1 Theodore Hook wrote for the stage, 2 a traveller 3 comes up_to 4 the door of an inn, 5 and says: "Excuse me, my friend, are you the master of this house?"—"Yes, sir," is 6 the reply; "my wife has_been 7 dead these 8 three weeks."

¹Stück, n. ²Bühne. ³ ber Reisenbe. ⁴ auf. . 311, 224, 4. ⁵ Gasthans. ⁶ sautet. ⁷ 257, 4, Note. ⁸ 'for the last three weeks'; 46.

v. "Ven you're a married man, Samivel," said old Weller, "you'll understand a good many things as you don't understand now; but vether it's worth while going through much to learn so little, as the charity boy said ven he got to the end of the alphabet, is a matter o' taste. I rayther think it isn't."

'a proper name preceded by an adj. takes the art. ² Bieses. ³ that,' 96, 5. ⁴ der Mühe wert. ⁵ durch'machen. ⁶ Armenschüler. ⁷ fertig sein mit. ⁸ Geschmackssache. ⁹ 'I scarcely think (glauben) it.'

VI. George Selwyn's morbid¹ passion² for public executions³ and similar⁴ horrors ⁵ was notorious.⁶ He paid_a_visit_to Lord Holland while the latter lay on his ¹ deathbed.⁶ When his_lordship ⁰ was told¹⁰ that Mr. Selwyn had called,¹¹ he said: "Should he come again, please bring him up.¹² If I am still alive ¹⁵ I shall be_happy ¹⁴ to see him. If I am dead he will be happy to see me.²

¹ frankhaft. ² Leibenschaft. ³ Hinvichtung. ⁴ ähnlich. ⁵ Gräuel, m. ° allgemein bekannt. ² 44, 6 (a). 8 Sterbebett. ¹ Se. Guaden. ¹¹0 benachrichtigen. ¹¹¹ been there.' ¹² 210, 3, (b). ¹³ am Lebeu. ¹⁴ sich freuen.

VII. At the time when Napoleon the Third lived as an exile in London, he was always a welcome guest at Lady Blessington's, at Gore House. Very soon after his return to

to Paris, while his political ⁶ prospects ⁷ were still rather ⁸ doubtful, ⁹ her_ladyship ¹⁰ paid_a_visit_to ¹¹ that capital, and met ¹² the Prince driving ¹³ in the Bois de Boulogne. It was an embarrassing ¹⁴ encounter, ¹⁵ for the future ¹⁶ Emperor of the French had shown ¹⁷ himself anything_but ¹⁸ grateful for her ladyship's ¹⁰ courtesy. ¹⁹ He saluted ²⁰ her, however, ²¹ with forced politeness, ²² and asked: "Countess, ²³ shall you stay long in Paris?"—"I really ²⁴ cannot say," answered Lady Blessington, with a bewitching ²⁵ smile; "and you?"

1 227, (b); 2. 2 ber Berbannte. 3 bei. 4 in. 5 Rückfehr, f. 6 politisch.
7 Aussicht, f. 8 ziemlich. 9 zweiselhaft. 10 'the lady.' 11 besuchen. 12 treffen (trans.). 13 auf einer Spaziersahrt. 14 verlegen. 15 Zusammentreffen. 16 zukünftig. 17 erweisen. 18 nichts weniger als. 19 Freundlichkeit. 20 grüßen. 21 indessen. 22 höflichkeit. 23 gnädige Gräfin. 24 wirklich. 25 bezaubernd.

VIII. Talleyrand was bored ¹ for ² his ³ autograph ⁴ by a dull ⁶ English nobleman. ⁶ At_last ⁷ he sent him the following invitation ⁸: "Dear Lord, — Will you honour ⁹ me with your company ¹⁰ next Wednesday evening, at eight o'clock. I have invited a number ¹¹ of exceedingly clever ¹² people, and I do not like ¹³ to be the only fool ¹⁴ among them."

¹zum Überdruß bestürmen. ²um. ³ 'an.' ⁴Autograph, n. ⁵ einfältig. ⁶Edelmann. ⁷ endlich. ⁸Einladung. ⁹ bechren, *imper*. ¹⁰ Gegenwart (presence). ¹¹Anzahl, f. ¹² geistreich. ¹³ gerne mögen. ¹⁴ Dummtopf.

XI. At a dinner_party¹ in Paris, a dull² and ugly³ baron⁴ sat between Madame de Staël and Madame Récamier (the acknowleged belle⁵ of the day), and whispered⁶ to the former: "Am I not fortunate to be sitting between beauty and genius⁸?"—"Not so very fortunate," replied the offended authoress,⁹ "for you possess¹⁰ neither the one nor the other!"

Diner (Fr.), n. 2 dumm. 3 häßlich. 4 Baron'. 5 Schönheit. 6 ins Ohr flüftern. 7 fich befinden. 8 Benie, n. 9 Schriftstellerin. 10 besitzen.

X. When the dramatist Gilbert was one day descending in the greatest hurry? the steps? fronting 4 the Savage Club, a stranger, in a state 6 of excitement? which defied regular construction, addressed him thus: "Excuse me, have you seen a gentleman with one eye of the name of X.—?" Gilbert answered this question with another: "Stop a moment. What's the name of his other eye?"

¹ heruntersteigen. ² Eile, f. ³ Treppe, sing. ⁶ vor. ⁵ use the Engl. words. ⁶ Justand, m. ⁷ Aufregung. ⁸ spotten + gen. ⁹ regelrecht. ¹⁰ Wortsfolge. ¹¹ Namen8. ¹² beantworten. ¹³ erlauben.

XI. When Charles Lamb was still a clerk 1 in the India-House, 2 he was one day rebuked 3 as follows 4 by a superior 5: "I have remarked, Mr. Lamb, that you always come to 6 the office 7 very late."—"That's true, to be sure, 8" answered Elia; "but you must not forget that I always go away very early." Of course 9 such an explanation 10 was more than enough."

*Schreiber; 44, 5. ² use the Engl. words. ³ zur Rede stellen. ⁴ folsgenbermaßen. ⁵ der Borgesette. ⁶ auf. ⁷ Bureau, n. ⁸ wohl (after the verb 'is '). ⁹ natürlich. ¹⁰ Erklärung. ¹¹ hinreichend.

XII. I never in my life committed more than one act of folly, said Rulhière one day in the presence of Talleyrand. But when will it end ? inquired the latter.

begehen, trans. . 2 Torheit. 3 enden.

XIII. While Sheridan was staying 1 at the country_house 2 of a friend, he was one morning asked 3 by a lady to accompany her on a walk. The lady was neither witty nor beautiful, and the author of the 'School for Scandal' 4 was at_a_loss 5 for an excuse, until he luckily 6 discovered and announced 1 to her that it was raining. His disappointed 8 persecutress 9

retired, 10 but shortly 11 came back to announce 12 that the weather had cleared up. 13 "So it has, 14 madam, 16" said Sheridan, driven 16 to despair 17; "but it has only 18 cleared up enough for one — not yet for two."

¹ anf Besuch sein. ² Landhaus. ³ bitten. ⁴ Lästerschule. ⁵ verlegen um. ⁶ glücklicherweise. ¬ mitteilen + dat. ˚ in ihren Erwartungen (expectations) getäuscht; 283, 4. ° Versolgerin. ¹ so school day urücksiehen. ¹ balb. ¹² mit der Nachricht. ¹³ sich auftlären. ¹ allerdings. ¹ gnädige Fran. ¹ 299. ¹ Berzweissung; use des. art. ¹ böchstens.

XIV. Foote, being annoyed 1 one day by an itinerant 2 fiddler, 3 who produced 4 harsh 6 discords 6 under his window, threw him down a coin 7 and bade him be gone, 8 as one scraper 9 at 10 a door was quite sufficient. 11

r belästigen; 284, 1, (a). 2 herumziehend. 3 Geigenspieler. 4 hervorderingen. 5 schrill. 6 Mißton, m. 7 Gelbstüd, n. 8 sich aus dem Staube machen. 9 Kratzer. 10 an. 11 genug.

XV. A certain nobleman was detected 1 trying 2 to cheat 3 at 4 cards, 5 and turned 6 out of the house with the threat 7 that he should be thrown out_of the window if he came again. He related his misfortune 8 to Talleyrand, protested 9 his innocence, 10 and asked 11 him at the same time 12 for 13 advice. 14 "Well, my dear friend, I advise you to play in_future 15 only on_the_ground_floor. 16"

¹ entbecken. ² "in the attempt." ³ betrügen. ⁴ im. ⁵ Kartenspiel, n. ⁶ weisen. ⁷ Drohung. ⁸ Mißgeschick, n. ⁹ beteuern. ¹⁰ Unschulb, f. ¹¹ bitten. ¹² zugleich. ¹³ um. ¹⁴ Rat, m. ¹⁵ fünftig. ¹⁶ zu ebener Erde.

XVI. A barrister 1 entered 2 the court 3 one morning with his wig 4 stuck quite on one side. Not being aware 6 how ridiculous 6 he looked, 1 he was surprised 3 at 9 the observations 10 made 11 upon it, 12 and at length 13 he asked Curran: "Do

you see anything ridiculous " in this wig, Mr. Curran?" —
"Nothing except the head," was the consolatory 15 answer.

¹ Abvotat'. ² treten in + acc. ³ Gerichtssaal, m. ⁴ Perrücke, f. ⁵ wissen, 284, 1 (b). ⁶ lächerlich. ⁷ aussehen. ⁸ sich wundern. ⁹ über + acc. ¹⁰ Besmerkung. ¹¹ 290, 2 (b). ¹² darüber. ¹³ endlich. ¹⁴ 122, 11. ¹⁵ tröstlich.

XVII. After a duel ' with young O'Connell, Lord Alvanley' gave a guinea to the coachman' who had driven him to and from the scene of the encounter. Surprised at the largeness of the sum, the man said: "My lord, I_only_took_you_to" Alvanley interrupted him with the words: "My friend, the guinea is for bringing me back, not for taking me."

¹ Duell', n. ² Guinee', f. ³ Kulfcher; 45, Rule 2. ⁴"to the scene of the encounter (Stelldichein, n.) and from there back." ⁵ durch. ⁶ "large sum (Summe)." ⁷ gnädiger Herr. ⁸ ich' habe Sie ja nur hin—. ⁹ 277. ¹⁰ hinnehmen, use the perf.

XVIII. A gentleman, who had been_worsted ¹ in a dispute ² with Porson, lost his_temper. ³ "Professor, ⁴" said he, "my opinion ⁵ of you is most ⁶ contemptible. ⁷" — "Sir," returned the great Grecian, ⁸ "I never yet met ⁹ with any ¹⁰ of your opinions that was ¹¹ not contemptible."

¹ ben Kürzern ziehen. ² Disputation. ³ bie Gebuld. ⁴ Herr Professor. ⁵ Meinung. ⁶ 127, 2. ⁷ verächtlich. ⁸ Grieche. ⁹ vorkommen (impers. + dat. of pers.). ¹⁰ ein (nom.). ¹¹ plupf. subj.; 268, 4.

reflecting people; they are ready to give time and money as soon as they are convinced of a thing; but they love dates, names, and certificates. In the midst of the most heartrending narratives, Iohn Bull requires the day of the month, the year of our Lord, the name of the parish,

and the countersign ¹³ of three or four respectable ¹⁴ householders. ¹⁵ As soon as these affecting ¹⁶ circumstances ¹⁷ have been stated, ¹⁸ he can no longer hold_out, ¹⁹ but ²⁰ gives way ²¹ to his natural kindness — puffs, ²² blubbers, ²³ and subscribes.

1 Engländer. 2 ruhig. 3 überle'gend. 4 überzeu'gen. 5 Jahl, f. 6 Beglaubigungsschein, m. 7 herzzerreißend. 8 Erzählung. 9 verlangen. 10 Datum. 11 Jahreszahl. 12 Kirchspiel, m. 13 Unterschrift, f. 14 angesehen. 15 Hansberr. 16 rührend. 17 Umstand, m. 18 angeben. 19 e8 aushalten. 20 236, 1, Rem. 1. 21 freien Lauf lassen. 22 schnauben. 23 schluchzen.

XX. A young poet once came to Piron to read 1 him a couple of new sonnets 2 written 3 by him, and ask him which he preferred. 4 The moment 6 he had finished the first, Piron said hastily 6: "I prefer the other," and positively 7 refused 8 to listen even 9 to a line 10 of it.

¹ vorlesen. ² Sonnett', n. ³ versassen; 290, 2 (b). ⁴ vorziehen. ⁵ Sobald . . . uur. ⁶ hastig. ⁷ durchaus. ⁸ sich weigern. ⁹ auch nur. ¹⁰ Zeile.

XXI. Wewitzer, the well-known actor 1 and wag,2 was joking 3 and laughing at 4 rehearsal 5 one day, instead of minding 6 his part. 7 Raymond, the stage-manager, 8 took 9 him to_task, 10 saying: "Mr. Wewitzer, I wish 11 you would pay 12 a little attention. 13" — "Well, 14 sir, 15" answered Wewitzer, "so I am 16; I'm paying as little attention as possible."

¹ Schanspieler. ² Withold, m. ³scherzen. ⁴ auf. ⁵ Probe, use def. art. ⁶ passen + auf, with acc.; 224, 2, (b). ⁷ Nolle. ⁸ Regisseur. ⁹ stellen. ¹⁰ zur Rebe. ¹¹ wollte. ¹² geben. ¹³ Acht. ¹⁴ Nun. ¹⁵ Herr Regisseur. ¹⁶ das thue ich ja auch.

XXII. The younger Dumas once perpetrated a cruel picke at the expense of the Manzanares, the rivulet that

runs_through 'Madrid and is called a river by the grandiloquent 's inhabitants of this city. When the famous dramatist 's was '10 one day present '10 at a bullfight, '11 either the heat, or some '12 revolting '13 incident '14 in the show, '15 overcame '16 him to_such_an_extent '17 that he fainted. '18 On '19 somebody bringing him a glass of water, as he was recovering, '20 Dumas declined '21 it, saying '22 in '23 a faint '24 voice: "Go and pour it into the Manzanares; the river needs '25 it much more than I!"

1 machen. ² bitter. ³ Bit. ⁴ auf Kosten. ⁵ masc. ⁶ Bach. ⁷ burchelaussen. ⁸ großsprecherisch. ⁹ Dramastiter. ¹⁰ beiwohnen + dat. ¹¹ Stieregesecht. ¹² 157. ¹³ empörend. ¹⁴ Borsall, m. ¹⁵ Schauspiel, n. ¹⁶ überewälstigen. ¹⁷ dermaßen. ¹⁸ ohnmächtig werden. ¹⁹ 277, Rem. 6. ²⁰ sich erholen. ²¹ absehnen. ²² 284, 1 (a). ²³ mit. ²⁴ schwach. ²⁵ nötig haben + acc.

XXIII. Frank Talfourd, who rejoiced in 1 a stature 2 of six feet and several inches, was playfully 3 challenged 4 at the Savage Club one evening to raise his foot as high as 5 the chandelier 6 that hung in the middle of the room. Lifting 7 his foot with rather too much vigour, 8 he knocked down one of the glass globes, 9 which fell to the ground and was smashed 10 to atoms. 11 Frank rang the bell instantly, and asked the responding 12 waiter for 13 the amount 14 of his bill. 15 "Pray, sir, what have you had?"—"Oh!" said Talfourd, pointing 16 up to 17 the chandelier, "only a glass of that."

¹ sich erfreuen + gen. ² Höhe. ³ im Scherze. ⁴ auffordern. ⁵ bis zu. ⁶ Kronseuchter. ⁷ in die Höhe werfen, 284, 1 (b). ⁸ etwas zu fräftig. ⁹ Glastuppel, f. ¹⁰ zerschellen, neut. ¹¹ "into a thousand pieces." ¹² erscheinen. ¹³ nach. ¹⁴ Betrag, m. ¹⁵ Rechnung. ¹⁶ hinzeigen, 284, 1 (a). ¹⁷ auf.

XXIV. Douglas Jerrold once said to a young gentleman who burned with 'an ardent_desire' to see himself in_print':

"Be advised by me, young man; don't take down the shutters until you have something in the window worth looking at."

1 vor + dat. 2 Begierbe. 3 gebruckt. 4 use lassen, with rest. form, 114, (b). 5 ab. 6 sehenswert, 122, 11.

XXV. Alexandre Dumas had a well-won ' reputation in Paris' society as a teller_of_anecdotes. At a large evening_party, he was ' rather' annoyed ' at the persistent' efforts of his hostess to_induce_him' to exhibit' his power' in this accomplishment.' At last, tired of refusing, he said: "Every one has his trade, hadam.' The gentleman who entered the room just before me is a distinguished at artillery_officer. Let him bring a cannon here and fire it; then I will tell one of my little stories."

1 wohlverdient. 2 Pariser, 122, 9. 3 sich ärgern + über with acc. 4 nicht wenig. 5 unablässig. 6 ihn bahin zu bringen. 7 zeigen. 8 Fertigkeit. 9 Fach, n. 10 subst. inf. 11 Handwerk. 12 gnädige Frau. 13 eintreten in. 14 ausgezeichnet. 15 abseuern.

XXVI. Some brainless 1 acquaintance 2 of Rivarol's was boasting 3 of 4 his having 5 mastered 6 four languages. "I congratulate 7 you," said Rivarol; "you'll have in future 8 four words for one idea."

1 gedankenarm. 2 der Bekannte, 122, 1, 2. 3 prahlen. 4 277, Rem. 1. 5 daß clause. 6 sich völlig aneignen. 7 gratusieren + dat. 8 künftig. 9 Gedanke.

XXVII. On the day after the first representation ¹ of ¹L'Ami des Femmes, ² a comedy ³ by Alexandre Dumas (the second), the author's father sent him a letter, congratulating ⁴ him on ⁵ the success ⁶ of his piece, ⁷ and volunteering ⁸ his own collaboration ⁹ on ¹⁰ some future ¹¹ one. ¹² The letter

closed with a somewhat grandiloquent phrase ¹³: "If a guarantee ¹⁴ is desired ¹⁵ for my ability, ¹⁶ I beg to refer ¹⁷ you to ¹⁷ 'Monte Christo' and 'The Three Musketeers.' ¹⁸" The son replied: "Even if I did not know the great works you ¹⁹ mention, ²⁰ I should gladly ²¹ accept your offer, ²² on account of the high opinion ²³ my father evidently ²⁴ entertains ²⁵ of you."

¹ Aufführung. ² der Frauenfreund. ³ Lustspiel, n. ⁴ "in which he congratulated." ⁵ zu. ⁶ Erfolg, m. ² Stück, n. ⁶ sich erbicten. 9 "to collaborate (mitarbeiten)." ¹⁰ an. ¹¹ später. ¹² 122, 4, Note. ¹³ Phrase. ¹⁴ Bürgsichaft. ¹⁵ verlangen. ¹⁶ Fähigkeit. ¹७ hinweisen auf + acc. ¹⁶ Wüsketier. ¹⁰ 96, 7. Obs. ²⁰ erwähnen. ²¹ mit Freuden. ²² Unerbieten, n. ²³ Meinung. ⁴⁴ augenscheichich. ²⁵ "has."

XXVIII. Curran happened_to_tell¹ Sir² Thomas Turton that he could never speak in_public³ a quarter_of_an_hour without moistening⁴ his lips.⁵ Sir Thomas declared that he had spoken for five hours in the House_of_Commons⁶ on⁷ the Nabob of Oude without feeling⁸ the least⁹ thirst. "That is very remarkable indeed,¹⁰" observed ¹¹ Curran, "for everybody¹² agrees ¹² that it ¹⁴ was the driest ¹⁵ speech of the session.¹⁶"

¹ erzählte gelegentlich. ² dem Sir. ³ öffentlich. ⁴ anfeuchten; 224, 2, (b). ⁵ Lippe, f. ⁶ Unterhaus. ⁷ über + acc.. ⁸ verspüren. ⁹ gering. ¹⁰ ja (immediately after the verb). ¹¹ bemerken. ¹² Alle (pl.). ¹³ darin überseinstimmen. ¹⁴ das. ¹⁵ trocken. ¹⁶ Session.

XXIX. A gentleman praising the personal charms of a very plain lady in Foote's presence, the latter said: "Why don't you lay claim to such a beauty?"—"What right have I to do so?" was to the counter-question." "Every right," replied Foote, "by the universal law of nations to as the first discoverer. "

¹ 284, 1 (a). ² persönsich. ³ Reiz, m. ⁴ "anything but (241, 19, Note)

beautiful." 5 134. 6 machen. 7 Anspruch, m. 8 auf + acc. 9 bazu. 10 sautete. 11 Gegenfrage. 12 nach. 13 allgemein. 14 Bölterrecht. 15 Entbeder.

XXX. One day the poet and banker ¹ Rogers took ³ Thomas Moore and Sydney Smith home in his carriage from a breakfast, and insisted ³ on showing them by the way ⁴ Dryden's house in some obscure ⁶ street. It was very wet weather; the house looked ⁸ very much like ⁶ other old houses, and, having ⁷ thin shoes on, they both strongly ⁸ remonstrated ⁹; but in vain. Rogers got out ¹⁰ himself, ¹¹ expecting ¹² them ¹³ to do likewise ¹⁴; but Sydney Smith leaned ¹⁶ laughing out of the window, and exclaimed: "Oh, ¹⁶ now you see why Rogers doesn't mind ¹⁷ getting ¹⁸ out: he has goloshes ¹⁹ on. But, my dear Rogers, lend each of us a golosh; we will then each stand upon one leg and admire the house as long as you please.²⁰"

¹ Banquier (pron. as in French). ² bringen. ³ bestehen auf + acc., 277.
⁴ unterwegs. ⁵ obscur. ⁶ aussehen wie. ⁷ 284, 1 (b). ⁸ energisch. ⁹ proztestieren. ¹⁰ aussteigen. ¹¹ 42, 3, Rem. ¹² "and expected." ¹³ 275. ¹⁴ das Gleiche. ¹⁵ sehnte. ¹⁶ Oho. ¹⁷ sich scheme vor + dat. ¹⁸ 277, Rem. 3. ¹⁹ Galosche, f. ²⁰ gefallen, impers., + dat.

XXXI. "When I was going from my house at Enfield to the India House one morning," says Charles Lamb, "I met Coleridge on his way to pay me a visit. He was brimful¹ of some² new idea, and — in_spite_of³ my telling him that my time was precious⁴—he drew me into the door of an unoccupied⁵ garden by the roadside, and there—sheltered by an evergreen hedge from observation 2—he took and the button_of_my_coat, closed he his¹ eyes, and commenced an enthusiastic discourse, waving at the same_time² his right hand gently, as as the musical² words flowed in an unbroken stream² from his² lips. I listened² entranced²; but the striking³ of a church_clock re-

called ³¹ me to a sense of my duty. ²³ I saw it was of no use to attempt to break away ²³; so ³⁴ I took_advantage_of ³⁵ his absorption ³⁶ in his subject, ³⁷ quietly ³⁸ cut off the button from my coat with my pen-knife ²⁹ and decamped. ⁴⁰ As I was passing ⁴¹ the same garden five hours afterwards on my way_home, ⁴² I heard Coleridge's voice, looked_in, ⁴³ and — there he stood, with closed eyes, the button ⁴⁴ in his fingers, gracefully waving his right hand, just as when I had left ⁴⁵ him. He had never ⁴⁶ missed ⁴⁷ me."

1 übervoll' von. 2 irgend ein. 3 trohdem daß. 4 lostbar. 5 undenuht.
6 Landstraße. 7 Insert verb and object here. 8 schützen, 291, 5; 299.
9 durch. 10 immergrün. 11 Hece. 12 Beobachtung. 13 sassen. 14 228 (b).
15 Rockson 15 schützen, 123. 17°44, 6 (a). 18 begeistert. 19 Rede.
20 hin und her bewegen, 131, B., Rem. 21 wobet. 22 anmutig ('gracefully').
23 während. 24 wohltönend. 25 unanshalt'sam. 26 Strom. 27 44, 6 (b).
24 Juhören. 29 entzückt. 30 Schlagen, inf. subst. 31 erinnern an 4 acc. 27 Bsich, f. 33 I saw (erkennen) the uselessness (Nuhlosgsteit) of an attempt to break away (sid) soreißen). 34 deshalb. 35 benuhen (trans.). 36 "it that he was absorbed (völlig versunten in 4 acc.)." 37 Gegenstand, m. 38 ruhsg. 39 Federmesser, n. 40 Reißauß nehmen. 41 vorbeikommen an 4 dat. 42 Heimweg. 43 hineinguden. 44 255, 2. 45 verlassen. 46 gar nicht. 47 vermissen.

Sir Thomas More.

"More seems to be made 3 and born for Friendship 4; of this virtue he is a sincere 5 follower 6 and very strict observer. 7 He is not afraid 8 to be accused 9 of 10 having many friends, which, 11 according to Hesiod, is said 12 to be no great praise. 12 Every one may 11 become More's friend; he is not slow 15 in choosing, 16 he is kind 17 in cherishing, 18 and constant 19 in keeping 20 them. 21 If by accident 22 he becomes the friend of one 22 whose vices 21 he cannot correct, 25 he slackens 26 the reins 27 of friendship towards 28 him, diverting 29 it rather 20 by little and little, 31 than entirely 22 dissol-

ving 33 it. Those 34 persons whom he finds 35 to be sincere 36 and consonant 37 to his own 58 virtuous 39 disposition, 40 he is so charmed 41 with, 42 that he appears to place 43 his chief 44 worldly 46 pleasure in their conversation 46 and company. And although More is negligent 47 in 48 his own temporal 49 concerns, 50 yet 51 no one is more assiduous 52 in assisting 53 the suits 54 of his friends than he. What shall I say more? If any person is desirous 55 to have a perfect 56 model 57 of friendship, no one can afford 58 him a better than More. In his conversation 59 he shows so much affability 60 and sweetness of manner, 51 that no man can be of so austere a disposition, 62 but that 63 More's conversation must 64 make 65 him cheerful 65; and no matter 56 so unpleasing, 67 but that with his wit 68 he can take away 69 from it all disgust. 70 77

¹ beschreiben. ² folgendermaßen. 3 schaffen, 186; 299. 444, 1 (b). 5 auf= richtig (adv.). 6 "to be a follower of" = nachfolgen + dat. 7 " and very strictly observes (beobachten) it." 8 277; 291, 11. 9 "of the reproach (Borwurf) of having." 10 277, Rem, 1. 11 96, 5. 12 200, 5 (c). 13 Ruhm, m. 14 "can." 15 langfam. 16 Bahlen, 270; use def. art. 17 freundlich. 19 unerschütterlich. 20 festhalten. 21 "of his friends." 22 3ufällig, 239, Rem. 2. 23"a man (Menich)." 24 Lafter, n. 25 verbeffern. 26 lodern. 27 Band; 64. 28 mit. 29 ablenten; 284, 1 (a). 30 lieber. 31 allmälig. 32 gang. 33 lösen. 34 solch. 35 erfinden. 36 aufrichtig. 37 ent= fprechend + dat. 38 eigen. 39 tugendhaft. 40 Sinnesart. 41 bezaubern. 42 Use as prep. before "those persons." 43 ftellen in + acc. 44 "greatest." 45 weltlich. 46 Unterhaltung. 47 gleichgiltig. 48 gegen. 49 weltlich. 50 Angelegenheit. 51 doch. 52 strebfam. 53 "in the support (Unterftützung) of." 54 Angelegenheit. 55 wünschen. 56 vollkommen. 57 Ibeal', n.; use compound word. 58 liefern. 59 Umgang, m. 60 Lentfeligfeit. 61 Liebensmürdigfeit. 62 fo berbe gefinnt. 63 bag nicht. 64 follte. 65 aufheitern. 66 Wegenftanb, m. 67 midrig. 68 Bit, m. 69 entfernen bon. 70 Alles Bidermartige.

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

I. German:

Mum. = Anmertung, note. M. T. = MItes Testament, Old Testament. a. a. D. = am angeführten Orte, in the place referred to. bgl., bergl. = bergleichen, the like. b. = any case of the definite article. b. h. = bas heißt, } that is. b. i. = bas ift, b. A. = biefes Nabres, of this year, b. M. = biefes Monats, of this month. Dr. = Doftor, Doctor. Em., Emr. = Euer, Gure, Gurer (in titles). fl. = Gulben, florin. Fr. = Frau, Mrs. Frbr. = Freiherr, Baron. Frl. = Franlein, Miss. geb. = geboren, born. geft. = geftorben, died. Gr. = Grofden (a coin). b., beil. = beilig, holy, saint. Br., Brn. = Berr, Berrn, Mr. i. R. = im Sabre, in the year. Rap. = Rapitel, chapter. Rr. = Rreuger (a coin). I .= lies, read. D. Dit. M. = Mart (money). Mffr. = Manuffript, manuscript. Maj. = Majeftat, Majesty.

n., n. n. = name, name. n. Chr. = nach Chrifto, after Christ. N. S. = Nachichrift, postscript. R. T. = Neues Teftament, New Testament. Pf., Pfb. = Pfunb, pound. Bf. = Pfennig, penny. pp. = und fo meiter, and so forth. Ge., Gr. = Seine, Seiner, his (in titles). S. = Seite, page. St., Sit. = Santt. Saint. f. = fiehe, see. f. o. = fiehe oben, see above. i. u. = fiche unten. see below. f. w. u. = fiehe weiter unten, } T., Th., Thl. = Teil, Theil, part. Thir. = Thaler (money). u. a. m. = unb anbere mehr, u. bgl. m. = und bergleichen mehr, u. f. f. = und fo fort, u. f. m. = unb fo meiter, B. = Bers, verse. p. Chr. = por Christo, before Christ. vergl., vgl. = vergleiche, compare.

v. o. = pon oben, from the top. v. u. = von unten, from the bottom.

3. B. = jum Beifpiel, for example.

II. Latin (in addition to others which are used in English also):

A. C. = Anno Christi, in the year of Our Lord (Christ).

a. c. = anni currentis, of the current year.

S. T. = Salvo Titulo, without prejudice to the title (used in addresses where the proper title of the person addressed is uncertain).

VOCABULARY.

GERMAN-ENGLISH.

EXPLANATIONS, - 1. The numerals refer to the &.

- 2. All verbs are weak and regular, unless referred to a §; the conjugation of others will be found under the § indicated.
- 3. A indicates that the word in question is to be supplied; under masc. and neuter substantives, the terminations of the gen. sing. and nom. plur. are given; thus: Bagen (-5; -) means that the gen. sing. of Bagen is Bagens, and the nom. plur. the same as the nom. sing. The sign " indicates Umlaut in the pl., e. g.: Garten, (-\$; ") means that the gen. sing. of this word is Gartens, and the nom. pl. Garten; Sohn (-es; "e) means: gen. sing. Sohnes, nom. pl. Sohne; under fem. substs. the pl. only is given.
 - 4. With adjectives, "er indicates Umlaut in the compar. and superl.
 - 5. Proper names are not given when they are the same in German as in English.

Mb, off.

M'benb, m. (-es; -e), evening ; heute -, this evening.

abenbs, in the evening. aber, but; however.

abfahren (186; fein), to set off, depart, go; set sail.

abbalten (188), to hinder, deter. abhelfen (159), to help, re-

medy: bem ift leicht ab= aubelfen, that is easily remedied.

appolen, to call for.

abfühlen (fich), to (get) cool. abreifen (fein), to set out,

start, depart. abidneiben (118), to cut off. acht, eight; - Tage, a week.

Acht, f., attention, care; fich in - nehmen, to be careful, take care.

abbieren, to add.

Abreffe, f. (-n), address.

Ml'gebra, f., algebra. allein', adj., alone, only;

conj., but, only. all(er, e, es), all, (the) whole;

alle Tage, every day : MIles, n. sing., all, every-

allerbings', adv., certainly,

of course. als, than, as; as a; when;

als ob, as if. also, thus, so; so then, ac-

cordingly. alt ("er), old, ancient.

MIter, n. (-s), age, old age. Ameritaner, m. (-3, --), American.

an (dat. or acc., 65), on, at (227), to, towards, in, by, near, of; er ftarb am Fieber, he died of fever (231, c).

anbieten (131), to offer. anber, other; bie Anbern, the others.

änbern, to alter, change; es läßt fich nicht -, it cannot be helped.

anberthalb, one and a half. Anfang, m. (-es; "e), commencement, beginning.

anfangen (188), to begin, commence.

anfanas, in the beginning, at

angenehm (dat.), pleasant, agreeable.

ängftlich, frightened, timid, anxious.

anhalten (188), to continue. Anhöhe, f. (-n), hill.

anfaufen (fich), to settle, buy up property.

antleiben (fid), to dress. antommen (167; fein), to arrive; in B. (dat.) -, to arrive at B.

anrichten, to cause. anschaffen, to provide, procure.

antreffen (167), to meet with, find.

Antwort, f. (-en), answer, reply.

antworten (dat.), to answer, reply.

anziehen (131), to draw on; put on (clothes).

Apfel, m. (-5; "), apple. Apfelbaum, m. (-3; "e), apple-tree.

April', m. (-s), April.

Mr'beit, f. (-en), work; labour; task.

arbeiten, to work.

Arbeiter, m. (-5; —), workman.

Architect. m. (-en; -en), architect.

Mrie (trisyll.), f. (-n), air, song

arm ("er), poor

Arm, m. (-es; -e), arm.

artig, well behaved; — fein, to behave one's self properly (of children).

Arzt, m. (-es; "e), physician, doctor. [rella. Aschenputtel, n. (-s), Cinde-

Ajdenputtel, n. (-5), Cinde-Ast, m. (-es; "e), bough, branch.

Aftrolog', m. (-en; -en), astrologer.

aud, also, too, even; wer —, whoever; wir sind es —, so are we.

auf, (dat. or acc.) on, upon (65); for, in (230); at (227, 3); to; open; — brei Boschen, for three weeks (fut., 229, δ , 2); — baß, in order that; — bem Lande, in the country.

aufbleiben (120), to stay up, sit up, remain up.

Aufenthalt, m. (-es; -e), sojourn, stay; delay.

Mufgabe, f. (-n), task, lesson, exercise.

aufgeben (181), to give up. aufhängen, to hang up. aufheben (131), to raise up.

lift up, pick up; abolish, annul, cancel.

aufhören, to cease, stop. aufmaden, to open.

aufmerkfam, attentive; einen auf etwas - machen, to call the attention of any-

call the attention of anyone to anything. Aufmerijamieit, f. (-en), at-

tention; kindness.
aufschieben (131), to put off.

postpone, delay.
auffen, to put up; put on

(of a hat). aufstehen (186; sein), to rise,

get up.

auffteigen (120; fein), to
rise, ascend, mount.

auftreten (181; fein), to appear.

aussiehen (131), to wind up (of a time-piece).

Auge, n. (-3; -11), eye. Augenblic, n. (-e3; -e), moment, instant.

aus (dat., 46), out of; from, of; out.

Nusbrud, m. (-es; "e), expression.

Ausflug, m. (-es; "e), excursion, pleasure-trip; einen
— machen, to take a pleasure-trip.

Ausgabe, f. (-n), edition. ausgezeichnet, excellent. ausgleiten (118; sein), to slide, slip.

auslassen (188), to omit, leave out.

auslöschen, to put out, extinguish. [11ach].
aussehen (181), to look (like, Aussicht, f. (-en), view, prospect

aussprechen (167), to pro-

Ausstellung, f. (-en), exhibition.

außer (46), outside of; conj. except, besides.

außerhalb (gen.), outside of. auswendig, by heart. auszeichnen, to distinguish.

ausziehen (131; sein), to remove (intr.).

Art, f. ("e) axe.

33.

baden (186), to bake.

Backftein, m. (-es; -e), brick. Bahnhof, m. (-es; *e), railway-station.

balb (eher, am ehesten), soon, shortly.

Band, n. (-es; "er), ribbon; m. (-es; "e), volume. Bant, f. (-en), bank; ("e),

bench.

bor. (paid in) cash. ready (of

money). Bär, m. (-cn; -en), bear.

Barbier, m. (-es; -e), barber.

bauen, to build.

Bauer, m. (-n° or -\$; -n), peasant, countryman. Baum, m. (-e8; "e), tree.

Bauplat, m. (-es; "e), site. bedauern, to pity; regret;

(id) bebaure, I am sorry. bebenken (99, 2), to consider. bebienen, to serve, wait upon; fid —, to help one's self.

Bebingung, f. (-en), condition.

beeilen (fich), to hasten, hurry. Beere, f. (-en), berry.

Befehl, m. (-es; -e), command, order; hu --, at (your) service, what is (your) pleasure?

besteißen (167), to command. besteißen (sich, 118), to apply one's self befriedigen, to satisfy, con-

begegnen, (dat.; fein), to meet.

begießen (123), to water (flowers, etc.).

beginnen (158), to begin. begleiten, to accompany.

Begleitung, f. (-en), accom-

begnügen (jid) - mit), to be satisfied, be contented (with).

Begriff, m. (-e5; -e), idea, notion; im — sein, to be upon the point of, be about (to).

behaupten, to assert, affirm; to maintain.

with the control of t

beibe, both, two.
beibes, n. sing., both.
Beifall, m. (-e8), applause.
beinahe, almost, nearly.
beigen (118), to bite.
beistehen (186; dat.), to as-

sist, aid. Bekanntschaft, f. (-en), acquaintance.

betennen (99), to acknowledge; confess.

belommen (167), to obtain, get, receive, have.

bemerten, to perceive, ob-

bemühen (sich), to take pains, try.

bequem', convenient, comfortable, commodious.

Berg, m. (-es; -e), mountain, hill.

bergen (159), to hide. berften (159), to burst. berühmt, famous, celebrated. besouttigen, to occupy, employ; beschäftigt, busy, employed.

besinnen (sich; 158), to deliberate, reflect.

beforbers, particularly, especially.

beforgen, to attend to. befprechen (167), to discuss. beffer (see gut), better.

best, (superl. of gut, which see), best; zum Besten, for the benesit of; am besten, best (of all).

bestehen (186), to undergo, pass (an examination); — (aus), to consist (of); — (aus + acc.), to insist (upon).

besteigen (120), to ascend. bestellen, to order.

bestrafen, to punish.

bestreiten (118), to defray.

Besuch, m. (-e8; -e), visit, visitors; — haben, to have visitors; —e machen, make calls; bei Jemanb auf — fein, to be on a visit at any one's.

besuchen, to visit; bie Unis versität —, to study at the university.

beten, to pray, say prayers. betragen (186), to amount to. Betragen, n. (-3), behaviour, conduct.

betreffen (167), to concern; was mich betrifft, as for me.

betrügen (131), to cheat, deceive.

Bettler, m. (-\$; --), beggar. bewegen (131), to induce; to move.

beweisen (120), to prove, demonstrate.

bewundern, to admire. bezahlen, to pay (acc. of

thing; dat. of person and acc. of thing when both are present, otherwise acc. of person).

Bezahlung, f.(-en), payment. Bioliothet', f. (-en), library. biegen (131), to bend.

Bier, n. (-es; -e), beer, ale. bieten (131), to offer.

Bilb, n. (-es; -er), picture, portrait.

Billet' (*pron.* bill-yett), n. (-tes; -te), ticket.

billig, cheap.

binben (144), to bind, tie, fasten.

binnen (dat.), within.

bis (34), till, until, up to, as far as; swei — brei, two or three; — su (dat.), — nach (dat.), as far as.

Bifchof, m. (-e8, "e), bishop. bitten (181; for, um), to ask, beg; (id) bitte, if you please, please (lit., I beg, pray); menn ich — barf, if you please (lit., if I may ask).

blasen (188), to blow. Blatt, n. (-es; "er), leaf.

blau, blue. bleiben (120; fein), to remain.

Bleistift, n. (-es; -e), leadpencil.

blinb, blind.

Blis, m. (-e3; -e), lightning.

bligen, (impers.), to lighten. Blume, f. (-en), flower.

Blumentohl, m. (-6), cauliflower.

Boot, n. (-es; Böte, or -e), boat.

böse, bad, evil; cross, angry. Bösewicht, m. (-es; -er), villain. Bote, m. (-n; -n), mcsscnger.

braten (188), to roast.

brauchen (gen. or acc.), to require, want, need, use, make use of.

braun, brown.

brechen (167), to break. breit, broad, wide.

brennen (99), to burn, be

Brief, m. (-es; -e), letter, epistle.

bringen (99, 2), to bring,

Brot, n. (-€§; -€), bread; loaf.

Brilde, f. (-n), bridge.

Bruber, m. (-\$; "), brother. Buch, n. (-e\$; "er), book.

Bücherfreund, m. (-es; -e), lover of books.

Buchhändler, m. (-3; --), book-seller.

Buchhandlung, f.(-en), bookshop.

Büreau (*pron.* bü-ro'), n. (-5; -5), (business) office. Bürgermeister, m. (-5; -).

mayor. Butter, f., butter.

G.

Chotolabe, f., chocolate. Chrift, m. (-en; -en), Christian.

Coufine, f. (-n), cousin.

Ð.

ba, there, in that place; here; conj., as, when, because, since.

Dach, n. (-e3; "er), roof. bafür, for that, for it, for them (of things).

baher', thence, hence, there-

bamit, therewith, with it, with that.

Dampferlinie, f. (-11), steamship-line.

Dampsichiff, n. (-es; -e), steam-boat, steamer.

bantbar, thankful, grateful. Dantbarteit, f., thankfulness.

banten (dat.), to thank; ich bante (Ihnen), (no) thank you.

bann, then.

baran, thereon.

barauf, thereon, on it, on them (of things), etc.

barin, therein, in that, in it.

about it, at it.

bas, n. of ber, which see. bajelbst, there, in that place.

baß, that; (auf) —, in order that.

bavon, thereof, of it. bein, beine, beine, beine, beine, beine, thy.

benien (99; gen. or generally an + acc.), to think; fich —, to imagine.

benn, for, conj.

ber, bie, bas, def. art., the (4; 44); rel. pr., who, which, that (92, 93, 95); dem. pr., the one, he, she, it, that (133; 140-143).

berjenige, biejenige, basjes nige (135; 140), that, this, the one; he, she, it.

berfelbe, biefelbe, basfelbe (136; 143), adj. and pr., the same; he, she, it, etc. bes'halb, for this or that rea-

son, therefore, on that account.

besio, (all) the, so much the;
— besser, so much the better; je mehr — besser, the
more, the better.

beswegen, on that account. bentlich, clear, distinct; clearly, distinctly. beutsch, German; auf Deutsch, im Deutschen, in German.

Deutsch'land, n. (-8), Germany.
Diamant', m. (-8 or -en;

-en), diamond. bie, f. of ber, which see.

Dieb, m. (-es; -e), thief.

Diener, m. (-5; -), servant.

Dienstag, m. (-es; -e), Tuesday. biefer, biefe, biefes (bies),

(6; 134, 140, 143), this, that; the latter.

bies'seits, adv., on this side. bingen (App. L.), to hire. bipibieren, to divide.

boch, yet, however, but, after all, pray, well, just. Dot'tor, m. (-3; Dotto'ren),

doctor. Donner, m. (-5; —), thun-

der.
bonnern, to thunder.

Donnerstag, m. (-es; -e), Thursday.

Dorf, (-es; "er), village. bort, there, yonder, in that place.

brei, three.

breifach, three-fold, triple, treble.

breimal, three times, thrice. breißig, thirty.

breschen (159), to thresh, thrash.

bringen (144), to press. brittehalb, two and a half.

brüben, over there, over the way.

Drud, m. (-es), printing, print.

bu, thou, you.

bünn, thin.

burch (34), through; by. burchaus', absolutely, entire-

ly; — nicht, by no means, not at all. burdsud'en, to search through.

bürfen (196-202; permission), to dare; be permitted, allowed; burfich? may

Durft, m. (-es), thirst; haben, to be thirsty. Dut'enb, n. (-es; -e), dozen.

Œ

eben, adv., even, just; exactly; .fo-, just now.

Ede, f. (-n), corner. E'belstein, m. (-e3; -e), precious stone, jewel.

ehe, adv. and conj., ere, before.

ehren, to honour, esteem.
ehrlich, honest; — mährt am
längsten, honesty is the
best policy.

€i, n. (-es; -er), egg.

Eigentum, (-e3; ⁿer), property, possession, estate.
Eile, f. haste, hurry; was

haft bu für —? what is your hurry?

eilen, to hasten, hurry.

eilig, hasty, speedy; es haben, to be in a hurry, be in haste.

ein, eine, ein (9), a, an; one; die Einen, some. einanber, one anofher, each

other. Einband, me (-es; "e), bind-

ing.
einbinben (144), to bind (a
book).

einbringen (144; sein), to enter by force; rush in;

press in, penetrate.
einer, eine, ein(e)3 (150),
pron., one (equivalent of
man).

einfältig, simple, silly.

Einfluß, m. (-es, "e), influence.

einige, some, several, a few. einlaben (186), to invite. einmal, once.

Ginmaleius, n. (indecl.), multiplication-table.

einpaden, to pack up.

einrechnen, to reckon in; comprise in account.

einschlagen (186), to strike (of lightning).

einscribe, check (luggage). einscribe, check (luggage). einschen (181), to perceive,

comprehend. einfeitig, one-sided.

einsteigen (120; sein), to mount into, get into (carriage, etc.).

Gin'trittsega'men, n.(-3; --), entrance-examination, matriculation-examination.

Einwohner, m. (-3; --), inhabitant.

Eis, n. (-es), ice; ice-cream. Eisen, n. (-s), iron. Eisenbahn, f. (-en), railway.

Eisenbahn, f. (-en), railway. elegant', elegant.

Elle, f. (-n), yard.
Eltern (no sing.), parents.

empsehlen (167; dat. of pers.), to recommend.

empfinben (144), to feel, experience.

enblich, at last, finally, at length.
enolish, adi., English: auf

englisch, adj., English; auf Englisch, in Englisch.

Ente, f. (-n), duck; Entens braten, m. (-s; --), roast duck.

entge'gengehen (188; fein; dat.), to go to meet.

entge'genkommen (167; fein; dat.), to come to meet. entschließen (sich; 123), to

resolve, decide. entschulbigen, to excuse.

entweber, either; entweber

entwerfen (159), to draw (a plan, etc.); design. entjüdt, delighted, charmed.

er, he. Erbse, f. (-n), pea.

Erbseben, n. (-\$; —), earth-

quake. Erbbeere, f. (-n), strawberry. Erbe, f., earth, ground.

erfinden (144), to invent. Erfindung, f. (-en), invention.

Erfolg, 'm. (-e3; -e), success. erfrieren (131; fein), to freeze, be frozen. ergreisen (118), to seize.

erhalten (188), to receive, get.

erinnern (sic); gen. of thing remembered), to remember.

erfälten (sich), to catch cold. Erfältung, f. (-en), cold. erfennen (99), to recognize. erflären, to explain.

erfunbigen (fid), to inquire; fid bei jemanb nach etwas —, to inquire of anyone about anything.

erlauben (dat. of pers.), to permit, allow.

erleben, to experience.

ernennen (99), to nominate, appoint; zum Gouverneur —, to appoint (as) governor. erobern, to conquer, overcome.

erschreden (167; sein), to be frightened.

erft, first; fürs erfte, for the present; ber erfte befte, the first which comes to hand; adv., first, only, not before, not till.

erstens, first, in the first place. ertrinten (144), to drown, be drowned.

erwählen (ju), to elect (as). . erwarten, to expect, wait for.

ermüniden, to wish for, de-

eraüblen, to relate, narrate,

es (38, 39), it; they; there; er ift -, it is he : ce finb Männer, they are men. effen (181), to eat; ju Dittag

-, to dine.

etma, nearly, about. Etwas, something, anything.

euer, eure, euer, vour. Europa, n. (-3), Europe.

Era'men, m. (-5; -), examination.

Eremplar', n. (-3; -e), copy (of a work, etc.).

٩.

Rabrit', f. (-en), factory. Faben, m. (-3; "), thread. fabren (186; fein), to go. drive, ride (in a conveyance); travel; sail. Fahrt, f. (-en), journey, voyage : ride, drive, Fall, m. (-es; "e), fall; case, event; in bem Falle, in that case. fallen (188; fein), to fall. falls, in case. Kami'lie, f. (-n), family. fangen (188), to catch. faft, almost, nearly; - nie, hardly ever. Februar, m. (-3), February. fecten (124), to fight, fence. Feber, f. (-n), feather ; pen ; spring. feiern, to celebrate. Reiertag, m. (-es; -e), holiday. Feinb, m. (-es; -e), enemy. Kelb, n. (-es; -er), field. Relf(en), m.(-ens; -eu), rock. Kenster, n. (-3; -), window.

Kerien, pl. (no sing.), vaca-

tion, holidays.

Ferne, f. (-n), distance; in ber -, at a distance. fertig, ready, done; - fein (mit), to have finished (with). Reftlichteit, f. (-en), festivity. Feuer, n. (-6; -), fire. Rieber, n. (-6; -), fever. finben (144), to find; meet with; think, be of opinion; man finbet fich nicht leicht, people do not find each other easily. Rifd, m. (-es; -e), fish. Rlaiche, f. (-n), bottle. flechten (124), to weave. Rleifc, n. (-es), meat. fleißig, diligent; industrious; diligently, etc. fliegen (131; fein), to fly. flieben (131), flee. fliegen (123), flow. Flote, f. (-n), flute. Hlügel, m. (-3; -), wing. Hlug, m. (-es; "e), river. folgen (fein; dat.), to follow. Korelle, f. (-n), trout. Format', n. (-es; -e), size (of a book). fort, forth; away, gone; wir muffen -, we must be off, fortgeben (188; fein), to go fortmährenb, perpetual, continual, incessant. fragen (186), to ask questions ; Fragen, n. (-5), questioning, asking questions (action of). Frantreich, n. (-3), France. frangofifch, French. Fran, f. (-en), woman, wife,

lady, madam, mistress, Mrs.

Franlein, n. (-3; -), young lady, Miss; mein -, Miss. freigebig, liberal, generous. freilaffen (188), to set free, liberate.

freilich, to be sure, indeed, of course.

Freitag, m. (-es; -e), Friday. fremb, strange; foreign. Frembe, (adj. subst.) m. or f., stranger, foreigner.

Frembling, m. (-es: -e). stranger.

freffen (181), to eat (said of beasts).

Freube, f. (-n), joy, delight. freuen (fich ; at, über + acc.), to rejoice, be glad : es freut mich, I am glad.

Freund, m. (-es; -e), friend; ich bin ein - von. I like. Freundin, f. (-nen), friend

(female).

freunblich, friendly, kind. Freundichaft, f. (-en), friendship.

Friebe(n), mi. (-ns), peace. Friebrich, m.(-3), Frederick: Friebrichftraße, Frederickstreet.

frieren (131), to freeze; feel cold; es friert mich, I feel cold; mich friert, I am cold.

frifd, fresh.

Kris, m. (-ens), Fred, Freddy.

froh, joyful, glad; frohen Mutes, cheerfully. fröhlich, joyous, merry.

Frucht, f. ("e), fruit. früh, early; früher, earlier; formerly.

Frühling, m. (-es; -e), spring.

früh'ftüden, to breakfast. Ruchs, m. (-es; "e), fox. führen, to lead; go, lie. füllen, to fill.

fünf, five. fünftehalb, four and a half. fünfzig, funfzig, fifty.

Funte(n), m. (-ns; -n), spark.

für (34), for. Furcht (vor), f. fear (of). fürchten, to fear: fich - por

(+ dat.), to fear, be afraid of.

Fuß, m. (-es; "e), foot.

ga(b)ren (App. L.), ferment. gang, adj., whole, entire; the whole of; adv., quite, wholly, altogether, entirely. gar, even : - nicht, not at all; - nichts, nothing at all.

Garten, m. (-3; "), garden. Gärtner, m. (-3; -), gardener.

Baft, m. (-es; "e), guest. Gafthaus, n. (-es; er), inn,

hotel. gebaren (167), to bear, bring

forth.

geben (181), to give; v. impers., es giebt, there is, there are.

Bebot', n. (-e3; -e), commandment.

Geburts'tag, m. (-es; -e), birthday; aum -, as a birthday-present.

Gebante, m. (-ns; -n), thought.

gebeihen (120), to thrive. gebenten (99), to intend. Bebicht, n. (-es; -e), poem.

gebrängt, packed, compressed, crowded.

Gebulb, f., patience.

gefährlich, dangerous; dangerously.

gefallen (188), to please, suit; wie gefällt es Ihnen in Bofton? how do you like Boston?

gefällig, pleasing, complaisant, kind; ift bem Berrn etwas -? will the gentleman be helped to anything? gefälligft, if you please. Befühl, n. (-es: -e), feeling:

emotion. gegen (34), towards, against,

about; for. geben (188; fein), to go;

walk ; wie geht es Ihnen ? how do you do? how are you?

gehören (dat.), to belong (to). Beige, f. (-n), violin ; Bei= genfpiel, n. (-3), violinplaying.

gelb, yellow.

Gelb, n. (-es; -er), money. Gelbbeutel, m. (-3; --),

purse.

gelegen, convenient; opportune; nichts fonnte mir ge= legener fein, nothing could suit me better.

gelingen (144; fein), to succeed; es gelingt mir, I succeed.

gelten (159), to be worth.

Gemälbe, n. (-3; -), painting, picture.

Bemufe, n. (-5; -), vegetables.

genau, precise, exact; precisely, exactly, carefully, minutely.

General', m. (-es; -e), general.

genefen (181; fein), to get well, recover (from an illness).

genießen (123; fein), to enjoy; eat or drink.

genug, enough.

Geometrie', f., geometry. Gepäd, n. (-es), luggage,

baggage. gerabe, adj., straight; adv., exactly, just.

Geräusch, n. (-es; -e), noise. gering, small, trifling, mean; nicht im -ften, not in the least.

gern (lieber, am liebften), with pleasure, willingly, gladly : etmas - haben. to like a thing; - lernen. to like to learn, study; bas ift - möglich, that is very probable.

Gerfte, f. barley. gefalzen, falzen, salt.

Befang, m. (-es), singing. Gefdäft, n. (-es ; -e), business; mercantile establishment: shop, store.

Beidaftsangelegenheit, f. (-en), business matter, business engagement.

gefdeben (181: fein), to hap-

Befdent, n. (-es; -e), gift, present.

Befchichte, f. (-n), history, story.

Beidmad, m. (-es), taste. gefdult, s.s.,fdulen, trained, cultivated.

Gefdwifter, pl., brothers and sisters.

Befellicaft, f. (-en), company, party.

Beficht, n. (-es; -er and -e), face, countenance; Gefichs ter, faces; Gefichte, visions.

Gefpiele, m. (-n; -n), playmate.

gestern, vesterday.

Gefunbheit, f. health. gewinnen (158), to win, gain. gewiß (gen.), certain (of); certainly, surely.

gewiffenhaft, conscientious. Gemitter, n. (-s; -), thunder-storm, storm.

Gewohnheit, f. (-en), custom, habit; bie - haben, to be accustomed to. gewöhnlich, usual, custom-

ary; generally, usually. gießen (123), to pour.

glängen, to shine, glitter. alangend, brilliant. Glas, n. (-es; "er), glass. alatt, smooth, slipperv. glauben (dat. of pers.), to believe: think. gleich, at once, at the same time, immediately, directly; fo-, immediately, etc. gleichen (118), to be like, resemble. gleiten (118), to glide, slip. glimmen (123), to glimmer. Glud, n. (-es), (good) fortune, good luck; success; - wünschen, to congratulate, wish success to. gludlich, happy, fortunate; successfully. Golb, n. (-es), gold. golben, of gold, golden. Gouverneur', m. (-es; -e), governor. graben (186), to dig. Grab, m. (-es; -e), degree. Graf, m. (-en; -en), count, earl. Gräfin, f. (-nen), countess. Gramma'tit, f. (-en), gram-Gras, n. (-es; "cr), grass. gratulieren (dat.), to congratulate. greifen (118), to grasp. Griechenlanb, n. (-8), Greece. groß ("er, sup. größt), great, large, big, tall. grün, green. grünblich, thoroughly. griifen, to greet, salute, bow to; Ihr Freund läßt Gie -, your friend wishes to be remembered to you. Guitarre, f. (-n), guitar. gut, adj., good; kind; adv., well ; fo - fein unb, to be so kind as to.

Gutes, n., good (thing).

Saar, n. (-es: -e), hair. haben (24), to have; Recht -, to be (in the) right; Unrecht -, to be (in the) wrong; was - Sie? what is the matter with you? por-, to intend, propose, purpose. Safen, m. (-8; "), port, harbour, haven. Safer, m. (-3), oats. Sageltorn, n. (-es; "er), hail-stone. hageln, to hail. halb, half; - brei, half past two. Sälfte, f. (-n), half. halten (188), to hold, think; - für, consider; ich halte viel von ibm, I think highly of him (esteem, value him highly). Sand, f. ("e), hand. Banbler, m. (-s; -), dealer, shop-keeper. Sanbidnh, m. (-es; -e), glove. bangen (188), to hang, be suspended; bas Bilb hängt, the picture is hanging. bangen, to hang, suspend. Sarfe, f. (-n), harp; Sar= fen=Begleitung, accompaniment on the harp. hart ("er), hard. Safe, m. (-n; -n), hare. haffen, to hate. hauen (188), to hew. Sanptftatt, f. ("e), capital. hans, n. (-es; "er), house; ju Saufe, at home; nach Saufe, home. heben (131), to raise, lift. Deer, n. (-es; -e), army. heftig, violent, heavy; heavily (of rain). Beibe, m. (-n; -n), heathen. Seinrich, m. (-3), Henry.

beift, hot. beißen (188), to be called, be named; mean, signify: wie beift bas auf Deutich? how do you say that in German? wie beift? what is the name of? ich beiße M., my name is A. Selb, m. (-en; -en), hero. helfen (159; dat.), to help. hell, bright; brightly. berabfteigen (120; fein), to descend. heraustommen (167; fein), to come out. Serbft, m. (-es ; -e), autumn. Berbe, f. (-n), flock, herd. hereinkommen (167; fein), to come in. herr, m. (-n; -en), master; gentleman : Lord : Mr. : 3hr - Bater, vour fa-Berg, n. (-ens; -en), heart. berglich, heartily, exceedingly. Seu, n. (-es), hay. heute, to-day ; - Abend, this evening; - Morgen, this morning; - über viergehn Tage, this day fortnight; heutzutage, now-a-days. hier, here; - ju Lande, in this country. hiermit, herewith, with this. Simmel, m. (-s; -), heaven, skv. hinaufgeben (188; fein), to go up. hinaussehen (182), to look out (at the window, sum Fenfter). hineingeben (188; fein), to go in. hingeben (188; fein), to go (hence); go anywhere. hinter (65), behind. Site, f. heat.

heiser, hoarse.

bod (loses c in inflection; compar. höher, sup. höchft), high. boffen, to hope. hof'fentlich, adv., (it is) to be hoped, I hope. Soffnung, f. (-en), hope. höher, compar. of hoch, which see. holen, (to go and) bring, fetch; get; - laffen, to send for. Dol3, n. (-e3), wood. boren, to hear; listen; fagen -, to hear say, hear. hubich, pretty. bubn, n. (-es; "er), fowl; chicken. Bunb, m. (-es; -e), dog. hunbert, hundred. hunbert, n. (-3; -e), hundred. hunger, m. (-8), hunger; ich habe -, I am hungry. hungrig, hungry. But, m. (-es; "e), hat. hüten, to guard, keep. 3. id, I. ibr, pers. pron., to her, her (dat. sing.); you (nom. pl.). ihr, ihre, ihr, poss. adj., her; its; their. 3hr, 3hre, 3hr, poss. adj., your. ihrer, ihre, ibres. poss. pron., ihre (ber, hers; its; bie, bas), theirs. ibrige (ber. bie, bas),

Ihrer, Ihre,

Ihre (ber, bie,

Ihrige (ber, bie,

boss.

pron.,

vours.

Ihres,

bas).

bas),

Ihretwillen, for your sake. im, contr. for in bem. immer, always; at all times; noch -, still. in (65; dat. or acc.), in, at; into, to. inbem', while, whilst. innerhalb (gen.), on the inside, within, Inftrument', n. (-es; -e), (musical) instrument. interessant', interesting. irgenb einer. - jemanb, any one Irland, n. (-3), Ireland. Italien, n. (-3), Italy. 3.

Na, yes, indeed, certainiy, you know; did I (etc.) not; ja= mohl, yes indeed, yes to be sure, yes certainly. jagen, to hunt, chase, pursue. Jagen, n. (-5), hunting (act of). Jäger, m. (-3; --), hunter, huntsman. Nahr, n. (-es; -e), year. 3a'fob, m. (-3), James. jamobl, see ja. ie, ever (at any time); the (be-

fore comparative degree, 126, 4); - amei, two at a jebenfolls, certainly, at all

events.

jeber, jebe, jebes, every, each, every one, any. jebermann, everyone, every-

body. jemals, ever, at any time.

jemanb, somebody, some one, any body, any one. jener, jene, jenes, that, that one, that person; yonder;

the former. jenseits, on the other side,

beyond. jest, now, at present. Johann', m. (-5), John. Au'genb. f., vouth. Au'li, m. (-3), July. jung ("er), young. Munge, m. (-n: -n), boy. Jüngling, m. (-es; -e), young man, youth. Au'ni, m. (-3). June.

8. Raffee, m. (-3), coffee. Raifer, m. (-3; --), emperor. Ralbstotelette, f. (-n), vealcutlet. falt ("er), cold. Ramin', n. (-es: -e), fire-Rarbinal', m. (-5; -e), cardinal. Rarl, m. (-3), Charles. Rarte, f. (-n), card. Rartoffel, f. (-n), potato. Rafe, m. (-3; --), cheese. faufen, to buy. foum, hardly, scarcely. teifen (App. L.), to chide. fein, feine, fein, no, pot a, not any. feiner, feine, fein(e)s, pron., nobody, not anybody, no one, none.

Rellner, m. (-3; --), waiter. fennen (99), to know, be acquainted with.

Renntnis, f. (-e), knowledge; pl. acquirements, attainments.

Rinb, n. (-es; -er), child. Rirche, f. (-n), church.

flor, clear. Alasse, f. (-n), class.

Rlaf'fiter, m. (-3; -), classic writer, classic.

Rlavier', n. (-3; -e), piano. Rleib, n. (-e3; -er), dress; #1. clothes.

flein, small, little. flieben (App. L.), to cleave. flimmen (123), to climb. flingeln, to . ring (said of small bells); es flingelt, there is a ring (at the door, etc.). flingen (144), to sound. Rnabe, m. (-n; -n), boy. Anall, m. (-es; -e), loud quick sound; clap, thunder-clap. Rnecht, m. (-cs; -c), (farm) servant, man-of-all-work. fneifen (118), to pinch. fneipen (App. L.), to pinch. Anochen, m. (-6; -), bone. Rody, m. (-cs; "c), cook. Romet', m. (-en; -en), comet. tommen (167; fein), to come: arrive: - Iaffen, to send for; wie fommt bas? how is that? Rönia, m. (-(e)3; -e), king. Rönigin, f. (-nen), queen. Rönigstraße, f. King-street. fonnen (196-202; ability, etc.), to be able, can; know, be versed in, know how. Ronzert', n. (-es; -c), concert. Ropf, m. (-es; "e), head. Rorb, m. (-es; "c), basket. Roften, pl., expenses. toften (acc. of pers. and of thing), to cost. frant ("er), ill; sick; Rrante, (adj. subst.), sick person, patient. Arantheit, f. (-en), disease, illness. Rrieg, m. (-es; -e), war. friechen (123), to creep. Rri'tifer, m. (-3; -), critic. Rüche, f. (-11), kitchen. Rnh, f. (2€), cow.

Runft, f. ("e), art.

turg ("er), short.

füralich, not long ago, lately, 1 recently. Rutider, m. (-3: -), coachman, driver. lachen (gen. or liber + acc.), to laugh (at). £афв, т. (-ев; -е), salmon laben (186), to load; invite. Laben, m. (-\$; - and "), window-shutter (#1. -); shop, store (pl. "). Land, n. (-es; "er and -e), land, country; country (opposed to town); auf bem -e, in the country; aufs - gehen, to go into the country; 311 -e, by land; hier zu -e, in this country. Landidaft, f. (-en), landscape. lang ("er), long. lange, adv. long, a long time or while, for a long time; io -, so long as; er ift nicht hier gewesen, he has not been here for a long time; er ift nicht - bier gemefen, he has not been here long. langfam, slow; slowly. länaft, long ago, long since. Lärm, m. (-es), noisc. laffen (188; 200, 7), to let, allow; leave; have (a thing done); fagen -, to send word; tommen -, to send for; ich laffe bas Buch einbinden, I am having the book bound; es läßt fich nicht lengnen, it cannot be denied. Lafter, n. (-6; -), vice. Latein, n. (-8), Latin. Lauf, m. (-es; "e), course. laufen (188; fein), to run. läuten, to ring (of large bells), Riinftler, m. (-6; -), artist. toll.

leben, to live : be alive. Leben, n. (-3: -), life. Lebewohl, n. (-3), farewell. adieu. Leber, n. (-s; -), leather. legen, to lay, put, place, set. Lebrer, m. (-3; -), teacher. master. leicht, light, easy; easily, readily. leib (only used as pred, with fein and thun), sorry, gricved; es ift, es thut mir -. I am sorry. leiben (118), to suffer; an etwas -, to suffer from anything. leiber, alas! unfortunately! Icihen (120), to lend. Leiften, m. (-6; -), (shoemaker's) last. leiften, to accomplish. Lettion', f. (-en), lesson. Iernen, to learn, study. Icfen (181), to read. Lefen, n. (-3), (act of) reading. lett, last, final. Lente, pl. (no sing.), people, persons. Licht, n. (-es; -er and -e), light. lieb, dear. Liebe, f. love, affection; zu, love of. lieben, to love. lieber (comp. of gern); conj., rather; ich gehe -, I prefer to walk. Lich, n. (-es; -er), song. liegen (181; fein, haben), to lie; be; be situated. lint, left. lints, to (or on) the left. loben, to praise. Loch, n. (-cs; "er), hole. Löffel, m. (-3; -), spoon. Lohengrin, m. (-5), name of an opera by Wagner.

los, loose, slack; mas ift -? | Mart, f. (-), mark (a coin what is the matter?

lofen, to free, redeem; ein Billet -, buy a ticket. losipringen (144: fein; auf

+ acc.), to spring upon, leap upon.

Louise, f. (-ns), Louisa. Löme, m. (-n: -n), lion. Lubwig, m. (-3), Louis. . Luft, f. (2e), air, atmosphere. lügen (131), to lie, utter a

falsehood. Lügner, m. (-3; -), liar. luftig, merry; merrily; fich fiber einen - machen, to make sport of one.

202.

machen, to make; arrange; cause, give: be (in arithm. calculations); ich mache mir nichts baraus, I care nothing for it : eine Scereise -, to take a voyage; einen Spagiergang -, to take a

Mabden, n. (-6; -), girl. Magb, f. ("c), maid, maidservant.

Mai, m. (-es or -en), May. Mal, n. (-e5; -e), time (occasion); jum letten -, for the last time.

malen, to paint.

Moler, m. (-3; -), painter. Malerei', f. (art of) painting. man, pron., one, we, you, they, people; - jagt, they say, people say, it is said. mander, mande, mandes, adj. and pron., many a. Mangel, m. (-3), want.

Mann, m. (-es; "er), man. Mantel, m. (-3; "), cloak;

Margarete, f. (-118), Marga-

Marie, f. (-ns), Mary.

= 100 Pfennig or about 25

Martt, m. (-es; "e), market. maridieren (fein or baben). to march.

March. m. (-es). March. Mafetn, øl., measles.

Mathematif. f., mathematics. Matrofe, m. (-n; -11), sailor.

Maus, f. ("e), mouse. Mehl. n. (-es), flour.

mehr, more: nicht -, no longer, not now.

mehrere, several; mehreres, several things, a good deal. mehrmals, several times.

meiben (120), to avoid. Deile, f. (-n), mile (Ger-

man), league. mein, meine, mein, my.

meine (ber, bie, bas), mine. meinen, to think, be of orinion, suppose, mean; bas follte ich - I should think so (emphatic).

meinetwegen, (um) meinet= millen, for my sake; for all I care.

meinige (ber, bie, bas), mine. Meinung, f. (-en), opinion. meift (superl. of viel), most; am -en, most, most of all. Meifter, m. (-3; -), master. melten (124), to milk.

Melobie', f. (-n), melody, tune; air.

Menge, f. (-11), great quantity or number.

Menich, m. (-en ; -en), a human being, man; person; pl., mankind, people. meffen (181), to measure. Meffer, n. (-5; -), knife. Metall', n. (-es; -e), metal. mieten, to rent.

Mild, f. milk.

Million', f. (-en), million. Minute, f. (-n), minute.

Minutenzeiger, m. (-5: -), minute-hand.

mir (dat. of id), (to) me. mit (46), with; by (in multiplication).

Mittag, m. (-es; -e), midday, noon ; ju - effen, to

Mittagseffen, n. (-3; -), dinner.

mitten, in the middle or midst of : - im Binter, in the middle of winter.

Mittmoch, m. (-es), Wednesday.

mögen (196-202; preference, liking), to be able; may; like; ich mag bas nicht, I do not like that; ich möchte. I should like.

möglich, possible; bas ift gerit -, that is very probable.

Monard', m. (-en : -en), monarch.

Mo'nat, m. (-es; -e), month. Montag. m. (-3: -e), Mon-

Morgen, m. (-\$; -), morning; quten -, good morning; bes -s (or mor= gens), in the morning.

morgen, to-morrow; - frub, to-morrow morning.

mübe, tired, weary.

Mübe, f. trouble; nicht ber - wert, not worth while. Mühle, f. (-n), mill.

multiplizieren, to multiply. Musit', f. music.

musitalisch, musical.

müssen (196-202; necessity), to be obliged or forced,

Mut, m. (-es), mood, courage, spirit ; mir ift folecht su -e. I feel ill : froben -es, cheerfully.

Mutter, f. ("), mother.

n.

nath (46), after; according to; by (of time-piece); past (of hour of day); to (before proper names of places); — Sause, home.

Machbar, m. (-3 and -n; -n), neighbour.

nachbem', conj., after.

nadgehen (188; fein), to go after; go or be too slow (of a time-piece).

Machmittag, m. (-es; -c), afternoon; bes -s, in the afternoon.

Rachricht, f. (-en), news. nächft (superl. of nah), next. Rächfte, m. (adj. subst.), fellow-creature, neighbour.

nächstens, shortly, soon, very soon.

Nacht, f. ("e), night.

Mähe, f., nearness; neighbourhood; in meiner —, near me; in my neighbourhood.

Name, m. (-nš; -n), name, title.

natür'lich, naturally, of course, I suppose.

neben (65), beside, besides; near, alongside of, by.

nebst (51), together with, including.

Neife, m. (-n; -u), nephew. uehmen (167), to take; fich in Acht —, to take care, beware.

nein, no.

nennen (99), to call, name. netto, net (commercial term).

neu, new.

neulid, lately, the other day, not long ago.

neuntehalb, eight and a half. nicht, not; — mehr, no longer; — wahr? is (it, etc.) not (so)?

nichts (indecl.), nothing. nie, never.

Mieberlande (bie), pl., The Netherlands.

nie'manb, nobody, no one, no person, not anybody, etc.

noth, still, yet, even; — ein, one more, another; — eta was, something (anything) more; — einmal, over again; — heute, before the end of the day, before the day is over; — immer, up to the present time, still; — vor viergehn Zagen, only a fortnight ago.

Nord'eisenbahn, f. (-en), Northern-Railway.

nötig, necessary. November, m. (-3), Novem-

ber."
Nu'mero, n. (-3), number.

nur, only. just. Nuß, f. ("e), nut. nüßlich, useful.

O.

ob, whether, if.
oben, above, up-stairs; παφ
—, upward.
obgleid/, although.
ober, or.

Dfen, m. (-3; "), stove. offen, open

Difizier', 'm. (-es; -e), officer. öffnen (sich), to open.

oft ("er), often, frequently. O'heim, m. (-es; -e), uncle. ohne (34), without; but for. Ontel, m. (-s; —), uncle.

P.

Palast, m. (-es; "e), palace. Pantoffel, m. (-3; -11), slipper.

Papier', n. (-e3; -e), paper. Papft, m. (-e3; "e), pope. Paris', n. (von —), Pari paffend, fit, suitable.

Pseisen (118), to whistle.

Psennig, m. (-es; -e), (the one hundredth part of a

mark), penny.

Pferb, n. (-e3; -e), horse.
Pferbebahn, f. (-en), tramway, tram; street-cars, horse-cars.

Pflaume, f. (-n), plum.

pflegen (weak), to attend to; to be accustomed, wont; — (strong, App. L.), to practise, exercise.

Pfund, n. (-es; -e), pound. Philosophie', f. (-n), philosophy.

Plan, m. (-3; -e or "e), plan, design.

Planet', m. (-en; -en), planet.

Plat, m. (-es; ee), place;
— nehmen, to sit down, be seated.

Plagregen, m. (-5; —), shower, down-pour. plaubern, to chat, talk.

Bortion', f. (-en), portion, plate (of meat, etc.).

Post, f. (-en), post, postoffice.

Postbote, m. (-n; -n), postman. prächtig, magnificent.

Preis, (-es; -e), price; prize.

preisen (120), to praise.

Procent', n. (-es; -e), per cent.

Professor, m. (-3; -en), professor.

promovieren, to take a degree, graduate. Bublifum. n. (-3), public;

Publitum, n. (-3), public; audience.

Bunft, m. (-es; -e), point; — zehn Uhr, at ten o'clock precisely.

Bünttlichteit, punctuality

2

Qua'berstein, m. (-es; -e), cut-stone, freestone, quellen (r24; sein), to gush.

98

Rabatt, m. (-e3; -e), discount, abatement.

Rand, m. (-es; "er), edge, rim, brim.

Rat, m. (-e3), counsel, advice.

raten (188), to counsel, advise.

Rauch, m. (-es), smoke.

Roupe, f. (-n), caterpillar. Rechnen, n. (-3), arithmetic.

Rechnung, f. (-en), account, bill, reckoning; calculation; ein Stric burch bie —, disappointment; schreiben Sie bas auf meine —, charge that to me.

recht, right.

Recht, n. (indecl.), right;
— haben, to be right, be in
the right.

rechts, to (on) the right.

punctually. Rebe, f. (-n), speech; ora-

reben, to speak, talk.

Reformation', f. (-en), reformation.

Regen, m. (-3), rain.

Re'gentropfen, m. (-6; --), drop of rain.

regieren, to reign, rule, govern.

Regierung, f. (-en), government, reign; unter ber —, in the reign (of).

Regiment', n. (-es; -er), regiment.

regnen, to rain.

reiben (120), to rub.

reich, rich, wealthy.

reichen, to reach, hand.

reif, ripe.

Meise, f. (-n), journey, voyage; eine - machen, to

take a journey.
Reisetosten, pl., travelling-

expenses.
reisen (sein and haben), to

travel, journey, go. Reifenbe (adj. subst.), traveller.

reißen (118), to tear, pull. reiten (118; fein), to ride.

rennen (99; fein), to ruo,

Restauration', f. (-en), eating-house, restaurant.

retten, to save, rescue; ich rettete ihm bas Leben, I saved his life.

reuen (impers.), to repent; es reut mich (gen.), I repent (of).

Rheumatismus, m. (gen. —), rheumatism.

richtig, right, correct; correctly; — gehen, to be correct (of a time-piece); auf bie —e Beife, in the right way.

Richtung, f. (-en), direction. riechen (123), to smell. Riefe, m. (-n; -n), giant.

Minbfleisch, n. (-es), beef. Ring, m. (-es; -e), ring. ringen (144), to wring.

rinnen (158), to run, flow. Rod, m. (-es; "e), coat.

Roman', m. (-3; -e), romance, novel.

Nomer, m. (-3; --), Roman

(subst.).
rot, adj. ("er), red.

Rot'fappon, n. (-5; —), L'fappon, n. (-5; —), Sot'neen, m. (-e5), redwine.

Mübe, f. (-n), turnip; gelbe
—, carrot.

Rubin', m. (-es; -e), ruby.

rubern, to row.
rufen (188), to call.
rufig, quiet.
Ruhm, m. (-e8), praise.
rund, round.
Rufie. m. (-n: -n). Russian.

Ø.

Saal, m. (-es; Säle), hall. Sade, f. (-n), thing, matter, affair, business; bift bu beiner — gewiß, are you certain of your information, etc.

fagen, to say, tell; — hören, to hear say, hear.

Sahne, f., cream.

fammtlid), complete (of literary works).

Santt Lorenz, m., St. Lawrence.

Sangerin, f. (-nen), (female) singer.

Sara, f. (-3), Sarah.

Sat, m. (-e3; "e), sentence. faufen (123), to drink (of beasts).

saugen (App. L), to suck.

Shabe(n), m. (-ns; "n), damage, injury, harm, mischief; es ist schoe, it is a pity.

©ஞ்āfer, 'm. (-த்; —), shepherd.

schaffen (186), to create. schallen (123), to sound, re-

sound. Shalter, m. (-3; --), wick-

et, ticket-office. schämen (sich ; gen. or über

+ acc.), to be ashamed.

scheiben (120), to separate.

scheinen (120; dat.), to shine; appear, seem.

schelten (r59), to scold.

ichenten (dat. of person and acc. of thing), to give, make a present of, present. fcheren (131, B.), to shear. fchiden, to send.

schieben (131), to shove, push. schießen (123), to shoot.

Schiss, n. (-es; -e), ship, vessel.

Schilb, n. (-es; -er), signboard.

Schilbfröte, f. (-11), tortoise. schinden (App. L.), to flay. Schlacht, f. (-en), battle.

fclasen (188), to sleep; sich — legen, to retire to rest, go to bed.

Schlafrod, m. (-es; "e), dressing-gown.

Schlaf'zimmer, n. (-3; -), bedroom.

fclagen (186), to beat, strike. fclecht, bad; badly.

fcleichen (118; fein), to slink, sneak.

fcleifen (118), to sharpen, grind.

jdleißen (App. L.), to slit. jdließen (123), to lock, shut, close; conclude, finish.

folimm, bad.

schlitten, m. (-3; —), sleigh.

Schlitt'schuhlaufen, n. (-3), (aet of) skating.

Schloß, n. (-es; "er). castle,

schmeden, to taste, relish; wie schmedt Ihnen bieses? how do you like (the taste of) this?

Schmeichelei', f., flattery. ichmeicheln (dat.), to flatter. ichmeifen (118), to throw.

schmeißen (118), to throw, fling. schmelzen (124), to melt, smelt.

Schmerz, m. (-es or -ens; -en), pain.

chnauben (App. L.), to snort. Schnee, m. (-3), snow.

ichneiben (118), to cut; reap; ichwarz ("er), black.

fich in bie Hand -, to cut i one's hand.

Schneiber, m. (-3; —), tailor.

ichneien, to snow.

fcnell, quick; quickly.

Schnellzug, m. (-es; "e), express-train.

[djon, already, as early as, readily, easily, indeed; — lange, for a long time (past).

joon, fine, beautiful, handsome.

Schönheit, f. (-en), beauty. Schotte, m. (-n; -n), Scotchman.

ichrauben (App. L.), to screw. ichreuten (167), to be startled. ichreiben (120), to write (to, dat. or an + acc. of pers.).

fchreien (120), to cry, scream, shout.

ichreiten (118; fein), to stride, step, stalk.

Schriftsteller, m. (-3; -), writer, author.

Schritt, m. (-es; -e), stride, step, pace.

Schu'bert, m. (-5), Schubert (German musician).

Schuh, m. (-es; -e), shoe. Schuld, f., guilt; (-en), debt; ichuld an etwas fein, to be to blame for anything.

Schule, f. (-n), school: Schüler, m. (-3; —), pupil,

scholar, m. (-2; —), pupil, scholar, school-boy.
Schuster, m. (-3; —), shoe-

maker, cobbler. føjitteln, to shake.

ichwach ("er), weak, infirm. Schwache, f. (-n), weakness, infirmity.

Schwager, m. (-5; "), brother-in-law.

Schwalbe, f. (-in), swallow. schwären (App. L.), to fester. schwarz ("er), black.

schweigen (120), to be silent, keep silence.

Schweigen, n. (-6), keeping silence, (act of) silence. Schweiz (bie, gen. ber

Schweiz), Switzerland. fchwellen (124; fein), to swell. fchwer, heavy, hard, difficult. fchwerlich, hardly, scarcely.

Schwester, f. (-n), sister. schwimmen (158), to swim. Schwimmen, n. (-6), swim-

ming (act of). schwinben (144), to vanish. schwingen (144), to swing; sich

—, to leap, bound. schwören (131), to swear.

jowiil, sultry, close. See, m. (-3; -en), lake.

Seereise, f. (-11), voyage.
Segelschiff, n. (-12; -12), sail-

ing-vessel, ship. Jehen (181), to see, perceive; look, behold.

fehr, very, very much, exceedingly.

fein, feine, fein, his, its, one's. fein (52; fein), to be; (as aux.), to be, have.

feit (46), since; — wann, since when, how long; acht Tagen, for a week past.

feitbem', conj., since. felbft, self; even.

fenben (99), to send. Serviette, f. (-n), tablenapkin.

feten, to set, put, place; fid)

—, to seat one's self, sit
down.

fith, pron. refl. acc. and dat., one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; to himself, themselves, etc.; recipr., one another.

fie, she, it; her, it; they; them.

Gie (for bu and ihr), you.

fieben, seven. Sieb'entel, n. (-8: -), seventh part.

fieben (123), to boil. Silber, n. (-3), silver.

fingen (144), to sing.

finten (144 : fein) to sink. finnen (158), to reflect.

figen (181), to sit.

Stlave, m. (-n; -n), slave. Smaragb, m. (-es; -e), emerald.

fo, so, thus, in such a manner, indeed (not translated in the apodosis to a conditionul clause); -eben, just, just now; - ein, eine, ein, such a.

fobalb, as soon as.

fofort, immediately, directly. jogar, even.

Sohn, m. (-es; "e), son.

fold (er), adj. and pron., such.

Solbat', m. (-en ; -en), sol-

follen (196-202; duty or obligation), to be in duty bound, be to; shall; be said.

Sommer, m. (-3; -), sum-

fonbern (after negatives only), but.

Sonnabend, m. (-es; -e), Saturday.

Sonne, f. (-n), sun.

Sonntag, m. (-es; -e), Sun-

foujt, else, otherwise; not), any more, any other, any besides.

fouftig, other, different.

Sophie, f. (-ns), Sophia. forg'fältig, careful; care-

fully. fpät, late.

fpagieren (also - gchen, 188), to take a walk, go for a

walk, go walking: - fab: ren (186), to go for a drive. Spagier'gang, m. (-es; me), walk; einen - machen, to take a walk.

Sped, m. (-es), bacon. fpeien (120), to spit.

Speifefarte, f. (-n), bill of fare.

fpeisen, to eat, dine.

Sperling, m. (-es: -e). sparrow.

fpielen, to play, fpinnen (158), to spin.

fpleigen (App. L.), to split. Sprache, f. (-11), language.

Sprachtalent', n. (-es; -e), talent for (learning) lan-

guages. Sprach'ftubium, n. (-5; -ien), linguistic study.

fprechen (167), to speak, say, tell; to speak or talk to or with.

Sprechen, n. (-8), speaking (act of), speech.

Sprichwort, n. (-es; "er), proverb. fpriegen (123), to sprout.

fpringen (144; fein), to spring, leap, jump. St. Lo'reng, m., St. Law-

rence. Staat, m. (-es; -en), state.

Stabt, f. ("e), town, city. Stabt'thor, n. (-es; -e), town-gate, city-gate.

Ctabt'abr, f. (-en), townclock.

Stahl, m. (-es), steel.

Stanb, m. (-es; "e), stand; condition; ju -e tommen, to be completed, be done; im -e fein, to be able, be in a position to.

ftart ("er), strong, powerful; severe.

ftatt'finben (144), to take place, happen.

flechen (167), to sting. fteden (App. L.), to stick. fteben (186: fein or haben), to stand, be: be situated. ftehlen (167), to steal.

fteigen (120; fein; auf + acc.), to climb, mount, ascend, descend, get down or off, alight.

Stelle, f. (-n), place, spot. ftellen, to put, place, set (upright).

fterben (150; fein), to die. ftieben (App. L.), to scatter. ftill, still; quiet.

Stimme, f. (-n), voice. ftinfen (App. L.), to stink. Stod, m. (-es; "e), stick, cane.

ftoren, to interrupt, disturb, trouble.

ftogen (188), to push, kick, strike, bump, knock. Strafe, f. (-n), street, road. ftreichen (118), to stroke. ftreiten (118), to quarrel.

ftreng, severe; severely. Strid, m. (-es; -e), stroke. dash; ein - burch bie Rechnung, disappointment.

Strom, m. (-es; "e), stream, current.

Strumpf, m. (-es; "e), stocking.

Stüd, m. (-es; -e), piece. Stüdden, n. (-3; -), little piece, morsel, bit.

Stubent', m. (-en ; -en), student. Studium, n. (-s; Studion),

study.

ftubieren, to study. Stubieren, n. (-5), studying

(act of). Stuhl, m. (-es; "e), chair. Stunde, f. (-n), hour, les-

Stundenzeiger, m. (-s; -), hour-hand.

fubtrahieren, to subtract. fuchen, to seek, search, look

Suppe, f. (-n), soup, broth.

T

ta'bein, to blame, find fault

Eag, m. (-e8; -e), day; acht

—e, a week; feit acht—en,
for a week past; ein — um
ben anbern, every other
(alternate) day; alle brei

—e, every third day.

Ta'gesan'bruch, m. (-e8), day-break.

Cante, f. (-n), aunt.

tapfer, brave, valiant; bravely, valiantly.

Lapferteit, f., courage, va-

Lafche, f. (-n), pocket.

Taffe, f. (-n), cup.

Laucher, m. (-5; —), diver. tauen, to thaw.

Teil, m. (-es; -e), part, por-

teilen, to divide, share. teils, partly, in part; teils

... teils, partly... partly. Telegraph', m. (-en; -en),

telegraph. Telephon', n. (-3; -e), tele-

phone. Teller, m. (-3; —), plate.

Σερριά, m. (-εξ; -ε), carpet.

Testament', n. (-e3; -e), testament, (last) will.

tener, dear, costly.

Thal, n. (-es; "er), valley. Thaler, m. (-s; —), dollar.

That, f. (-en). deed; exploit, achievement.

thauen, to thaw.

Thee, m. (-8), tea.

Themfe, f., Thames.

Thor, n. (-es; -e), gate, gateway.

Thor, m. (-en; -en), fool. Thron, m. (-es; -e), throne.

thun (196), to do. Thür(e), f. (-n), door.

Tier, n. (-es; -e), beast,

animal. Tisch, m. (–e3; –e), table.

Titel, m. (-3; -), title; mit

—, with title (printed on the back).

Tochter, f. ("), daughter. Töchterchen, n. (-5; —), little daughter.

Torontoer, adj., (of) To-

tot, dead.

töten, to kill. träge, idle, lazy, indolent.

tragen (186), to carry. traurig, sad, sorrowful, me-

lancholy. Trauning, f. (-en), marriage

Eraunng, f. (-en), marriage (-ceremony).

treffen (167), to hit, happen upon, meet with; hit upon, fall in with.

treiben (120), to drive.

Treppe, f. (-n). stairs, stair-

case. treten (181), to tread, step.

treu, faithful, true. triefen (123), to drop, drip.

trinten (144), to drink. Trinten, n. (-6), (act or habit of) drinking.

Trint'gelb, n. (-es; -er), drinking-money, gratuity, tip.

troß (223), in spite of. troßbem' was, in spite of

what. Trun'fenbold, m. (-es; -e), drunkard.

Tudy, n. (-es; "er and -e), cloth.

Tu'gend, f. (-en), virtue.

u

übel, n. (-\$; -), evil.

über (65), over, above, at, through, by way of; heute — brei Bochen, this day three weeks.

überhaupt', in general, generally; as a matter of fact, at any rate.

ü'bermorgen, the day after tomorrow.

überre'ben, to persuade. überfen'en, to translate; ins

Deutsche -, to translate into German.

Ü'berzieher, m. (-3; --). overcoat.

fibrig, remaining, left over; bas librige, the remainder, what is left; — bleiben, to be remaining or left.

übung, f. (-εn), exercise; practice.

Ufer, n. (-5; —), bank, shore.

Ilfir, f. (-en), clock, watch; um vier —, at four o'clock; wie viel — ift es? what o'clock is it?

unmög'lich, impossible; ich fann —, I cannot possibly. Un'recht, n. (-es), wrong; —

haben, to be (in the) wrong.
unfer, unfere, unfer, our.
unten, below, down-stairs.

unter (65), under, beneath, below; among; — ber Res gierung Clifabeths, in the reign of Elizabeth.

unterneh'men (167), to undertake.

Unterneh'men, n. (-5), enterprise, undertaking. Un'terfchieb, m. (-es; -e), difference.

Un'wahrheit, f. (-en), untruth, falsehood.

un'mahricheinlich, improbable. un'weit (gen.), not far from. un'aufrieben, discontented, dissatisfied

ur'teilen, to judge.

u. f. w., abbrev. for unb fo meiter, and so forth, etc.

Bater, m. (-5; "), father. perbergen (159), to conceal,

perbrennen (99), to burn, consume with fire.

perberben (150). to spoil (intr.); - (weak), to spoil (tr.), injure.

perbriegen (123), to vex. Bereinigten Staaten (bie), \$1., The United States. pergebens, in vain.

vergelten (159), to requite, reward.

pergeffen (181), to forget. Bergnügen, n. (-5), pleasure, delight, amusement.

Berhältnis, n. (-fes; -fe), circumstance.

perhei'raten (sich mit), to marry.

verlaufen, to sell; biefes haus ift ju -, this house is for sale.

perlaffen (188), to leave, desert, quit; sich - auf (+ acc.), to rely upon, depend

perleiben, to render disagreeable, spoil. perlegen, to hurt, wound

perlieren (131), to lose. Berluft, m. (-es; -e), loss. vermieten, to let, rent. permittelft (gen.), by means

verreisen, to go on a jour-

perreift, absent on a journey.

versammeln, to collect, assemble.

scribe. perfcmenben, to squander.

waste. perfcminben (144; fein), to

disappear, vanish.

periprecen (167), to promise. perstehen (:86), to understand; fich - auf (+ acc.), to be a judge (of).

perstorben, deceased. persucen, to try.

Bermanbte, m. and f. (adj. subst.), relative.

perzeihen (120; dat.), to pardon, excuse.

Bergeibung, f. (-en), pardon, forgiveness; um - bitten, to beg pardon.

perameifeln, to despair.

Better, m. (-3; -n), cousin. piel (mebr, meift), much, many, a great deal of; wie - Uhr. what o'clock.

vielleicht', perhaps, possibly. vielmal, vielmals, many times, frequently, often. pier, four.

Biertel, n. (-3; -), fourth part, quarter.

Biertelftun'be, f. (-n), quarter of an hour. pierzebn, fourteen: - Tage,

a fortnight. Bioloncell', n. (-es; -e), vio-

loncello. Bogel, m. (-3; "), bird. voll (gen. or von), full.

pollen'ben, to finish, complete. non (46), of, from, by, about, concerning.

vor (65), before, of, in front of, ago; - acht Tagen, a week ago.

porbei, over, past. porbeigehen (188), to go by, pass by.

porbereiten (fich), to prepare (for, ouf + acc.).

verschreiben (120), to pre- | vorfahren (186 ; fein), drive up to the door, etc. porgeben (188; fein), to go

(or be) fast (of a timepor'gestern, the day before

vesterday. porhaben, to contemplate, in-

tend. Borhang, m. (-es; "e), cur-

tain.

voria, preceding, last. vorläufig (adv.), temporarily, for the present.

vorlefen (181; + dat. of person), to read to.

Bormund, m. (-es; "er), guardian.

Borrat, m. (-es; "e), stock, provision. porsichtig, cautious, prudent.

Borftabt, f. ("e), suburb. . porftellen, to present, intro-

porteilhaft, advantageous. porüber, past.

porüberfließen (131; fein), to flow past.

porübergeben (188; fein), to go past, pass by; am haufe -, to go by, go past, the

porgieben (131), to prefer

933.

wachsen (186), to grow. Bagen, m. (-\$; -), waggon,

carriage. magen (131, B.), to weigh.

mablen, to choose, select. mahr, true, real; nicht -?

am (I, etc.) not? is it not

mahren, to last, continue. mährenb (gen.; 223), during; while.

Bahrheit, f. (-en), truth. mabriceinlich (adv.), proBaifenhaus, n. (-es; ⁿer), orphan-asylum. Balb, n. (-es; ⁿer), forest, wood.

Banb, f. ("e), wall. Banb(e)rer, m. (-5; —), traveller.

mann? when?

warm ("er), warm.

warten (auf + acc.), to wait for.

warum, why, wherefore.

mas, what, that which, which, that; — für ein, eine, ein, what kind of a, what.

waschen (186), to wash. Basser, n. (-5; -), water;

311 —, by water.

weben (131), to weave. wechfelhaft, changeable. weden, to wake, awake,

waken. Bed'uhr, f. (-en), alarmclock.

weber, neither; — . . . nod,

Weg, m. (-es; -e), way, road; sich auf ben — machen, to set out, be off.

megen (gen.; 223), on account of, because of, for the sake of, for.

Beib, n. (-es; -cr), woman; wife.

weichen (118), to yield.

Beibe, f. (-11), pasturage, pasture.

Beihnachten, pl., Christmas. weil, because.

Bein, m. (-es; -e), wine.

weinen, to weep, cry. Weinkarte, f. (-11), wine-

card. weise, adj., wise.

Beise, f. (-n), manner, mode, way; auf biese —, in this way.

weisen (120), to point out, show.

weiß, white.

weiter, farther, further. Beizen, m. (-3; -), wheat. welcher, welche, welches, rel.

prov., who, which, that; interrogative adj., which? what?; -, adj. (in exclamations), what a! what!

Belt, f. (-eu), world; auf ber —, in the world.

wem, dat. of wer, to whom? wenden (99), to turn; sid —,
to apply (to, an + acc.).
wenig, little, few.

wenn, when, whenever, as soon as; if; — aud, even if.

wer, who; he who, whoever; who?

merben (159), to sue.

werben (159), to become, grow; (as aux. of the passive voice, 112-114), to be;
— aus, to become of.

wersen (159), to throw. Bert, n. (-e3; -e), work. wessen, whose; whose?

weshalb, wherefore? why? Better, n. (-6), weather; bei biesem —, in this weather. wider (acc.; 34), against,

contrary to.
wie, how; how?; — fehr
and, however much.

wieber, again, once more. wieberjehen (181), to see again, meet again.

Die'berschen, n. (-5), meeting again; auf —, good-bye till we meet again.

wiegen (131), to weigh. Bilhelm, m. (-3), William. Bille, m. (-113), will; wish; um...willen (gen.), for the sake of.

Dinb, m. (-es; -e), wind. winben (144), to wind. windy, windy.

Binter, m. (-3; --), winter. wir, we.

wirflich, adv., really, truly. Birtin, f. (-nen), hostess; landlady.

wissen (196), to know (said of knowledge); nicht baß ich wüßte, not that I know of.

Biffenschaft, f. (-en), science.

wissentlich, knowingly.
wo? where; where?
Soche, f. (-11), week.

wohl, pred. adj., well (of health); mir ift nidit — zu Mut, I do not feel well; —, adv., well, then, indeed, I suppose; ja —, yes, to be sure.

wohnen, to dwell, live, reside. Bohnung, f. (-en), dwelling, house, residence.

wollen (196-202), to will, desire, wish, want, intend, mean, like; — Sie ein Glaß Baffer? will you have a glass of water?

woran, whereon, on which, on what, of what.

worauf, whereon, on which, for which, on what.

what, of what.

worin, wherein, in which, in what.

Bort, n. (-es; "er and -e), word.

worliber? about what? at what? over what?

wundern (fid), to wonder, be astonished (at, fiber + acc.); es wundert mid (impers.), I wonder.

Bunid, m. (-cs; "e), wish. wüniden, to wish, desire, want; Gliid —, to congratulate, wish success.

Burm, m. (-es; "er), worm.

Burgel, f. (-n), root. But, f., rage, fury. wütenb, furious.

achlen, to pay. Rahn, m. (-es; "e), tooth. Rahnweh, n. (-es), toothache. sebn, ten. Beichen, n. (-3; -), sign. seigen, to show. geihen (120), to convict. Reit, f. (-en), time : su allen -en, in all ages. Beitung, f. (-en), newspaper. gerreißen (118), to tear (to pieces). gerrinnen (158), to vanish, run away (of liquids).

take. Rimmer, n. (-3; -), room, gu (46), to, at ; - meinem Ontel, to my uncle's : berfelben Reit, at the same time: adv., too: closed. aubringen (99), to pass, spend (said of time). Buder, m. (-5), sugar. anerst', first, first of all. sufolge (gen. or dat.; 223), in consequence of, according to. [fied. aufrieben, contented, satis-Bug, m. (-es: "e), train. jumachen, to shut, close. jurudbringen (99), to bring

gieben (131), to draw; pull, gurudbleiben (120; fein), to remain behind; remain at home. jurudfommen (167), to return, come back. surudlegen, to put by, lay up. aufammen, together. aufammenftoßen (188), to collide. aufchiden, to send to (dat.). sufchließen (123), to lock up, fasten, shut. Swed, m. (-e3; -e), aim, obiect. amei, two. ameitens, secondly. amingen (144), to force. amifchen (65), between. amölf, twelve.

ENGLISH-GERMAN.

NOTE. - The government of verbs is given only where it differs from English usage, on that -, besmegen, bes=

halb.

able, fühig, geschidt; to be -, tonnen, 196; im Stan= be fein. about, prep. (around), um, 34, 226, (a); (the person), bei, 46, 226, (d); adv., (nearly), ungefähr; etwa, 226, (b), (c); to be - to, im Begriffe fein. above, prep., über, 65. absent, abmefenb; ---mindedly, gerftreut. abuse, v., mighan'beln. accept, annehmen, 167. accompany, begleiten

account; on - of, wegen,

223; halb(en), halber, 223;

(tr.).

accusation, Antlage, f. (-n). accuse (of), anflagen (gen. of thing), beidulbigen (gen. of thing). accustomed, gewohnt; to be -, bie Bewohnheit haben. acknowledge, anerfennen, acquaintance, Befanntichaft, f. (-en); to make the of, fennen lernen. acquit (of), logfprechen (167; gen. of thing). act; to - amiss, mif banbeln. add, abbieren. address, subst., Abreffe, f.

admire, bemimbern, advance, porruden (intr.). advantage, Borteil, m. (-es; advantageous, vor'teilhaft. advice, Rat, m. (-es). advise, raten (188; dat.). affair, Gode, f. (-11). afraid; to be - (of); fich fürchten (vor + dat.). after, nad, 46. afternoon, Rachmittag, m. (-es; -e).

address, v., aureben.

afterwards, nachher, hernach, barauf. again, wieber, nochmals. against, wiber, acten, 34. ago, vor (prep. + dat.), 65;

many years -, vor vielen Nahren: a week - to-day, beute por acht Tagen. agreeable, angenehm. ail, fehlen; what -s you? mas fehlt Ihnen? alas! ad)! all (the), all, Mues; aller, alle, alles ; - the same, einerlei. allow, erlauben (dat.) ; laffen, 188; to be -ed, bürfen, 196. Alma (river), Alma, f. almost, faft, beinabe. alone, allein. along, längs, entlang (223, 18, 19). alphabet, Alphabet', n. (-es; -e). already, fcon. also, auch. always, immer. America, Amerita, n. (-3). amiss: to act -, mig'han= beln, 209. among, amongst, unter, 65. a, an, ein, eine, ein. ancient, alt; the -s, bie Miten, pl. and, unb. anecdote, Unefbote, f. (-n). angry, bofe; be - at, bofe fein auf (+ acc.). animal, Tier, n. (-es; -e). another (a different one), ein anberer; (one more), noch ein, eine, ein. answer, subst., Untwort, f. (-en). answer, v., antworten (dat.); beantworten (acc. of thing, dat. of pers.). answering (act of), Untwors ten, n. (-6). ant, Ameife, f. (-n). any (partitive, 2, 2); irgenb, ein, eine, ein; -thing, ir: genb etwas, etwas; thing but, nichts weniger als; pl., welche, einige;

not -body, not -one, nies manb: not -, fein, feine, apartment, Gemach, n. (-es; "er). appear, icheinen, ericheinen, 120. apple, Upfel, m. (-3; "); - - tree, Apfelbaum, m. (-es; "e). apply to anyone, fich an jes manben (acc.) menben, 99. appoint (as), ernennen (99; gum, gur). approval, Beifall, m. (-es). April, April', m. (-3). architect, Architett', m. (-en; -en). arm, Arm, m. (-es; -e); -s, pl., Baffen. army, Armee, f. (-n). arrival, Antunft, f. ("e). arrive, antommen (167: fein). art, Runft, f. ("e). article, Arti'tel, m. (-5; -). artillery, Artillerie, f.; Ge= fdüt, n. (-es). artist, Rünftler, m. (-3; -). as (241, 8-11), als; wie; fo; ba; - soon -, fobalb (mie); - a, als; - ... -, (eben)fo . . . wie or als. ascend, auffteigen, fteigen, 120. ashamed; to be - of, fich fcamen (gen. or über + acc.). ask, fragen (186); - for. bitten (181, um); verlangen (nad). asking questions (act of), Fragen, n. (-6). assert, behaupten. assist, beifteben (186; fein; dat.). astonish; to be -ed (at), fich munbern (über + acc.). astonishing, erstaunenb. at (of locality), in, an, auf, beat, v., ichlagen (186).

au, bei, 227, (b); (of price) um, 227, (c); not - all, gar nicht; - my brother's, bei meinem Bruber : last, - length, enblich. attack, v., angreifen, 118. subst., Angriff, m. (-es;-e). attempt, subst., Berfuch, m. (-es: -e). attendant, Begleiter, m. (-3; —). attention, Aufmertfamteit: to pay -. Acht geben (181; auf + acc.). attentive, aufmertfam. August, August', m. (-3). aunt, Tante, f. (-n). author (of a particular work), Berfaffer, m. (-3: -). autumn, Berbft, m. (-es; -e). avoid, meiben, vermeiben, 120. away, fort, abmefenb ; from home, von Saufe. B. back, adv., jurild. ' bad, badly, folecht. bag, Gad, m. (-es; "e). bank, Bant, f. (-en). bark (of trees, etc.), Baums rinbe, f. basket, Rorb, m. (-es; "e). battery, Batterie, f. (-n). battle, Schlacht, f. (-en). be, fein (52); merben (159; as aux. of passive, 112, R. 5); ftehen (186); there is, there are, es giebt, es ift, etc., 220; (of health) fich befinden (144); how are you? wie geht es Ihnen? I am to, ich foll. bear, subst., Bar, m. (-en; -en). bear (bring forth), v., ge= baren (167).

Au, 227 (a); (or time) um.

beautiful, fcon; the -, bas Soone. beauty, Schönheit, f. (-en).

because, meil; ba.

become, merben (159); ftehen (186; dat.).

bed, Bett, n. (-es; -en); to go to - au Bette geben. fich folafen legen; in -, au Bette.

bee, Biene, f. (-n). beef, Rinbfleifd, n. (-es). beer, Bier, n. (-es; -e).

before, prep., por (65; dat. or acc.); conj., bepor; ebe (baß).

beg (ask), bitten (181; for, um); to - pardon, um Bergeihung bitten; - (for alms), betteln.

beggar (-man), Bettler, m. (-3; -); -- woman, Bett= lerin, f. (-nen).

begin, anfangen (188); be= ainnen (158).

behave, fich betragen (186). behind, hinter (65; dat. or

believe, glauben (dat, of per-

belong (to), gehören (dat.). beloved, geliebt, mert.

below, prep., unter (dat. or acc. ; 65) ; unterhalb (gen.; 223); adv.; unten.

besides, adv., außerbem.

between, swifchen (dat. or acc.; 65).

beverage, Betrant, n. (-es; -e).

bid, v. (order), beigen (188).

big, groß. bill, Rechnung, f. (-en).

bird, Bogel, m. (-3; "). bird-cage, Bogelbauer, n.

(-3; -). birth-day, Geburtstag, m.

(-es: -e); as a - - present, jum Geburtstag. .

bite. v., beifen (118). bitter, bitter,

black, adi., ichmara ("er).

black, v. (of boots), michfen. blame. v., tabeln.

blindly, blinblings. blow, v., blafen (188).

blue, blau.

board; on - (of a ship), am Barb.

boat, Boot, n. (-es; -e or Böte).

bodily, förperlich.

bombard, bombarbieren. bone, Anoden, m. (-5; -).

book, Buch, n. (-es; "er). bookseller, Buchanbler, m. (-3; -).

born, part., geboren (167). borne; having been - down by the stream, vom Stros

me fortgeriffen. botanist, Bota'niter, m. (-3;

both, beibe; alle beibe, bei=

bes. bough, Aft, m. (es; "e). Boston, Bofton, n. (-5); the

— train, ber Zug von (nach) Bofton.

boy, Anabe, m. (-n; -n). brave, tapfer.

bread, Brot, n. (-es; -e). break, brechen (167); through, einbrechen.

breakfast, v., frühftuden; subst., Frühftud, n. (-es).

bridge, Brüde, f. (-n). bring, bringen (99); holen; to - with one, - along,

mitbringen; to - in, bereinbringen; to - up, ber= aufbringen.

broad, breit.

brother, Bruber, m (-3; "). brother-in-law, Schwager, m. (-3; ").

build, bauen.

bishop, Bifchof, m. (-es; "e). | building, Gebaube, n. (-s; -); (act of), Bauen, n. (-3).

bullet, Rugel, f. (-n).

burn, brennen (99; intr.); verbrennen (99; tr. and intr.).

business, Befcaft, n. (-es;

business - matter, Gefchafts= angelegenheit, f. (-en).

but, aber; allein (241, 1); fonbern (only after a negative, 236, R. 1).

button, Anopf, m. (-es; "e). buy, taufen.

buying (action of), Raufen, n. (-g).

by, 228; (near by), bei (dat.); (of agent with pass. voice) von (dat.); (of means or instrument) burd (acc.). mit (dat.); - rail(way). mit ber Gifenbahn.

C.

call (out), rufen 188; (name), nennen, 99; be -ed, beis fen. 188.

call, subst. (visit), Befuch, m. (-es; -e).

can, fonnen, 196-202.

cannon, Ranone, f. (-n). capable, fähig (gen., or + au).

capital, subst., Sauptftabt, f. (#e).

cardinal-point (see point). care, Acht, f.; to take -, sich

in Acht nehmen (167); do you - to? haben Gie Luft? for all I -, meinetwegen. carpet, Teppid, m. (-es; -e). carriage, Bagen, m. (-6; —).

carry, tragen, 186; to - up, hinauftragen.

case, Fall, m. (-es; "e). castle, Schlog, n. (-es; "er)

cat, Rate, f. (-11). catch, fangen, 188; - cold, fic erfalten. cause; to - to, laffen (188; + infin.). celebrate, feiern; -d, be= riihmt. century, Jahrhundert, n. (-es; -e). certain, -ly, gewiß, jeben= falls. chair, Stuhl, m. (-es; "e). chancellor, Rangler, m. (-3; —). · change, v. tr., anbern; v. intr., fid anbern. Charles, Rarl, m. (-9); little -. Rarlden, n. (-3). charming, adj., reizenb cheap, billig. cheese, Raje, m. (-5; -). cherry, Riride, f. (-n). chicken, Suhn, n. (-es; "er). child, Rind, n. (-es; -er). Christmas, Beihnachten, pl. church, Rirde, f. (-11). Cinderella, Afchenputtel, n., city, Stadt, f. ("e). claim to be, wollen, 196. clear, flar. clever, gefchidt. climate, Klima, n. (-3). climb up, hinaufflettern. cloak, Mantel, m. (-s; "). clock, llhr, f. (-en). close, jumaden; foliegen, aufchließen, 123. cloth, Tud, n. (-es; -e or "er). clothes, Rleiber, n. pl. (see Rleib). cloud, Bolte, f. (-n). coachman, Ruticher, m. (-6; —). coal, Roble, f. (-11). coat, Rod, m. (-es; "e). coffee, Raffee, m. (-8). cold, falt ("er); to catch -, fich ertalten.

colour Farbe, f. (-n). combat, Rampf, m. (-es; "e). come, tommen (167; fein); - in, hereinfommen; here, bierbertommen ; down, beruntertommen ; - out, beraustommen : back, jurildfommen; again, miebertommen; what is to -. bas Bevorftebenbe. coming (act of), Rommen, n. command, v., befehlen (167; dat.). commandment, Gebot, n., (-es; -e). company, Gefellichaft, f., (-en). complain, flagen (über + complete, vollständig. concert, Rongert', n. (-es; -e). condition, Bebingung, f. (-en). confusion, Berwirrung, f. (-en); Befturgung, f. (-en). congratulate, Glüd münichen, gratulieren (dat.). conscious, bewußt (+ gen.). consequence; in - of, 3u= folge (223). consider, betrachten; halten für, 288. consist (of), befteben (aus), 186. contented, sufrieben. contradistinction, Gegenfas, m. (-es; "e). contrary; on the -, im Ges genteil. convent, Rlofter, n. (-s; "). convince (of), überzeu'gen (gen. of thing). cool, adj., fühl. copy, subst., Eremplar', n. (-es; -e); v., abichreiben, 120. corner, Ede, f. (-n).

correct, adj., richtig. cost, v., toften (+ acc. or dat. of person). counsellor, Ratgeber, m. (-3: —). Count, subst., Graf. m. (-en; -en). Countess, Grafin. f. (-nen). country, Lanb, n. (-es: "er); in the -, auf bem Lanbe; -- man, Bauer, m. (-n or -3; -11). couple, Paar, n. (-es; -e). courtier, Sofling, m. (-es; -e). cousin, Better, m. (-3; -n). cover, v., beden. create, fcaffen, 186. creditor, Gläubiger, m. (-3; creep, friechen, 123. crime, Berbrechen, n. (-3; crop, crops, Ernte, f. cry (call), rufen, 188; (weep), meinen. cup, Taffe, f. (-n). curtain, Borhang, m. (-es; #c). cut, ichneiben, 118; - off, abs fcneiben : to - one's hand, fich in bie Sanb fdneiben. D. danger, Gefahr, f. (-en). dangerous, gefährlich. dare, fich unterfteben, 186; bürfen, 196. daughter, Tochter, f. ("). day, Tag, m. (-es; -e); in broad -light, bei hellem Tage. dead, tot. deal; a great - of, viel. dealer, Sanbler, m. (-6; dear, fieb, teuer. dearly-bought, teuer.

decide, intr., fich entichließen, 123; -d, adj., entichieben. defence. Berteibigung, f. (-en). definition, Definition, f. (-en). deserve, perbienen. desire, Berlangen, n. (-6; - -); Luft, f. ("e). desperate, perameifelt. devote, mibmen. diamond, Diamant', m. (-6 or -en: -en). dictionary, Borterbuch, n. (-es; "er). die, fterben (159; fein). difference, Untericieb, m. (-es; -e). difficult, ichmer. dig, graben, 186. diligence, Fleiß, m. (-es). diligently, fleißig. dinner, Mittagseffen, n. (-6; disagreeable, unangenehm. disappoint, enttäuschen. discover, entbeden. discoverer, Entbeder, m. (-6; discovery, Entbedung, f. (-en). disgrace, Schanbe, f. (-11). displeased, unjufrieben. dissatisfied, unzufrieben. distant, entfernt. disturb, ftoren. diver, Taucher, m. (-6; -). divide, teilen. divine, göttlich. do, thun (196); (make), ma= then ; (as aux. is not translated by a separate form; see 31, R. 3); how - you -? wie geht es Ihnen? doctor, Dot'tor, m. (-9; Dotto'ren); (physician), Mrat, m. (-es; "e); that is Dr. B., bas ift ber Dottor

D.

VOCABULARY. dog, Sunb, m. (-es; -e). Bemühung, f. (-en); Ber= dollar, Thaler, m. (-6; -). door, Thur(e), f. (-en); at the -, an ber Thur(e). doubt, subst., 3meifel, m. (-3: -). doubt, v., ameifeln (an + dat.); I have no - of it, ich habe teinen Rweifel ba= down, berunter : - -stairs. unten. dozen, Dugenb, n. (-es; -e). -e). draw, gieben, 131; geichnen. dress, Aleib, n. (-es; -er). dress, v. tr., antleiben; v. intr., fich antleiben. drink, trinfen, 144; - (of beasts), jaufen, 123. drive, v. tr., treiben, 120; intr., (go in a conveyance), fahren (186; jein); go for a -, fpagieren jahren. driving (act of), Fahren, n. drop, Tropfen, m. (-5; -). drown, intr.; be -ed, er= trinten, 144. duke, Bergog, m. (-es; -e or He). during, mährenb (gen.; 223). duty, Pflicht, f. (-en). dwelling - house, Bohnhaus, n. (-e3; "er). each, jeber, jebe, jebes; other, einander. eagle, Abler, m. (-3; --). ear, Dhr, n. (-es; -en). early, früh. earn, verbienen. earth, Erbe, f.; - -quake, Erbbeben, n. (-s; -). east, Dft(en), m.

easy, -ily, leicht.

(said of beasts).

jud, m. (-3; -e). either, entweber; - . . . or, entweber . . . ober. elect (as), ermablen (jum). elm, Ulme, f. (-n). else, or -, fonft. embarrassment, Berlegen= heit, f. (-en). emperor, Raifer, m. (-6; -). endure, aussteben, 186. enemy, Keinb, m. (-es; engaged, perfact: I have another engagement, I am elsewhere, ich bin anders. wo verfagt. English, englisch; - (language), Englisch (bes Engs lifchen); into -, ins Eng= lifche. Englishman, Englanber, m. (-\$; --). enjoy, genießen (123; gen. or more generally acc.). enough, genug; be -, suffice, genügen. err, irren. escape, entfliehen (131; dat.). esteem, achten. etc., u. f. w. (abbreviation for: und fo meiter). Europe, Europa, n. (-1). even, adv. fogar, felbit; not -, nicht einmal'; - if, menn qud. evening, Abenb, m. (-es; -e). ever, je, jemals. every, jeber, jebe, jebes; -body, -one, jebermann, jeber, jebmeber, jeglicher ; - week, alle acht Tage. everywhere, überall. evil, subst., Bojes, n. exactly, gerabe, eben. examination, Egamen, n. (-6; eat, effen, 181; freffen, 181, examine, unterfuch'en, beob's effort, Anftrengung, f. (-en), achten.

exceeding, —ly, höchft, sehr, äußerst.
except, außer (dat.: 46).
excuse, v., entschuldigen (tr.), verzeihen (dat.); subst.,
Entschuldigung, f. (-en).
exercise, subst., Aufgabe, f. (-n).

expect, erwarten.
expense, Kosteu, pl.; at the
— of, auf Kosten.
eye, Auge, n. (-5; ^n).

fail (in business), fallieren. fall, fallen (188; fein). family, Familie, f. (-11). famine, Sun'gerenot, f. far, weit; as - as, bis nach (dat.); not - from, unfern, unmeit (gen.; 223, 23, 24). farewell, Lebewohl, n. (-8). fast (quick), gefdwinb, fdnell. father, Bater, m. (-3; "). favour, Gefallen, m. (-5; -). fear, Kurcht, f.; for -, aus Furcht. feather, Reber, f. (-n). February, Kebruar, m. (-3). feel, fühlen ; (perceive), emp= finben. 144; v. intr. (of health), fid befinben; ju Mute fein; I - ill, mir ift folecht ju Mute. few, wenig, wenige; a -, einige, ein paar. field, Felb, n. (-es; -er). fight, fechten, 124; ftreiten, 118. fill, füllen. find, finben, 144; - out, aus= finben; - again, wiebers finben. fine, fcon. finger, Finger, m. (-3; -). finish, vollen'ben; to have -ed (with), fertig fein (mit); -ed, fertig.

fire, Tener, n. (-s; -). first, adj., ber, bic, bas erfte; adv., querft, erftens : - of all, zuerft. fish, Fijd, m. (-cs; -e). fishing, Fifchen, n. (-8). fit for, - to, gut gu. five, fünf. flatter, fcmeicheln (dat.). flatterer, Schmeichler, m. (-6; --). fleet, subst., Flotte, f. (-n). floor, Fugboben, m. (-s; "). flour, Dehl. 22. (-es). flow, v., fliegen, 123, fein. flower, Blume, f. (-n). fly, fliegen 131, fein; - away, wegfliegen. follow, folgen (fein ; dat.). foot, Tug, m. (-es; "e). for, 229, prep. (in behalf of), für, acc., 34; (of purpose) ¿u, dat., 46; - reading, jum Lefen; (of past time) feit, dat., 46; - three days (past), feit brei Tagen; (of fut. time) auf, acc., 229, (b), 2; - three days (to come), auf brei Tage. forbid, verbieten (131; dat.). force, swingen, 144; to be -d, obliged (to), muffen, 106-202. ford, Furt, f. (-en). forest, Bald, m. (-e3; "er). forgery, Berfälfdung, f. (-en). forget, vergeffen, 181. forgive, vergeben (181; dat.). former, jener, jene, jenes. fort, Fefte, f. (-n). fortieth (part), Biergigftel, n. (-s; -). fortnight, vierzehn Tage. fortunately, gludlicherweise; glüdlicher Beife. fortune, good--, Blüd, n. (-es). four, vier.

fox, Fuchs, m. (-es: "e). France, Frantreich, n. (-8). Francis, Frang, m. (-eng). Fred(dv), Fris. m. (-ens). Frederick, Friebrich. (-5); Frederick-street, bie Friedrichftrafe. free, frei. freeze, 131, frieren. French, frangofifch; - Clanguage), Französisch. n. (bes Frangöfifden). fresh, frifch. Friday, Freitag. m. (-es: -e). friend, Freund, m. (-es: friendless, freundlos. friendly, freundlich. friendship, Freundichaft, f. (-en). frighten (terrify), erichreden; to be -ed, erichreden, 167. frog, Frofd, m. (-es; "e). from (direction), von, aus (dat.; 46); (cause) aus; (time) über + acc., 65; a week - to-day, heute über acht Tage ; (disease) an, .dat., 65; er ift an biefer Rrantheit geftor= ben, he died of that disease. front; in - of; vor (dat. or acc.; 65). fully, gana. funeral, Begrabnis, n. (-fes; -je). furious, -ly, wütenb. future, Butunft, f. G. gallop, galoppieren. garden, Garten, m. (-5; "). gardener, Gärtner, m. (-6;

-).
gather, fammeln.

-e).

general, General', m. (-es;

generally, gewöhnlich. generous, freigebig. gentleman. Serr m. (-11; -en). George, Georg, m. (-5). German, adj., beutich ; -(language), Deutsch, n. (bes Deutschen); in -. auf Deutsch; into -, ins Deutiche. Germany, Deutschland, n. (-3). get (become), merben, 159. girl, Dabchen, n. (-5; -). give, geben, 181; - up, guj= glad, froh (gen.); he -, sic) freuen ; I am -, es freut mid; I should be - to, should like to, ich möchte glass, Blas n. (-es; "er). glove, Handschuh, m. (-es; go, geben (188; fein); reffen; - away, meggeben, forts geben; - back, gurud. geben; - out, (bin)aus= gehen; - down, hin= untergeben; - up, bin= aufgeben; - past the place, an einem Plage vor= übergeben: - for, fetch, holen. goal, Biel, n. (-es; -e). God, god, Gott, m. (-es; "er). Goethe, Goethe, m. (-5). gold, subst., Golb, n. (-e3). gold, adj., golden, golben. good, gut; be - enough, haben Sie bie Gute ; morning, guten Morgen. goodness, Güte, f. graceful, -ly, anmutig. grand-parents, Großeltern,

pl.

grapes, Trauben, pl. grass, Gras, n. (-es; "er). grateful, bantbar. great, groß ("er, größt). green, grün; subst., Grün, n. (--3). grind, foleifen, 118. ground, Boben, m. (-6); Erbe. f. grow, machfen, 186; merben, 159. guess, erraten, 188. guest, Gaft, m. (-es; "e). habit, Gewohnheit, f. (-en); to be in the - of, bie Bes mobnheit haben gu, etc.; pflegen. half, adj., halb; - an hour, eine halbe Stunbe. half, subst., Salfte, f. (-n). hand, Sanb, f. ("e). handsome, fon. handwriting, Sanbidrift, f. (-en). hang, v. tr., hangen; v. intr., hangen, 188. happy, glüdlich. harhour, Safen, m. (-3; "). hard, ichmer. hardly, foum, hare, Safe, m. (-n; -n). harvest, subst., Ernte, f.; v., ernten. haste, Gile, f.; to make -, eilen. hat, Sut, m. (-es; "e). have, haben, 24; fein, 52, 53; laffen, 188, 200, 7; to to, be obliged to, müffen, 196-202; will you - a cup of tea? wollen Sie eine Taffe Thee? hay, Seu, n. (-es). he, er; ber; - who, berjes jenige melder, etc., mer. head, Ropf, m. (-es; "e). health, Gefunbheit, f.

hören.

hearing, Behör, n. (-cs). heart, Berg, n. (-ens; -en); by -, ausmenbia. heat, Site, f. heath, Seibe, f. (-n). heaven, Simmel, m. (-3: -). heavy, fdmer; -ily, fdmer; (of rain) ftart; heaviest of all, am allerichmerften. help, subst., Silfe. help, v., belfen (150; dat.); it cannot be -ed, es läft fic nicht anbern. Henry, Seinrich, m. (-3). her, pers. pron., fie (acc.); ihr (dat.). her, poss. adj., ihr, ihre, ihr. here, bier. hide, v., verbergen, 159. high, hod, höher, höchft (loses e in inflexion); to think -ly of, viel halten von, 188. him, ihn (acc.), ihm (dat.). himself (he), er felbft; (to) -, fit (acc. or dat.). his, poss. adj., fein, feine, fein. his, poss. pron., feiner, fei= ne, feines; ber, bie, bas - feine; ber, bie, bas fei= nige. hoarse, beifer. hold, halten, 188; - together, jufammenhalten. holiday, Feiertag, m. (-es; -e); -s, Ferien, pl. home, Beimat, f.; adv., nach Saufe; at -, gu Saufe; to go -, nach Saufe gehen, 188. honest, ehrlich, reblich, aufrichtig. honey, Honig, m. (-es). hope, subst., Soffnung, f. (-en); v., hoffen. horse, Pferb, n. (-es; -e). hospital, Sofpital, Spital, hear, hören; to - say, fagen n. (-es; "er). .

hostess, Birtin, f. (-nen). immediately, (jo)aleid. importance, Wichtigfeit. hot, beiß. hour. . Ctunbe, f. (-n); tenb. -hand, Stunbenzeiger, m. impossible, unmöglich. (-\$; --). house, Saus, n. (-es; "er); at vour -, bei Ihnen. auf bem Lanbe. how, wie; - do you do? mie geht es Ihnen? wie inch, Boll, m. (-es). befinben Gie fich ? however, aber; jeboch. howl, heulen. human, menichlich; - being. inform, mitteilen. Menfc, m. (-en ; -en). hundred, hunbert ; subst., (-B; --). Sunbert, n. (-es; -e). ink, Tinte or Dinte, f. hunger, Sunger, m. (-5). innocence, Unfoulb, f. hungry, hungrig; be -, Sunger haben. gen, 186. hunter, Jäger, m. (-\$; -). hunting (act of), Jagen, n. 223). (-8); (chase) 3agb, f.; go -, auf bie Jagb geben. acc.). huntsman, Jäger, m. (-6; (gen.; 223). **—**). hurry, Gile, f.; I am in a -, ich bin in ber Gile, ich habe es eilig. hurt, v., verlegen. husband, Mann, m. (-es; into, in (acc.; 65). #er). invent, erfinben, 144. hussar, Sufar, m. (-en or -8; (-en). invite, einlaben, 186. I. eifern. I. id. ice, Gis, n. (-es). idea, 3bee, f., Gebante, m.

(-ns; -n). idle, faul, trage. idleness, idling, Müßiggang, m. (-es). if, menn; (whether), ob. ignorant, unwiffenb. ill, frant; - - health, ichlechte Befunbheit, f. illness, Krantheit, f. (-en). imagine, fich (dat.) benten (99, 2).

important, wichtig, bebeus in. in. dat., 65; auf, dat., 65, 230, (a); - the country, induce, bewegen, 131, B. industrious, -ly, fleißig. industry, Fleiß, m. (-es). inhabitant, Ginmobner, m. inquire, fich erfunbigen, fras inside of, innerhalb (gen.; insist on, befteben (auf + instead of, ftatt, anftatt intend, beabsichtigen, por's haben, gebenten (99, 2). intention, Abficht, f. (-en). interrupt, unterbrech'en, 167. invitation, Einlabung, f. iron, Gifen, n. (-8); adi .. it (38, 39), es; er; fie; ber, bie, basfelbe; in -, barin; for -, bafür; of -, ba= von ; with -, bamit; to -, başu. its, poss. adj., fein, ibr. itself, es felbft.

J.

James, Jatob, m. (-8). January, Januar, m. (-5). John, Johann' m. (-8). journey, Reise, f. (-n).

joyous, fröhlich. July, Ju'li, m. (-3). jump, fpringen, 144; down, herunterfpringen. hinunterfpringen. June, Ju'ni, m. (-3). just, gerabe, eben; - now, foeben, - as, ebenfo.

justify, rechtfertigen.

K. kick, ftogen, 188. kind; what - of, mas für (ein, eine, ein); of many -s, vielerlei; adj., aut, freunblich; to be so - as to, fo gut fein unb. kindness, Gute, Gutigfeit, Freundlichteit, f. king, König, m. (-es; -e); King-street, bie Rönig= ftrake. kingdom, Rönigreid, n. (-es; knife, Meffer, n. (-6; -). knock down, herunterichla= gen. 186. know (of acquaintance), ten= uen, 99; (of knowledge acquired by mental effort) miffen, 196; - how, ton= nen, 196. knowledge, Renntnis, f. (-fe), Biffenfchaft, f. (-en). known, befannt. L.

lady, Dame, f. (-n); young - (Miss), Fraulein, n. (-3; --). lake, Gee, m. (-3; -en). landscape, Lanbicaft, f. (-en). language, Sprache, f. (-n). lantern, Laterne, f. (-n). large, groß ("er, größt). last, lett, porig; at -, enbs lich; v., bauern. late, fpät.

lately, neulich, fürglich. Latin, subst., Latein', n. (-5). latter, the -, jener. langh, lachen; - (at), lachen (gen. or über + acc.); he -s at (makes sport of) you, er macht fich über Gie lawver, Abpolat', m. (-en; -en). lay, legen. lazy, faul, trage. lead, Blei, n. (-es). lead. v., fübren. lead-pencil, Bleiftift, m. (-e3; -e). leaf, Blatt, n. (-es; "er). learn, Iernen. learned, adj., gelehrt. learning (action of), Lernen, n. (-3). least; at -, menigftens. leave, laffen, 188; - behind, desert, abandon, perlaffen; - out, auslaffen. left, lint; be -, übrig bleis leg, Bein, n. (-es; -e). lemonade, Limonabe, f. (-n). lend, leihen, 120. lesson, Aufgabe, f. (-n); Lets tion, f. (-en). let, laffen, 188. letter (of alphabet), Buch= ftabe, m. (-115; -n); (epistle), Brief, m. (-es; -e). liar, Lügner, m. (-5; -). library, Bibliothet', f. (-en). lie (be recumbent), liegen 181; - down, fich binlegen. life, Leben, n. (-5; -). lighten (flash), bligen. lightning, Blis, m. (-es; -e). like, mögen, 196-202; gern haben, 24; I should -, ich mochte (gern); to - to learn, gern fernen; I music, ich bin ein Freund pon Dufit; how do you -

London? mie gefällt Ihnen Loubon? lily, Lilie, f. (-n). Limburg, adj., Limburger. lion, Löme, (-n; -n). listen to, anbören (tr.). literature, Literatur', f. little (of size), flein; (of quantity) wenia. live, leben; (dwell), mohnen. living, le'bend, leben'big. locality, Gegenb, f. (-en). London, Lonbon, n. (-5); adi., Lonboner. long, adj., lang ("er); adv., lange ("r); have you been here -? find Gie icon lange bier? he has not been here for a - time, er ift lange nicht bier gemes fen: three months -er. noch brei Monate: po -er (lit., not more), nicht mehr. long for, v., fich fehnen nach. look for, fuchen, fuchen nach; - like, aussehen (wie or nach), 181; it -s (appears, seems) like rain, es fieht nach Regen aus; - up, binauffeben, 181. lose, perlieren, 131. lost, perforen. loud, -ly, laut. Louisa, Louise f. (-ns). love, v., lieben.

lower, unter, nieber (adjs.).

magnificent, prächtig.
majesty, Majeftät', f. (-en).
make, machen.
man, Mann, m. (-e8; "er);
— (human being), Menfch,
m. (-en; -en); —kind,
Menfch, m.; men (soldiers),
Solbaten; little —, Mänus
leiu, n. (-6; —).
manikin, Männlein, n. (-6;

-n).

(-es; -e).

metal, Detall', n. (-es; -e).

microscope, Mitroftoy', n.

middle, Mitte, f .; in the -

manner, Beife; in that -. auf bie Beife. many, viele; - a, - a one, mander, mande, mandes. March. Märs. m. (-es). Margaret, Margarete, f. (-ns). market, Martt, m. (-es; #e). marriage (-ceremony), Traus ung, f. (-en). married, perheiratet. marry, beiraten, perbeiraten (lich mit). marsh, Gumpf, m. (-es; "e). Mary, Marie, f. (-ns). matter, Sache, f. (-n); what is the -? was giebts? was ift los? what is the - with you? mas fehlt Ihnen? May (month of), Mai, m. (-es or -en). may, v., burfen ; tonnen ; mögen, 196-202. mayor, Bürgermeifter. (-3; --). me, mich (acc.), mir (dat.). mean; in the - time, unters beffen ; by -s of, permit= telft; permoge, gen., 223. mean, v., meinen; to - to, intend to, mollen, 196-202. meat, Fleisch, n. (-es). meet, v., begegnen (dat.; fein); to go to -, entges gen geben (188; dat.). meeting, Berfammlung, f. (-en). mental, geiftig. merchant, Raufmann, m. (-es; -leute). mere, -ly, blog. merry, merrily, luftig. messenger, Bote, m. (-n;

of summer, mitten im Sommer. mile, Meile, f. (-n). milk, Mild, f. mine, meiner, meine, meines; ber, bie, bas meine; ber, bie, bas meinige. minute, Minute, f. (-n); --hand, Minutenzeiger. an. (-3; --). misfortune, Ungliid, n. (-es). Miss (young lady), Fraulein, m. (-3; --). mistake, Fehler, m. (-5; mock, fpotten (gen. or über + acc.). moisten, beneten. moment, Augenblid, m. (-es; -e). monarch, Monard', m. (-en; -en). Monday, Montag, m. (-3; money, Gelb, n. (-es; -er). month, Monat, m. (-es; -c); a -- ago, por einem Dlo= nat. more, mehr; nod; one -, noch einer. morning, Morgen, m. (-es; -); in the -, bes Mor= gens ; good -, guten Mor= gen. mostly, meiftens. mother, Mutter, f. ("). mountain, Berg, m. (-es; -e). mourning, Traner, f. Mr., herr, m. (-n; -en). much, viel; very -, febr; as -, eben fo viel. music, Musit', f.

musician, Mu'fiter, m. (-6;

must, müffen, 196-202. my, poss. adj., mein, meine, nen).

mein (also expressed by noise, Larm, m. (-eg).

noble, ebel.

—),

dat. of pers. pron. + def. art.). myself (I), (id) felbft.

what is your -? wie heißen Sie ? nation, Nation, f. (-en). native town, Geburtsftabt, f. ("e). natural, natürlich. naughty, unartig. near, prep., neben (dat. or acc. ; 65). necessity, Not. f. need, v., branchen ; be in - of, bebürfen (196; gen. or acc.); in - of, beburf= tig (gen.). neglect, v., vernachläffigen. neighbour, Nachbar, m. (-3; -n); - (fem.). Nachbarin (-nen). neither, meber; - ... nor, weber . . . noch. nest, Deft, n. (-es; -er). never, nie; niemals; - vet. noch nie. new, neu, news, Nachricht, f. (-en). newspaper, Beitung, f. (-en). next, nächft (see nabe). Niagara Falls, bie Niagara= Mälle. niece, nichte, f. (-11). night, Racht, f. ("e); at -, nachts, bes Nachts. no, adj., tein, teine, tein; adv., nein; -body, -

noon, Mittag, m. (-es; -e). north, Nord, m. (-cs) ; Nor= ben. m. (-3). not, nicht; - a, fein, feine, fein; - vet, noch nicht: name, subst., Name, m. (-ns; at all, gar nicht; are (you, -n); nennen, v., oo; what etc.) -? nicht mahr ? is the - of? wie beift? nothing, nichts. notwithstanding, ungeachtet, gen., 223. novel, subst., Moman', m. (-es; -e). November, November, se. (-S). now, jest. nowhere, nirgenbs. nut, Muß. f. ("e). o. oak, Eiche, f. (-n). obey, geborden (dat.). oblige, verbinben, 144; be -d or compelled (to), müffen. occasion, subst., Gelegenheit, f. (-en); v., verurfachen. o'clock, Uhr (invariable); what - is it? wie viel Uhr ift es . of (231), von, dat., 46, 231; (material) aus, dat., 46; (cause) an, dat.; 231, (d); the treaty - Paris, ber Bertrag ju Paris; the battle - Waterloo, bie Schlacht bei Baterloo; - the Alma, an ber Alma. off, ab. offer, bieten, 132, dat. of pers.; anbieten, 131, dat. of pers. officer, Offigier, m. (-es; person, niemanb, feiner, teine, feines; - more, often, oft ("er), oftmals, longer, nicht mehr ; -. manchmal. thank you, ich bante (36= oh! D! ob! old, alt ("er). on, 232, auf, an, dat. or acc., 65; (of time) an, dat., 232, (a); (about) über, acc., 65.

once, einmal.

one, eins; ein, eine, ein; the small —, ber, bie, bas Kleine; — and the same, eins; — and a half, ans berthalb.

only, nur; (of time) erst; not - . . . but also, nicht nur . . . sonbern auch.

open, adj., offen; v., auf= machen.

opinion, Meinung, f. (-en). opportunity, Gelegenheit, f. (-en).

oppressive, brudenb.

or, ober; three — four, brei bis vier; either . . . —, entweder . . . ober; else, fouft.

orator, Rebner, m. (-2; —).
order, v. (command), bes
fehlen, 167, dat. of pers.;
(prescribe), verorbnen; bes
ftellen.

other, anber; every — day, einen Tag um ben anbern. otherwise, sonst; anbers. our, adj., unser, unsere.

unfer.

ours, pron., unser, unsere, unseres; ber, bie, bas unsere; ber, bie, bas unsrige.

out of, aus (dat.; 46); — — (or at) the window, jum Fenster hinaus.

over, liber (dat. or acc.; 65); — there, — the way, brusben.

overcoat, Ü'berrod, m. (-es; "e); Ü'berzicher, m. (-s; own, adj., eigen. [—).

P.

paint, malen; to 4 (other than pictures), austreichen,

painter, Maler, m. (-8; -).
painting (art of), Malerei', f.
palace, Palast', m. (-e8;
"e); Shloß, n. (-e8; "er).
pale, bleich.

paper, Papier, n. (-e8; -e); news—, Zeitung, f. (-en). paradise, Parabies', n. (-e8). pardon, Berzeihung, f. parents, Eltern, pl. only. Paris, Paris', n. (von Paris). Paris, adj. (= Parisian).

part, Teil, m. (-e3, -e); for the most —, meistens, meistenteils.

Parifer.

party, Gesellschaft, f. (-en).
pass, v., tr., (of time, to
spend, etc.), jubringen
(99, 2); — (an examination), bestehen, 186; intr.,
vergehen (188, 2, sein);
versließen (123; sein);—
through, burchsommen
(167; sein).

passing, adj., vorübergehen.
past, vergangen, vorüber,
vorbei; to go — the house,
am haufe vorübergehen,
vorbeigehen.

patient, Rrante, adj. subst., m. f.

pay, bezahlen (acc. of thing, dat. of pers.; acc. of pers. when pers. only is mentioned);— attention, Act geben;— a visit, einen Bejuch machen (dat. of pers.); befuchen (acc. of pers.).
paying (action of), Bezahlen,

n. (-3).
peace, Friede(n), m. (-n3).
pear, Birne, f. (-11).

peasant, Bauer, m. (-n or -3; -n).
pen, Feber, f. (-n).

pen, feber, f. (-n).
people (pl.), Leute, pl. (no sing.); — (indef.), man;

— say, man fagt; —, nation, Bolk, (-c3; "er).
pepper, Pfeffer, m. (-3).
perfect, —ly, gans, volls fommen.

perhaps, vielleicht'.
permission, Erlaubnis, f.
permit, erlauben (dat. of pers.).

person, Perfon', f. (-en).
personal, perfönlich.
philosopher, Philosoph', m.
(-en; -en).

(-et., -et.).
physician, Arzt, m. (-eš; "e).
pick up, aufheben, 131.
picture, Bilb, n. (-eš; -er);
Gemälbe, n. (-š; -).

piece, Stüd, (-e3; -e).
piece, Stüd, (-e3; -e).
pigeon, Taube, f. (-11).
pinch, f. (-11).
pinch, f. (-12).
pity, v., bedauern; it is a —,
ed in foods.

es ift scale.

place, subst., Plat, m. (-es;

ue); Ort, m. (-es; -e or

"er); to take —, ftattfins ben, 144; in that —, ba, bajelbst, bort(en). place, v., stellen, setzen. plant, Pstanze, f. (-11).

plate, Teller, m. (-6; -). play, v., fpielen. pleasant, angenehm.

please, gefallen (188; dat.); (if you) please, (ich) bitte, wenn ich bitten barf, ges fälligft.

pleasure, Bergnügen, n. (-5); — trip, (short) excursion, Ausstug, n. (-cs; "e); to take a (short) — -trip, einen Ausstug mas den.

plum, Pflaume, f. (-n).
poem, Gebicht. n. (-es; -e).
poet, Dichter. m. (-s; -).
point; cardinal — (of the
compass), himmelsgegenb,
f. (-en); to be upon the —
of, im Begriffe fein.

poison, subst., Gift, n. (-es; 1 -c): z.. pergiiten. policeman, Bolizcibiener, m. (-6; -); Schutmann, m. (-e8: -leute). · poor, arm (fer). position, Ctelle, f. (-11): Stellung, f. (-en). possess, befiten, 181. possible, möglich. post, --office, Post, f. --- man, Postbote, m. (-n: -n); by return -, mit umgebenber Boft. postage-stamp, Briefmarte, f. (-n). postpone, aufschieben, 131. pound, Pfunb, n. (-es). power, Araft, f. ("e). praise, v., loben; preifen, pray, v., beten; interi., bitte! precise, -ly, genau. prefer, porgieben, 131: I to walk, ich gebe lieber. prepare; to - for, fid nor= bereiten auf (acc.). presence, Cegenwart, f. present, adj., gegenwärtig; for the -, für's Erfte. present, subst., Gefdent, n. (-es;-e). president, Brafibent', m. (-en; -en). press, v., bringen, 144. pretty, hubich, icon; adv. (tolerably), ziemlich. prevent, verhinbern. price, Breis, m. (-es; -e). prince, Fürft, m. (-en; -en); Bring, m. (-cn; -en). prison, Gefängnis, n. (-fes ; probable, probably, wahr= icheinlich; probably, mohl. professor, Professor, m. (-3; -en). promise, v., verfprechen, 167.

propose, porschlagen, 186. proud (of), ftoly (auf + acc.). proverb, Sprichwort, m. (-cs: "er). province, Proving', f. (-cu). prudent, vorsichtia. Prussia, Prengen, n. (-5). Prussian, subst., Breuke, m. (-n:-n).public, öffentlich. punish, beftrafen, ftrafen, punishment, Strafe, f. (-11). pupil, Schiller, m. (-6; -). pure, rein. put on (coat, etc.), augieben, 131; - - (hat), auf= fesen.

quality, Eigenschaft, f. (-en). quarrel, v., ftreiten, 118; fich ftreiten (mit). quarter, Biertel, n. (-6; --); - of an hour, Biertel= ftunbe, f. (-11). queen, Ronigin, f. (-nen). quick, -ly, fonell; quickly, flugs. quit, v., verlaffen, 188. quite, gang.

railway-station, Bahnhof, m. (-cs; "e). rain, subst., Regen, m. (-3); v., regnen. raise, beben, 121. rather, eher, lieber. raven, Rabe, m. (-n; -n). read, lefen, 181; to - to, porlefen (dat.). reading (act of), Lefen, n. (-§). ready, fertig, bercit; readily, leicht. reason, Grund, m. (-es; "e). receive (get), erhalten, 188; befommen, 167; - (as a

host), aufnehmen, 167; by receiving, burd Nehmen. recover (from illness), ges nefen (181 ; fein). red, adj., rot ("cr); subst., Rot. n.

Reformation, Reformation. f. (-cn). refuse, intr., fich weigern.

regard, anschen (181; für + acc.); betrachten (als). regret; I regret, cs thut mir leib.

reign, Regierung, f. (-en). relate, erzählen. related, verwandt (dat. or mit).

rely upon, fich verlaffen (188; auf + acc.).

remain, bleiben (120; fein); - at home, - behind, 311= rüdbleiben; - over, fibrig bleiben ; - standing, fteben (186) bleiben.

remarkable, mertwürbig. remember, fid) crinnern (gen.); I wish to be -ed to him, ich laffe ihn grit= Ren.

remind of, erinnern an (+ rent, v., vermieten. [acc.). repeat, wieberho'len. reply, subst., Untwort, f.

(-cn). reply, v., antworten, erwi=

bern, perfegen. report, v., berichten. representation, Borftellung, f. (-en).

resemble, ahnlich fein (dat.); gleichen (118; dat.).

reside, mohnen. resist, miberfte'ben (186; dat.).

resolve, v., fich entichließen, 123.

rest; all the -, alle anbern; retire to -, fich ichlafen (188) legen.

return, pergelten (x50): good for evil, pergelte Bo= fes mit Gutem; by - of post, mit umgebenber Boft, umgebenb. reward, subst., Lohn, m. (-es). rheumatism. Rheumatismus. m. (bes -). ribbon, Banb, n. (-es; "er). rich (in), reid (an + dat.). rid, los; to get - of, los merben (+ gen. or acc.). ride, reiten (118); (in a conveyance), fahren (186). riding (act of; not in a conveyance), Reiten, n. (-3). right (adj.), recht; (correct), richtig; in the - way, auf bie richtige Beife: subst .. Recht, n. (-es; -e); to he (in the) -, Recht haben. righteous, gerecht : the . (man), ber Berechte. ring, subst., Ring, m. (-es: -e); -, v., lauten (of a large bell), flingeln (of a small bell); there is a at the door, es flingelt. ripe, reif. rise (get up), auffteben, (186; fein); (ascend), auffteigen (120; fein). river, Blug, m. (-e3; "e). road, Beg, m. (-es; -e); Strafe, f. (-n). Roman, Romer, m. (-3;-). room (apartment), Stube, f. (-n); Rimmer, n. (-3; --). rose, Rose, f. (-n). row, v., rubern. run, laufen (188; fein); after, nachlaufen (188; fein; dat.); - away, ba= von'laufen.

Russia, Rugland, n. (-5).

(-n; -n).

Russian, subst., Huffe, m.

sad, traurig. safe, ficer. sailing-ship, Segelfdiff, n. (-es: -e). sale : for -, su verfaufen. same, adj. and pron., ber, bie, basfelbe: ber, bie. basfelbige; ber, bie, bas nämliche; at the - time, ju gleicher Beit; all the -, one and the -, einerlei. Sarah, Gara, f. (-8). satisfied, jufrieben. Saturday, Sonnabenb, m. (-es; -e); Camstag, m. (-es: -e). save, retten; I -d his life, ich rettete ihm bas Leben. sav, fagen; to hear -, fagen . hören; (assert, claim to be), wollen (196-202); to be said, follen (196-202). scholar (pupil), Schüler, m. (-3; -). school, Schule, f.(-n); -boy, Schüler, m. (-s; -). scold, ichelten, 159. Scotland, Scottlanb, n. (-3). scream, fdreien, 120. search (for), juden. seat one's self, sit down, fich fesen. second, num. adj., zweite. second (of time), subst, Ge= cunbe, f. (-n). secret, -ly, gebeim, beim= lid. see, feben, 181. seek, fuchen. seem, icheinen, 120. self, felbft. sell, vertaufen. send, fciden; - to, jus iciden; - word to, be= nadrichtigen (acc. of pers.); - for, holen laffen (188), fdiden nad.

Sentember. September. m. (-3). servant, Diener, m. (-6: -): Dienftbote, m. (-n: -n); Magb, f. ("e). serve, bienen (dat.); - (of a meal), fervieren. set, tr. (of a time-piece), ftel= len: intr. (of the sun), un'= tergeben (188; fein); free, befreien. settler, Unfiebler, m. (-6; -). seven, fieben. several, einige; etliche; mehrere. shake, fcütteln. shall, follen (196-202). she, fie. shield, Gdilb, m. (-es; -e). ship, Schiff, n. (-es; -e). shoe, Gouh, m. (-es; -e). shoemaker, Schufter, m. (-5; —); Soubmader, m. (-3; **—)**. shoot, ichiegen, 123. shop, Laben, m. (-8; "). shore, Ufer, n. (-3; -). short, fur; -ly, nachftens. shout, fcreien, 120. show, zeigen. shutter, Laben, m. (-3; --). shy, intr. (of horses), fceu merben, 159. sick, frant; the - (man), ber Rrante. side, Seite, f. (-n); on this -of, prep., biesjeit (gen.; 223); on that - of, prep., jenseit (gen.; 223); on this -, adv., biesfeits; on that -, adv., jenfeits. sign, subst., Beichen, n. (-5; -); v., unterzeich'nen. silence, Schweigen, n. (-8). silent, ftumm. silly, einfältig. silver, Gilber, n. (-8). since (241, 12), prep., feit.

coni., ba.

single, einzig.

sing, fingen, 144.

sink, finten, 144.

dat .. 46; adv .. feitbem: 1

singer, Sangerin, f. (-nen).

sister, Schwefter, f. (-n). sit, fiten (181; fein); down, fich feten; - up, remain up, aufbleiben, 120. six. fechs. skate, v., Schlittichub laufen, 188. skill, Befdidlichteit, f. slave, Gflave, m. (-n; -n). slay, töten. sleep, v., fclafen, 188; subst., Schlaf, m. (-es). sleighing, Schlittenbahn, f. slipper, Pantoffel, m. (-5; -n). slow, -ly, langfam. small, flein. smelt, fcmelgen, 124. smile, v., lächeln; subst., Lächeln, n. (-8). sneak, fcleichen (118; fein). snow, subst., Schnee, m. (-3); v., ichneien. so, fo; - are we, wir finb es auch. soldier, Golbat', m. (-en; some, einige, etliche, welche, manche; etwas; irgenb ein, eine, ein; - one, -body; jemanb, -thing, -what, etmas; -where, irgenb= · wo; - of it, bavon; for -. time (past), feit einiger Reit. son, Sohn, m. (-es; "e); little -, Göhnden, n. (-5; —). song, Lieb, n. (-es; -er). soon, balb (comp. eber, superl. am eheften); as as, fobalb.

Sophia, Cophie, f. (-ns). sorry; I am -, es ift mir leib, es thut mir leib. sound, -Iv. feft. sour, fauer. South, Gilb(en), m. (-8), Spain, Spanien, n. (-5). speak, fprechen, 167, reben: - with or to, fprechen (acc. of pers.). speaking (act of), Sprechen, n. (-3). spectacles (pair of), Brille, f. (-n). speech, Rebe, f. (-11). spite; in - of, trot (gen.; 223, 16). spoil, v. tr., verleiben. sport; to make - of any one, fich über jemanb(en) (acc.) luftig machen. spread out, fich verbreiten. spring, v., fpringen (144; fein); subst., Frühling, m. (-es: -e). square (in a town), Blas, m. (-es; "c). St. Lawrence, Canet Loreng, stand, fleben, 186. start (for), abreifen (nach). state (condition), Buftanb, m. (-es; "e). statesman, Staatsmann, m. (-es: -manner) .. stay, bleiben (120; fein); up, aufbleiben: - away, fortbleiben. steal, ftehlen, 167. steam-engine, Dampfmafci= ne, f. (-n). steamer, Dampfichiff, n. (-es; -e). steel, Stahl, m. (-e3). stick, subst., Stod, m. (-es; "e). still, adv., noch, boch; noch immer. sting, ftechen, 167.

stocking, Strumpf, m. (-es; #e). stop, v. intr., aufhören. storm, Sturm, m. (-es; "e). story, Befchichte, f. (-n). stove, Dien, m. (-8; 4). stranger, Frembling, m. (-es: -e); Frembe (adi. subst.). stream, Strom, m. (-es: "e). street, Strafe, f. (-n). strong, ftarf ("er). student, Stubent', m. (-en: -en). study, subst., Stubium, n. (-9; Stubien); (room), Stubierzimmer, n. (-8; -); v., ftubieren; - (prepare) for, fid) vorbereiten auf (+ acc.). studying (act of), subst., Stu= bieren, n. (-5). submit, fich unterwer'fen, 150. subscribe, unterfdrei'ben. 120. succeed, gelingen, impers., 144; I -, es gelingt mir. such, fold, folder, foldes; fo. sudden, -ly, ploslich. suffer, leiben, 118. suffice, genigen (dat.). sufficient, hinreichenb. summer, Commer, m. (-6; sun, Conne, f. (-n); - -dial, Connenubr, f. (-en) ; --set, Sonnenuntergang, m. (-es). Sunday, Conntag, m. (-es; support, unterftüt'en. sure, ficher; to be -, freis lid; zwar. Switzerland, bie Schweiz (ber Schweiz).

T.

table, Tisch, m. (-e8; -e). tailor, Schneiber, m. (-8; —). take, nehmen, 167; — a walk,

einen Spagiergang ma= den; fpagieren geben, 188; - a vovage, eine Seereife machen: - up, (bin)auf= nehmen; - care, fich in Acht nehmen ; - place, ftattfinben, 144; - cold, fic ertalten. talk, fprechen (167; mit). tall, groß ("er, superl. größt). tea. Thee, m. (-8). teacher, Lehrer, m. (-8; -). tear (to pieces), gerreißen, telegram, subst., Depefche, f. (-n). tell, fagen (dat. of pers. or au): ergablen (dat. of pers.). teller, Ergabler, m. (-3: -). tempest, Sturm, m. (-es; Ze). ten, gehn. terrible, -ly, fürchterlich. than, als: als bag. thank, banten (dat.); no vou, ich bante (3hnen). that, demonstr. adj., biefer, biefe, biefes; jener, jene, jenes; rel. pron., ber, bie, bas; welcher, melde, meldes; demonstr. pron., ber, bie, bas; conj., baß. the, ber, bie, bas: adv., je, befto; um fo. their, ihr, ihre, ihr. them (acc.), fie; (dat.) ihnen. then, bann; since -, feits there, ba; - is, - are, es ift, es finb; es giebt, 220. therefore, barum. thereupon, barauf. they, fie, es ; (indef.), man. thief, Dieb, m. (-es; -e). thin, bünn.

think, benten, 99, 2; - of,

benten, gen. or an + acc.;

- so, ich follte es meinen; - highly of, esteem, etc., viel halten (188) von. third, britte. thirst, Durft, m. (-es). thirsty, burftig; to be . Durft baben. thirty, breikig. this, adj. and pron., biefer, biefe, biefes. those, biejenigen: bie: jene, though, obgleich. thousand, taufenb; subst., Zaufenb. n. (-e3: -e) .. three, brei. through, burth, acc.; 34. throw, merfen, 159; ichmeis Ben, 118; - away, meg= merfen. thunder-storm, Gemitter, n. (-6; -). Thursday, Donnerstag, m. (-es: -e). tie, binben, 144. till. bis, 34. time, Reit, f. (-en); (occasion). Mal. n. (-es; -e); what - is it? wie viel Uhr ift es? for the third -. jum britten Male; at the right -. rechtzeitig : at the same -, ju gleicher Reit. tired, mübe. title, Titel, m. (-3: -). to, 233, Au (dat.; 46); (with names of places) nach (dat.; 46); an, auf, in (acc.; 65, 233, 2); - the concert, ins Rongert; (before inf.) gu, 272-274; (of purpose) um Au, 273. to-day, beute. to-morrow, morgen; - morning, morgen früh. too, au: (also), aud. top, Gipfel, m. (-5; -). tortoise, Schilbfrote, f. (-n). (believe), glauben; I should towards, gegen (acc.; 34).

town, Ctabt, f. ("e); -- hall, Rathaus, n. (-es; "er). tragedy, Trauerfpiel, n. (-es: -e); Tragobie, f. (-n). train (on a railway), Bug, m. (-es; "e); Boston -, ber Bug von (nach) Bofton. translate, überfeb'en. transparent, burch'fictig. travel, reifen (baben, fein). traveller. Reifenbe, adi. subst. treasure, Chat, m. (-es: "e). treaty, Bertrag, m. (-es; He). tree, Baum, m. (-es; "e); little -, Baumden, n. (-5; triumph, Triumph', m. (-es: true, mahr ; (faithful), treu (dat.). trunk (of a tree), Baums ftamm, m. (-es; "e). trust, v., trauen (dat.). truth, Bahrheit, f. (-en). try, verjuden. Tuesday, Dienstag, m. (-es: -e). two, smei; beibe; - at a time, je smei ; - and a half, brittebalb. U. umbrella, Regenfchirm, m. (-es: -e). uncle, Oheim, m. (-es ; -e); Ontel, m. (-3; -). under, unter (dat. or acc.; 65). understand, begreifen, 118; perfteben, 186; to make one's self understood, fich verftänblich machen. undertaking, Unterneh'men, n. (-3). unfortunate, unglüdlich; -ly, leiber. unhindered, ungehinbert.

einigten Etnaten. university, Universität', f.

(-en).

until, conj., bis (bag). untruth, Unmahrheit, f. (-en). upon, auf (dat. or acc.; 65);

upper, ober. up - stairs, oben, nach oben, binauf.

use: of no -. un'nüs. useful, nüţlid); the -, bas

Mütliche. utmost, möglichft.

vergebens.

V. vainly, in vain, vergeblich;

valley, Thal, n. (-es; "er). venture, v., magen. verse, Berg, m. (-cs; -e). very, febr; recht; - much, vex, ärgern; be -ed (at), fich ärgern (über + acc.). victory, Gieg, m. (-es; -e). village, Dorf, n. (-es; "er). vinegar, Effig, m. (-3; -e). violet, Beilden, n. (-3; -). virtue, Tugenb, f. (-en). visit, Befuch, m. (-es; -e); to be on a - at any one's, bei jemand auf Befuch fein; v., befuchen; einen Befuch abstatten, machen (dat. of pers.). visitor; to have -s, Befuch haben.

w.

voyage, Reife, f. (-n), Sees

voice, Stimme, f. (-n).

reife, f. (-n).

wait for, marten auf (acc.). waiter, Rellner, m. (-5; -). walk, 'subst., Spagiergang, m. (-es; "e); take a -, einen Spaziergang machen; fpagieren gehen, 188.

United States (The), bie Ber- | walk, v., geben, 188; fpas gieren geben.

> walking (act of), Geben, n. (-3); Spagierengeben, 2. (-3).

want, wünfden: wollen (206). wanting; to be -, fehlen (dat.), mangeln (dat.).

war, Rrieg, m. (-es; -e). warm, --ly, warm ("er).

warning, Warnung, f. (-en). waste, verschwenben.

watch, subst., Uhr. f. (-en): Tafchenuhr, f. (-en); 2., bewachen.

watchful, machiam.

watch-key, Uhrichlüffel, m. (-3: --).

water, Baffer, n. (-6; -). waver, fdwanten.

wav, Beg, m. (-es; -e); (manner), Beife, f. (-n); in this -, auf biefe Beife. we, wir.

weak (in), fcmach (an +

wear, v. intr. (of clothes), fid, tragen, 186.

weather, Better, n. (-3); in fine -, bei iconem Bet=

Wednesday, Mittwoch, m. (-ŝ).

week, Boche, f. (-n); acht Tage; for a - past, feit acht Tagen.

weigh, intr., wiegen, 131. welcome, willfom'men.

well, pred. adj., wohl, ges funb; adv., gut; as - as, fomohl als; - known, befannt.

West, Beft(en), m. (-6). wet, naß ("er).

what, interrog. pron., mas? interrog. adj., welcher, welche, welches; - kind of, was für (ein, eine, ein); rel. pron. (= that which), mas: - a! welch! - is that in German ? wie beißt bas auf Deutich ?

when, interrog., wann? ju welcher Beit? conj., wenn; als. 58.

where, mo.

whether, ob.

which, interrog. adj., wels der, welche, meldes; rel. pron., welcher, melde mels ches; ber, bie, bas; that -. mas.

while, whilst, mahrenb (bag), inbeffen.

whistle, pfeifen, 118.

white, weiß.

who, interrog., wer? rel. pron., welcher, welche, wels ches; ber, bie, bas; he -. the one -. mer.

whole, gang; the - of, ganz.

whom, wen (acc.), wem (dat.).

whose, interrog., weffen? rel., beffen, m. n. sing.; beren, f. sing.; pl.

why, warum? weshalb? wide, breit.

will, wollen, 196-202. William, Bilhelm, m. (-3). willing; to be -, wollen,

196. wind, Binb, m. (-es; -e). wind up, aufziehen, 131: window, Fenfter, n. (-s; -). windy, winbig.

wine, Bein, m. (-es; -e). wing, Flügel, m. (-3; -). winter, Winter, m. (-3; -). wise, weife; tlug ("er).

wish (for), münichen. with, 234, mit (dat. ; 46); bei

(dat.; 46). without, ohne (acc.; 34). witty, wibia. wolf, Bolf, m. (-es; "e).

woman, Frau, f. (-en).

wonder, Bunder, n. (-5; --); I --, es wundert mich, ich wundere mich; -- of the world, Weltwunder, n. (-8; --).

wood, Walb, m. (-es; "er).
word, Wort, n, (-es; -e or
"er); to send —, benach:
richtigen.

work (labour), Arbeit, f. (-en); (thing done), Mert, n. (-es; -e); v., arbeiten. world, Belt, f. (-en); in the

—, auf ber Belt. worth, adj., wert; — while, ber Mühe wert. wound, v., verwunden. wring, ringen, 144.

write (to); fcreiben (120; d.t. or an + acc. of pers.). writing (act of), Screiben, n. (-3).

wrong; to be (in the) -, Un= recht haben.

Y.

yard (measure), Elle, f. (-n). year, Jahr, n. (-e8; -c). yellow, gelb. yes, ja.

yesterday, ge'ftern; -'s, von geftern, geftrig.

gestern, gestrig. yet, noch; not —, noch nicht. yonder, bort. you, 38, 40, ihr; Sie; bn; euch; Sie; bich.

young, jung; — man, Jung: ling, m. (-e3; -e).

your, 40, 43, ener, eure, euer; bein, beine, bein; Ihr, Ihre, Ihr.

yours, ber, bie, bas eure, eus rige; ber, bie, bas Ihre, Ihrige; ber, bie, bas beine, beinige; eurer; beiner; Ihrer.

youth (time of), Jugenb, f.; (young man), Jüngling, m. (-e3; -e).

INDEX.

** The references are to the sections and subsections, unless otherwise specified; N. = Note; R. = Remark; O. = Observation; p. = page.

Abbreviations, p. 404. aber, conj., 236.

Ablant, 105, R., 110.

'About,' how rendered in Germ., 226.

Absolute accusative, 255; absolute superlative, of adjs., 127, 2; of advs., 190, 4-6.

Abstract substs., take article, 44, 1 (b); plural of, 66, 3; App. H.

Accentuation, p. 10; in compound verbs, 117, 3, 204, 205, 3, 208, 209, 212; of compound adv. prefixes, 206, 2, N. 1.

Accusative, use of, 3, 252-255; place of, 296, 4; after preps., 34, 50, 65, 223, 19, R. 2; expresses time, 184,1; measure, 185, 4; after reflexive verbs, 216; after impers. verbs, 217, 2, (a), 219, 220; after adjs., replacing gen., 244, R. 1, 2; double acc., 253; after intrans. verbs, 254; cognate acc., 254, 1; adverbial acc., 255; absolute acc., 255, 2; before advs. of direction, 224, 1.

Address, modes of, 40, 43, 47.

Adjects, place of, 296, 1, 297, R. 1.

Adjectives, when spelt with a capital, pp. 11, 12; predi-

cative, not declined, 14, 100; place of, 18, 20, O. 3, 295, 296, 8; attributive, decl. of, 101; strong, 102, weak, 115, mixed, 116, table, 121, general remarks, 122; place of, 290, (b). N. 2, 298, 1, 299; indeclinable in ser, 122, 9; as advs., 122, 8; of colour, 122. 3; in sel. sen, ser, 122, 6; a succession of, 122, 5; after pers. prons., 122, 10; after indef, prous. and numerals, 122, 11, 12; after welche, 122, 13; used as substs., 122, 2; comparison of, 125-127; without Umlaut, App. L.; incapable of comparison, 161, N.; adjs. used as attributes only, 160; as predicates only, 161; as prefixes to verbs, 206, 4, 212; governing gen. and acc., 244; dative, 251; preps., 291; possessive adjs., 43, 44, 6, (a); interrogative, 84-86; appositive adj., 290; concord, 288; derivation, by suffixes, 313; by prefixes, 316; composition, 320.

Adverbial clauses, 306.

Adverbial conjunctions, coördinating, 237; throw the subject after the verb, R. 1.

Adverbial expressions, place of, 45, 297.

oi, 49, 294.
Adverbs, 187; place of, 45, 297; formation, 182, (a), 183, (c), 189; comparison, 128, 190; numeral adverbs, 182, 183; idiomatic uses of certain adverbs, 195; advs. with an accusative, 224, 1; with preps., 224, 3, 4.

age, substs. in, gender, 89,2, (e).

Agent, with passive, 112, R. 3.

al, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

'all' expressed by ganz, 170, 1; 'at all,' 157.

allein, conj., 236, 241, 1.

affer, -e, -e3, 169; affers before superlatives, 127, 1, N.; affes of a number of persons or things, 162, 2; before adjs., 122, 12.

Alphabet, German, pp. 1, 5, 13.

at3, conj., 239, 3 (b); after a comparative, 126, 1; distinguished from menn and mann, 58, 241, 6, 8; 'but,' 241, 19; at8 clause replaces Engl. part. of time, 284, 1, (a); introducing an apposition, 289, 6; with comparative clauses, 306, R. 4.

440

als bag, after adjs. with su, 273, N.

als ob, als wenn, 239, 3, (b), and R. 4.

am, before a superl., 127, 1, (b), 128, 190, 3.

(a), 126, 180, 3.

an, prep., 65; expresses date, 184, 2, (a); of locality, 227, (a), 2, 232, (c), 2, 233, (c), 2; of cause, with diseases, 231, (c); with names of battles, 231, (d), 2; after verbs and adjs., 244, 245, 1, 291, 6, 8, 9, 12.

an, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

anber, ordinal numeral, 166, 1, N.; anberseits, 238; anberthalb, 183, (8), R. 2. angesichts, 223, 20.

aniftatt, 223, 14; governing an infin. or baß clause, 276. 'any,' how rendered in German, 2, 2, 157, 180.

Apposition, appositive substantive; 289; participle, 280; (b), 281, R. 3; adjective or participle, 290; clauses, 304.

ar, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

Article, not used before words in partitive sense, 2, 2; definite, declension, 4; agreement, 5, 1; repetition of, 5, 2; use, 44; contraction with preps., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.; with proper names, 44, 2, 3, 78, 76, 2, 5, 78; for poss. adj., 44, 6.

Article, indefinite, declension, 9; use, 44, 4, 5.
Aryan languages, 322, 2, 3.

'as,' how rendered in Germ., 162, 4, 241, 8-11.

Associatives, how formed, 315, 2, (b).

=aft, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

sat, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 2, 6.

'at,' of time of day, 184, 3, (c); how rendered in Germ., 227; after verbs, etc., 291, 1.

'at all'; see 'all.'

Attributive adj., see Adjective.

aud, adv., after rel. prons., 96, 6, idiomatic use of, 195, 9; conj., 236, 237, R. 2, 238.

auf, prep., 65; with abs. superl. of advs., 190, 6; of locality, 227, (a), 3, 230, (a), 232, (c), 233, (c), 2; of future time, 229, (b), 2; after adjs. and verbs, 245, 1, 291, 2, 7, 10; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (b). auf bag, 239, 3, (b), 268, 3. aus, prep., 46; of cause, 229, (c).

außen, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130. außer, prep., 46.

außerhalb, 223, 3.

ăußerst, with absolute superl., 127, 2, 190, 4.

Auxiliary is verb in compound tenses, 26, 32. Auxiliary verbs of mood, see 'Modal Auxiliaries.'

Auxiliary verbs of tense, 25, 53; place of, with Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 3; omitted in dependent clauses, 287.

balb, comparison of, 190; balb...balb, 238. *bar, suffix of adjs., 313, 1. 'be,' with p. part., how rendered in Germ., 112, R. 5. bez, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning of, 314, 1. bei, prep., 46; = 'with,' 'about,' 226, (d); of time, 227, (b), 3; idioms, 228, (b), (c), 232, (d); of battles, 231, (d), 1.

beibe, beibes, 165, 3. beißen Model, 118.

bevor, 241, 13, 14. binnen. 51, 1.

bis, prep., 34, 50, 4; conj., 239, 3, (b).

bleiben Model, 120.

Blume Model, 56. 'both . . . and.' 238.

'but,' rendered by als, 241,

'by,' with passive, 112, R. 3; how rendered in Germ., 228.

Capitals, use of, p. 11; 122, 2, 9, N., 11, O.

Calling, verbs of, 242, 3, 253; with p. part., 281, 6.

Cardinal numerals, 163,165; gender as substs., 80, 2, (c), 165, 10.

Cases, use of, 3; syntax of, 242-255; place of, 296.

Cause, adverbial expressions of, 284, 1, (b), 306, R. 2; their place in a sentence, 45, Rule 5.

den, substs. in, declension,
 16, 17; gender, 89, 3, (a);
 subst. suffix, 312, 2; produces Umlaut, 326, R. 2,
 (c).

Choosing, verbs of, 242, 3, N., 253.

Clauses, conditional, 59, 267, 293, (a), 3; proportional, see 'Comparative clauses,' below; dependent, preceding principal, 293, (b), R. 4, 294, (b), R. 2, 306; with benn, 241, 18, 293, (c), R. 4; incomplete or elliptical, 299; order of clauses, 302-306; appositions, 200; appositio

tive, 304; relative, 305; subjective, objective, adverbial, 306.

Cognate accusative, 254, 1. Collectives, declension of those with prefix Ges, 16. 17, 2; gender, 89, 3, (d); concord of with verb, 285, R. 4: formation, 315, 2, (a).

Colour, adjs. of, used as substs., 122, 3,

Comma, before dependent sentences, 98, 3, N., 301, N. 5: before infin. clauses. 273, R. 2.

Comparative degree, 125, 126; declension of, 126, 5. Comparative clauses, with befto, etc., 126, 4, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3; 306, R. 4

and N.

Comparison, of adjs., 125-130; of equality, 126, 3, 241, 8; irregular, 129; defective, 130; of advs., 128, 190; adjs. incapable of, 161, N.

Compass, points of, p. 104, top; gender, 80, 1, (c). Complex sentences, 302-

306.

Composition of words, 318-321; of numerals, 165, 5-7, 182, 183; of Verbs, 203-213; of substs., 319; of adis., 320; of advs., 321.

Compounds, accentuation of, p. 11; how formed, 318-321; primary and secondary, 319, 1, N. 1, 2; spurious, 319, 2, N.

Compound substantives, of irregular declension, 68; of irregular gender, 90, 4, App. I., p. 388; how formed, 319.

Compound tenses, formation,

33.

Compound sentences, 302. Compound verbs, 203-213, separable, 109, 117, 205-207: inseparable, 35, R. 6, 109, 204; compounded with substs., 206, 3; with adis., 206, 4, 212; separable and inseparable, 208; with double prefixes, 207, 213; with mißs, 209; with hers and hins, 210; from compound substs., 211.

Concord, of Subject and Verb, 285; other concords, 288.

Conditional clauses, 59, 239, R. 1, 2, 4, 267, 293, (a), 3, (b), R. 4, N. 1, 2; elliptical, 268, 2, N., 293, (c), R. 2: use of fo in, 59, N.; 293, (b), R. 4, N. 2.

Conditional conjunctions, 59, 239, R. 1, 2, 4.

Conditional mood, formation of tenses of, 25, 2, 3; shorter forms, 111, 112, R. 1; in Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 4; use, 263, 267. Conjugation of verbs: see "Verbs," "Modal Auxili-

aries." Conjunctions, 235-241; co-

ördinating, proper, 236; not counted, 293, (b), R. 2; adverbial, 237, 293, (b), R. 2; correlative, 238; place of, 298, 3.

Conjunctive Mood, "Subjunctive."

Considering, verbs of, 242, 3, 253.

Consonants, pronunciation, p. 9, top; digraphs and trigraphs, pp. 5, 8, 14; doubling of, in verbs, 118, R. 1, 123, R. 1, 167, A., R.2, 181, O.6.

25. 108; construction, 26, Construction of Sentences, 292-306; principal, 20, 26, 293, (b), 294, (b), 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 2; dependent, 32, 33, 293, (c), 294, (c), 295, 2, 297, R. 2, 306; direct interrog., 23, 293, (a), 1, 294, (a), 295, 2, 300; indirect statements. 87, 293, (c), R. 1; indirect questions, 88; relative sentences, 98, 305; imperative, 293, (a), 2; of clauses with benn, 293, (c), R. 4; of incomplete clauses, 299; general remarks, 301; compound and complex, 302, 303; see also "Clauses," "Conditional clauses."

Contracted form of strong declension, 70, R. 3.

Contraction of def. art, and preps., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.

Coördinating Conjunctions, proper, 236, adverbial, 237, correlative, 238.

Copula, 292; place of, 293, 301. 1.

Correlative prons., 43, R. 3, 4; conjunctions, 238; clauses, 241, 9, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3.

Countries, names of, gender, 80, 3, (c); see also "Places, names of."

=b, suffix of substs., 312, 1. ba, adv., with prep. annexed, 38, R. 5, 142; coni., 239, 3. (b); various uses of, 241, 12, (d), 20; with preps., representing an infin. or baß clause, 277; replaces Engl. part, of time and cause, 284.

bamit, conj., expresses purpose, 239, 3, (b), 268, 3.

of a number of persons or things, 162, 2.

baß, conj., omitted, 87, 3, 241, 3, 13, 266, R. 2; use, 239, (b), 241, 3; expressing purpose, 268, 3.

baß clauses governed by preps., 224, 2, (a); for infin., 272, R. 1, 275, 276, R. 2. 277.

Date, how expressed, 184, 2. (a).

Dative, use of, 3, 248; place of, 296, 4; ethical dat., 249; dat. after verbs, 250; after adjs., 251; after preps., 46, 51, 65, 223; after reflexive verbs, 216. 2: after impersonal verbs. 217, 2, (b), 219, 1; after fein and merben, 217, 2, (c): after interjections, 240, 4, (6).

bauchten, see beuchten, bun= ten.

sbe, subst. suffix, 312, 1. Declension; see "Substantives," "Adjectives," "Pronouns," "Numerals,"

Definite Article: see "Article."

Degrees of comparison; see "Comparison,"

bem after fein, 250, (e), 268, 6.

Demonstrative pronouns; see "Pronouns."

benn, conj., 236; adv. conj., 237, 239, 241, 7, 18, 293, (c), R. 4.

bennod), adv. conj., 237.

Dependent sentences; see "Construction," "Sentences."

Dependent questions; see " Construction," " Sentences," "Indirect questions."

bas before the verb fein, 141; | ber, bie, bas; see "Article, definite"; demonst. pran., 132, 133, 135, 2, 140, 1, (a), (b), 142, 143, 1, 2; after wer. 162; relative pron., declension, 93; use, 95, 140, 2; replaced by wo before preps., 95, 2; used for mer, 306, R. 3, N.

bergleichen, rel. pron., 97; demonstr. pron.. 132, 139, 2,

beren, gen, pl. of demonstr. pron., when used, 133, 2. N.

Derivation, 307-317: of numerals, 182, 183; of advs., 189; see also "Adjective,"

berjenige, 132, 135, 140, 1, (6).

bero. 49.

berfelb(ia)e. 132, 136; replaces poss. adjs. and pers. prons., 143, 2-4.

besgieichen, rel. pron., 97; demonst. pron., 139, 1; adv., 139, 1, N.

beffen, used for gen. of mel= der, 95, 1, (a); precedes its case, 95, 3; of neut. pers. pron., 143, 1; for poss. adi., 143, 2.

beffenungeachtet, adv. conj., 237, 241, 21.

beito, 126, 4, 237, 241, 2, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3. beuchten, 99, 2.

biefer Model, 6.

biefer, declension, 6; use, 132, 134, 140, 1, (a), 141; replaces pers. prons.,143,3.

biesjeit(s), 223, 12, R. Digraphs, consonantal, pp. 4, 8, 14.

Diminutives, gender, 89, 3, (a); formation, 312, 2; origin, 326, R. 2, (c).

Diphthongs, pp. 4, 6, 14.

Direct objects, clause or neut. pron. as, 250, R. 2; infin. as. 272. R. 2: see also "Accusative." "Cases." "Object."

Direct questions; see also "Questions," "Interrogative Sentences."

Direction, expressed by hin= and her= before verbs. 210; with an accusative, 224, 1.

Distance, measure of, 185, 4: bod, adv., idiomatic use, 195, 8; adv. conj., throws subj. after verb, 237, R. 3, 293, (b), R. 3; in questions, 300, 2, N. 1.

Dorf Model, 36, 37; origin of Umlaut in, 326, R. 2.(b). Double Accusative, 253.

Gender, 91; App. J. Plurals, 64; App. G.*

Prefixes, 207, 210, 213.

Vowels, pp. 4, 6, 14; do not take Umlaut, p. 12.

brei, declension, 165, 2. bunten, 99, 2.

burd, prep., 34; prefix, 208. bürfen, conjugation of, 196-199; use, 200, 1.

e, in conjugation of verbs. 31, R. 1, 35, R. 2-4, 107, R. 1; in imperative, etc., 167, B., R. 3, 181, O. 4; in subjunctive, 31, R. 2, 107, O. 3; in dat. of substs., 21, (a), O. 4, 46, R. 2; in adjs., 102, R. 2, 122, 6, 125, R. 5, 6, 126, 5; in poss. adjs., 43, R. 2; in poss. prons., 119, (a) Obs., (c), N. 1; represents Umlaut of a, 326, R. 3.

se, adjs. in, declension, 102.

R. 2; comparison, 125, R. 6. se, substs. in, declension, 54, 57, 1, 61; gender, 89, 2, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 4. eben, 195, 2. ebenfo, 237, 241, 8. ehe, conj., 241, 13, 14; comparison, 130. sei, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 5. citt, see "Article, Indefi-'nite." ein, numeral, 163, 165, 1; with def. art., 165, 1, (c), einanber, 42, 2. [and N. einer, indef. pron., 145, 150; cardinal numeral. 163. 165, 1, (6). einerlei, 182, (c), N. einerfeits, 238. einige, einiges, etliche, etli= des, indef. pron., 145, 152; numeral, 168, 173, 180; before adjs., 122, 12. einmal, 182, (a), N. 2, 3. eins in counting, 165, 1, (d). einft, 182, (a), N. 2; 187, 1, (e). sel, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; fems. in, 57, R. 2; gender, 89, 1, (a), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, 122, 6; comparison, 125. R. 6; subst. suffix, 312, 6. sel, verb-stems in, drop e, 35, R. 4. selden, diminutive suffix, 312, 2, N. 2. Elliptical constructions, 59, 239, R. 2, 4, 266, N. 4, 267, 6, N., 268, 2, N., 269, R. 6, 278, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 2, 299. selu, verbs in, conjugation, 35, R.4; formation, 311, 1. sem, substs. in, declension,

16, 17, 69, 1; gender, 89,

1. (a).

emps, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 2. sett, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; gender, 89, 1, (a), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, 122, 6; comparison, 125, R. 6; not used as predicates, 160; advs. in, 189. 3: subst. suffix, 312. 7; adj. suffix, 313, 2. sen for ses in gen. sing. of adjs., 102, R. 1. senb, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (b); subst. suffix, 312, 18. Endings of weak verbs in simple tenses, 35; of strong do., 107; of substs., 70; of adis., 121. English, its relations to German, 322. Enlarged form of strong declension, 70, 4. sens, termination of advs., 183, (c), 189, 1, (d), 190, 7. ents, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 2. entgegen, 51, 2. entlang, 223, 19, R. 2. entweber . . . ober, 238, 285, R. 6. N. 1. sens, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e). er=, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 3. ser, substs. in, declension; 16, 17; fems. in, 57, R. 2, gender, 89, 1, (a), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, 122, 6; comparison, 125, R. 6, 126, N.; subst. suffix, 312, 8, ser, verb-stems in, drop e, 35, R. 4. ser, Plural ending, 36; origin, 326, R. 2, (b). serei, subst. suffix, 312, 5, N. 2. . sern, Adjs. in, not used as

fix, 313, 2, sern, Verbs in, conjugation, 35, R. 4; formation, 311,2. erft, adv., idiomatic use, 195. 4. erftens, adv., distinguished from juerft, 195, 5, N. Era=, subst. prefix. 315. 1. es, neut. pron., uses of, 89; omission of, 113, 2, N.; for a number of persons or things, 162, 2; as subject of impersonal verbs, 217. 220, 2, R. 2, N.; after adjs. governing gen., 244. R. 1; representing a following infin., 272, R. 2. es giebt, es ift, etc., 220. effen Model, 181. Ethical dative, 249. etliche; -es, see einige. etwa, 187, III., 226, (c), etwas, indef. pron., 145, 149; indef. numeral, 168, 177; before adis., 122, 11. 'even,' rendered by felbit, 42, 3, R. 'ever,' after rel. prons. 96.6. Exclamatory clauses, 269, R. 6, 293, (b), R. 3, 300, N. 2. -fad, -fältig, form multiplicative numerals, 182, (b). fallen Model, 188.

predicates, 160; adi, suf-

cative numerals, 182, (3).
fallen Model, 188.
falle, subord. conj., 239, 3, (3).
sfältig; see sfac.
Factitive accusative, 253.
Factitive predicate, 253.
254, 3.
Family names, 74, 76, 4, 6.
fccten Model, 124.
'few,' how rendered in Ger.,
145, 152, 168, 173, 175.
'for,' how rendered in Ger.,
229; after verbs, substs.
and adjs., 291, 2-4.

Foreign substs., accentuation, p. 10, bottom; declension, 22, 6, 87, 4, App. D., 57, 5, 63, 3, 77; gender, 89, 2, (e).

Fractional numbers, 183, (a),

freilich. 187, IV.; does not count as a member of a sentence, 293, (b), R. 2, N.

Frequentatives, how formed, 815. 2. (c).

frieren Model, 131. 'from,' after verbs, 291, 5.

für, prep., 34; not used of purpose, 229, (a); after verbs of considering, 253.

Future Tense, how formed, 25, 2; use, 261; replaced by present, 257, 5.

Future-perfect Tense, how formed, 25, 3; use, 262; replaced by perfect, 259, 4.

gang, indef. numeral, 168, 170.

ge=, prefix of p. part., 30; when omitted, 35, R. 5, 6, 109, 112, R. 2, 204; of verbs, 85, R. 6, 204, 314, 4; with sep. verbs, 117, 2, 205, 2; with miß=, 209; of substs., 315, 2; of adjs., 816; declension of substs. beginning with ges, 16, 17, 2, 36, 37, 3; gender, 89, 3, (d).

gegen, prep., 34. gegenüber, 51, 4. geben with infin., 271, (c). gemäß, 51, 5. gen, 50, 2.

Gender of substs., according to meaning, 80, and form, 89; of compound substs., 90, 4, App. I., p. 383; double gender, 91, App. I.; general remarks on, 90; exceptional gender, App. I.

Genitive, use of, 3, 243; after adjs., 244; after verbs, 245: adverbial, of time and manner, 184, 2, (b), 189, 2, 246; of place, 246; after reflexive verbs, 215, 216: after impers, verbs. 219, 2, (a); after interjections, 240, 4, (a); after preps., 222, 223; uninflected appositive genitive, 289, 3, N. 2; position of in a sentence, 296, 4-7.

genug, indef. num. and adv., 168, 178; followed by inf., 273, 3.

German language, its relations to English, 322; historical sketch, 322-326. Germanic languages, 322,

323; diagram of, p. 376. gern, comparison of, 190, 1; idiomatic use of, 195, 3.

Gerunds, or infin. in -ing, not to be confounded with pres. part., 277, R. 3, 4, 6. Gerundive, 282.

glauben, infin. after, 275, gleich, prep., 51, 6. [R. 3. =gleichen, 48, 97, 139. Graf Model, 55.

Grimm's Law, 325. groß, comparison, 125, 5, Grunbfprache, 322.

qut, comparison, 129; as adv., 195, 10, N., 293, (b), R. 2, N.

b. mute before consonants. after vowels and after t, p. 9; when rejected after t, p. 12.

baben, conjugation, 24: use, 25; with infin., 271, (b), and R. 1, 272, R. 2; omission of in dependent sentences, 287, 293, (c), R. 5. shaft, suffix of adjs., 813, 3. balb, numeral, 183, (a), N. 2, (6).

halb(en), halber, prep., 222, 223. 1.

'half,' how rendered in Ger., 183, (a), N. 2; (b). half-hours, 184, 3, (a). beißen with infin., 271, (d). sheit, substs. in. gender. 89. 2, (a): subst. soffix, 312, 9, helfen Model, 159. ber, prefix, 210.

hier, 187, II., (a); before preps., 142.

High German, history of, 324.

bin, prefix, 210.

binten, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130. hinter, prep., 65; sep. and

insep. prefix, 208. hoch, declension, 122, 7;

comparison, 129. höchit, with absolute superl.,

127, 2, 190, 4. 'however,' adv. conj., how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.

Hours of the day, 184, 3. Sunb Model, 21, (8). hunbert, 165, 8, 10, (c). Hyphen, its use in compounds, 818, 3, N., and 4.

i, produces Umlaut, 326. ≥ith, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a). =icht, subst. suffix, 312, 18; adj. suffix, 313, 4.

=ie, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

sier, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

=ieren, foreign verbs in, take no ge= in p. part., 35, R. 5; verb suffix, 311, 3. 'if.' when rendered by ob.

241, 4.

sig, substs, in, declension, | sin, substs, in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a); adis, in, not used as predicates, 160; advs. in, superl. of, 190, 5; suffix of poss. prons., 119, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 18; adj. suffix, 313, 5; before steit, 312, 10. N.; after shaft, 313, 3, N.; produces Umlaut, 326. (f).

3hro. 49.

sit, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

immer, adv., 187, I., (e); after rel. prons., 96, 6.

Imperative Mood, true forms of, 31, R. 4; endings, in weak verbs, 35; in strong, 107; expressed by laffen, 200, 7, (a); replaced by subjunctive, 268, 1; use of, 269. f 196.

Imperfect-Present Verbs, Imperfect Tense, formation,

in weak verbs, 30; in strong, 104; endings, in weak verbs, 35; in strong, 107.

Imperfect Indicative, use, 258; distinguished from Perfect, 259, 2, 3; replaced by present, 257, 3.

Imperfect Subjunctive, for conditional, 111, 263, 2, N.; in hypothetical periods, 267, 2; to express wish, 268, 2; to express possibility, 268, 5; origin of Umlaut in, 326, (g).

Impersonal Verbs, 217; conjugation, 218; government, 219; 'there is,' etc., 220; impersonal use of passive voice, 113, 2.

'in,' how rendered in Germ., 230, 291, 6, 7.

in, prep., 65; rendered by 'at,' 227, (a), 1, and 4.

57, R. 3; gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 11; produces Umlaut. 326. (d).

Indefinite article, see "Article, Indef." ſ180. Indefinite numerals, 168-Indefinite pronouns, 145-157.

inbem, subord. conj., 239, 241, 16; replaces Engl. participle, 284, 1, (a), (b). inbeffen, conj., 237, 239, 241, 15.

Indicative mood, use, 256; tenses of, 257-262; in indirect statements, 266, R. 3: in hypothetical periods.

Indirect statement, 87, 265: tense of, 266; construction of, 293, (c), R. 1.

267, R. 5.

Indirect or dependent questions, 88, 293, (c); objective, with infin., 275, R. 4; use of ob in, 277. R. 5.

Indo-European or Indo-Germanic languages, 322.

Infinitive, place of, 26, 33, 295, 3, 299; endings, 35; for p. part. in Modal Auxiliaries, etc., 199, 2; with passive sense after laffen, 200, 7, (c), N.; for imperative, 269, R. 5; as subst., 270; without au, 271; with 3u, 272; of purpose, 273; after substs., 274: accusative with inf., not used in Germ., 275; in objective indirect questions, 275, R. 4; governed by preps., 276, 277; infin. in -ing, or gerund, 277, R. 3-6; in elliptical constructions, 278; replaced by p. part., 281, R. 6, 7; as part of predicate, 295.

'-ing,' infinitive in, or gerund. 277. R. 3-6.

sing, substs, in, declension. 22, 2; gender, 80, 1, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 18.

inmitten, 223, 21.

innen, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

innerhalb, 223, 4, and R. Inseparable prefixes, 35, R. 6, 109, 203, 204, 207, 209, 212, 213; meaning of. 314.

Interjections, 240.

Inversion, inverted sentence, 301, 2, N. 1, 2.

Interrogative pronouns and adjs., 81-86.

Interrogative sentences, construction, direct, 23; 293, (a), 1, 294, (a), 295, 2, 300, 301, N. 2; indirect or dependent, 88, 275, R. 4, 277, R. 5, 293, (c).

Intransitive verbs, used only impersonally in the passive. 113, 2: accusative after. 254.

=ion, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).

siren, verbs in : see sieren. irgenb, 157.

=ifc, adis, in, not used as predicates, 160; adj. suffix, 313, 6.

Italics, not used in Germ., p. 12.

'it,' when rendered by er, fie, 13.

j, produces Umlaut, 326. ja, idiomatic use, 195, 11.

ja, jawohl, not counted as member of sent., 293, (b), R. 2, N.

je, before cardinal numerals, . 165, 9.

je . . . befto, 126, 4, 239, 3, (b), 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3. ie(mals), adv., 187, I., (e), jeber, declension, 6; indef. pron., 145, 153; indef. numeral, 168, 171; jebes, of a number of persons or things, 162, 2. jebermann, 145, 147. jeboch. 237. febmeber; see jeber.

jeglicher; see jeber. jemanb, 145, 148.

jener, declension, 6; use, 132, 134, 140, 1, (c), 141, 142.

jenfeit(6), 228, 13, and R. jest, 187, I., (b).

tein, declension, 8; indef. numeral, 168, 172. feiner, indef. pron., 145;

used for niemanb, 151. zfeit, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 812, 10.

tennen, 196, R. 4, N. 1 Rnabe Model, 54.

fommen, with p. part., 281, R. 5.

tönnen, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 2, 202. traft, prep., 223, 7.

#I, forms fractions, 183, (a). längs, 223, 18, and R. 1. Language, German, historical sketch of, 322-326.

Language-names from adjs., 122, R. 2.

Languages, Indo-Germanic, etc., 322, 2, 3; Germanic,

laffen, its use, for passive voice, 114, (b); as Modal Auxiliary, 200, 7.

laut, 228, 8.

Lautverfciebung, 325. slei, forms variative nume-

rals, 182, (c).

slein, substs. in, declension,

16, 17; gender, 89, 3. (a); subst. suffix, 312, 3; produces Umlant, 326, R. 2, (c).

Letters, German, shape and pronunciation of, see Introduction, pp. 1-12.

lest, 130.

sleute, plurals in, 68, 1.

=lid), adjs. in, not used as predicates, 160; superl. of advs. in, 190, 5; suffix of advs., 189, 1, (b); of adjs., 313, 8,

lieber, compar. of gern, 190; use, 195, 3,

sling, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 12.

slings, suffix of advs., 189, 1, (c).

loben, paradigm of, active, 31; reflexive, 41; passive, 112.

=m, substs. in, declension, 69; gender, 89, 1, (a). Macht, irregular compounds

of, 68, 2. smal, forms numeral advs.,

182, (a).

Maler Model, 16, 17, App.

man, indef. pron., for passive voice, 114, (a); use, 145, 146: replaced by einer. 150; with imperative, 269,

mancher, indef. pron., 145, 154; indef. numeral, 168, 174; before adjs., 122, 12.

smann, substs. in, declension, 68, 1.

Manner, advs. of, 189; their place in a sentence, 45, Rule 5.

Materials, names of, take art., 44, 1, (b); plural of, 66. 2.

'may,' when expressed by bürfen, 200, 3, (8), N.

'meanwhile,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.

Measure. expressions of. 185; advs. of, 187, III.

mehr, when used in comparison of adis., 126, 2, 161. N.: adv. of quantity, 129. N. 1; indef, numeral, 168. 179.

mehrere, -es, indef, pron., 145, 152: indef. numeral, 168, 175; before adjs., 122, 12.

mein Model. 8.

Middle High German, 324, 2. Million, declension, 165, 10,

Minutes of the hour, 184, 3, (6).

miß=, verb-prefix, 204, 209, 314, 5; subst. prefix, 315, 3,

mit, 46; after reflexive verbs. 215, 1, (a).

mittel, comparison, 130. mittelft, see vermittelft.

Mixed declension, of substs., 60-63, 70; of adjs., 116. 121. III.

Modal auxiliaries, 196-202; peculiar forms, 196, R. 1-3; paradigms, 198; further peculiarities, 199; idiomatic use, 200-202.

Modern High German, 324,3. Modification of vowels; see Umlaut.

mögen, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 3, 202.

Monosyllables. declension. 22, 1, 3, 5, App. B., C., E., 37; gender, 89, 1, (a). Month, day of, how expressed, 166, 3.

Months, names of, p. 104, top; gender, 80, 1, (b). Moods of the verb, their use, 256-278; see also "Conditional," "Indicative," etc.

'most,' with absolute superlative, 127, 2.

Motion, neuter verbs of, conjugated with seint, 53, (b). millient, conjugation, 196-199: use 200, 4, 202.

199; use, 200, 4, 202. Mut, fem. compounds of, App. I, p. 388; & Mute fein, werben, 250, (e).

Mutes, progression or shifting of, 325.

nad, prep., 46, 184, 3, (b), 283, (c), 1; after adjs., 244; after verbs, etc., 291, 3; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (a).

Nachbar Model, 62, 63. nachbem, subord. conj. clause with, replaces Engl. perf.

part., 284, R. 1. nächft, 51, 7.

nache, comparison, 129. Name Model, 60, 61.

Names, see "Materials,"
"Persons," "Places,"
"Proper Names."

nämliche, ber, 132, 137. neben, prep., 65.

nebît, 51, 8.

nennen, infin. with, 271, (d). Neuter verbs conjugated with fein, 53.

New High German, 324, 3. nicht, place of, 12.

nicht nur . . . fonbern auch, 258.

nicht sowohl . . . als, 238. nichts, indef. pron., 145, 149; before adjs., 122, 11. nichtsbestoweniger, coord.

adv. conj., 237. nichts weniger als, 241, 19,

nichts weniger als, 241, 19.

nib, obsolete adv., comparison, 130.

nie(mals), 187, I., (e). nieber, 180.

nicmand, 145, 148; replaced by feiner, 151, 1. nimmer, 187, I., (c).

ni3, substs. in, declension, 22, 4; gender, 89, 2, (d), 3, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 13; produces Umlaut, 326, (c).

ttod), adv., idiomatic use, 195, 7; conj., 237, 238.

Nominative, use of, 3, 242.

Number, in Substs., 3; expressions of, 185. Numerals. cardinal. 163.

Numerals, cardinal, 163, 165; ordinal, 164, 166; Roman, how rendered in Germ., 166, 2, N.; indefinite, 168-180; derivative, 182, 183; multiplicative, 182, (b); variative, 182, (c); fractional, 183, (a), (b).

nun, 195, 1.

ob, prep., 51, 10; conj., 241, 4; when omitted, 239, R. 4, 267, R. 6, N.; in indirect questions, 277, R. 5.

ob aud, 239, R. 3, 4. oben, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

oberhalb, 223, 5.

obgleich, obichon, obwohl, 239, R. 3, 4.

Object, direct, see "Accusative"; indirect, see "Dative"; remote, with reflexive verbs, 216.

Objects, place of, 45, 296, 297, R. 1, 2.

verb, **306.**Objective genitive, **243**, 3.

ober, 236, 238. 'of,' how rendered in Germ., 3, 46, R. 3; 231; omitted before infin. clauses, 277, R. 1; after verbs, etc., 291, 8-11.

ohne, prep., 34; governing infin. or baβ clause, 224, 2, (b), 276.

ohnebem, 50, 3.

Ohr Model, 62, 63. Old High German, 324, 1,

clension, 22, 6.

on, how rendered in Germ., 232; after verbs, etc., 291, 7.

'one,' rendered by c8, 39, R. 3; indef. pron., 145, 146, 150; not expressed after adjs., 122, 4.

For, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6, 63, 3.
Ordinal numerals, 164, 166.
Origin, genitive of, 243, 1.

Orthography, p. 11; recent changes in, p. 12.

paar (ein), indef. numeral, 173, 3, N.

Participial constructions, English, how rendered in Germ., 284; English pres. part. after come, 281, R. 5; not to be confounded with inf. in -ing, or gerund. 277, R. 3.

Participle, past, how formed, in weak verbs, 30; in strong, 105; of Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 2.

Participles, place of, 26, 38, 283, 4, 295, 1, 3, and N, 298, 299; endings, 30, 35; used as adjectives, 122, 1; as substs., 122, 2; comparison of, 125, 4; isolated strong, 194, N.; use of, 279-284; present part., 280; not used with 'to be,' 31, R. 3; past, 281; with

imperative force, 269, R. 5; fut. pass. part., or gerundive, 282; general remarks, 283; no perfect part. in Germ., 284, R. 1; appositive participles, 280, (b), 281, R. 3, 283, 3, 290.

Partitive genitive, 243, 6.
Partitive sense, words used in take no art., 2, 2.

Passive voice, 112-114; paradigm, 112; agent with, R. 3; limitations of, 113; substitutes for, 114; passive of transitive verbs, 113, 1; of intransitive verbs, 113, 2.

Past participle, see "Parti-

'people,' indef. pron., 145,

Periphrastic forms of conjugation, English, 31, R. 3.
Perfect participle, none in Germ., 284, R. 1.

Perfect tense, formation, 25, 1; use, 259; replaced by present, 257, 4.

Personal pronouns, declension, 38; use, 39-42, 44, 6, (b); place of, 45, Rules 3, 4, 294, (c), N., 296, 3, 4; replaced by demonstratives, 143; after gleiden, 48; after fulben, megen, 223, 1, 2, R. 3; omitted with imperative, 269, R. 1.

Persons, before things, 45, Rule 2, 296, 5; names of, how declined, 73, 74, 76, 2-7; article with names of, 73, 1, 2, 76, 2, 5, .78. Place, advs. of, 187, 11.; position in a sentence, 11,

45, Rule 5, 297, 3, and R. 1.

Places, proper names of, 72, 76, 1; article with, 44, 3.

Pluperfect tense, formation,

25, 1; plupf. indicative, use, 260; plupf. subjunctive, used for conditional, 263, 267, 2, and R. 4; to express a wish, 268, 2.

Plural, see "Concord,"
"Number," "Substantives."

Possessive adjs., 43; agreement, 43, 5; replaced by def. art., 44, 6.

Possessive case, rendered in Germ. by the genitive, 3, 243. 4.

Possessive dative, 44, 6, 249.

Possibility, advs. of, 187, VI.; expressed by impf. subj., 268, 5.

Predicate, definition of, 292, 1, 295; place of, 295; factitive pred., 253, 254, 3.

Predicative nominative, 242. Predicative adj., not declined, 14, 100; place of, 18, 20, O. 3, 295, 3, 296, 8; factitive, 254, 3.

Prefixes, of verbs, 208-213, 314; inseparable, 35, R. 6, 109, 204, 207, 208, 209, 212; meaning of, 314; separable, 117, 205-208, 210, 295; separable and inseparable, 208; compound, 206, 2; double, 207; accent of, 204, 205, 3; place of, 117, 295, 3, and N.; subst. prefixes, 315; adj. prefixes, 316.

Prepositions, governing accusative only, 34, 50; dative only, 46, 51; dat. or acc., 65; genitive, 222, 223; contracted with def, art., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.; general remarks on, 224; joined to advs., 224; governing the infin., 224, 2, (b), 276, 277; English preps. and their Germ. equivalents, 225-234; place of, 46, 51, 223, 298, 2; after verbs, etc., 291.

Present participle; see "Participial Constructions, English," and "Participles."

Present tense, endings, in weak verbs, 35, in strong, 107; pres. indicative, 257, 267, R. 5; pres. subj., replaces imperative, 268, 1, 269, and R. 2.

Preterite, see "Imperfect."
Primary Form of strong declension, 70, R. 2.

Principal assertive sentences, construction, 20, 26, 59, N., 293, (b), 294, (b), 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 2, 301, 2, 302, R., 303.

Principal parts of a verb,. 28.

Progression of mutes, 325.
Pronouns, agreement of, 18;
place of, 45, 296, 2-4;
personal, declension, 38;
use of e8, 39; use in address, 40, 47, 49; dative
of, replaces poss. adj., 44,
6, (6); reflexive, 41, 42;
reciprocal, 42; interrogative, 81-83; relative, 9297, place of, 98; possessive, 119; demonstrative,
132-143; indefinite, 145157; remarks on, 162.

Pronunciation, Introduction,

Probability, expressed by future, 261, 2; by future-perfect, 262.

Proper names, declension of, 66, 1, 72-74, 76.

Proportional Clauses; see
"Comparative Clauses."
Purpose, conjs. of, 239, 3,

(b); expressed by zu, 229, (a); by subj. with baß, etc., 268, 3; by infin. with zu or um...zu, 273, R. 1, 276, 1.

Quality, genitive of, 243, 5. Quantity of vowels, pp. 9, 10. Quantity, expressions of, 185.

Quarters of the hour, 184,3,

Questions, dir. ct, construction of, 23, 293, (a), 1, 294, (a), 295, 2, 300; indirect or dependent, 88, 293, (c).

Question-word, begins sentence, 23, O. 2, 293, (a), 1, 294, (a).

Reciprocal pronouns, 42.
Reflexive pronouns, 41, 42, 44, 6, (b), N.; used in reciprocal sense, 42; place of, 294, (c), N.

Reflexive verbs, paradigm of, 41; for passive, 114, (b); use, 214-215; government, 216.

Relative clauses, replace Engl. part., 284, 2, (a); place of, 305, 306, R. 3, and N., R. 4.

Relative pronouns, 92-97; place of, 98, 294, (c), 305; introduce dependent clauses, 98; not omitted in Germ., 96, 7, O.; concord of, 95, 1, (b), 288, 2, N.

Relative superlative, of adjs., 127; of advs., 190, 3.

Roman numerals, how read in Germ., 166, 2, N.

5, plurals in, 77, 5.
5, suffix of advs., 189, 1, 2,
321, 1, N.; suffix in subst.
compounds, 319, 1, N. 2, 3.

*faI, substs. in, declension, 22, 4; gender, 89, 3, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 14. *fam, adj. in, superl. of, 190, 5; adj. suffix, 313, 9. famt. 51, 9.

fchaft, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 15.

ichießen Model, 123. ichlagen Model, 186. ichon, idiomatic use, 195, 6. Script, German, pp. 13-16.

fehr, with absolute superl., 127, 2, 190, 4.

fein, 'to be,' use as auxiliary, 25, 4; conjugation, 52; verbs conjugated with, 53; with past part., 112, R. 5, (b); as impersonal, 217, 220; with dat., 250, (c); with infin., 272, R. 2; omitted in dependent sentences, 287.

feit, prep., 46, 241, 12, (a); conj., 239, 241, 12.

feithem, adv. conj., 237; subord. conj., 239, 241, 12, (c).

sef, substs. in, gender, 89,
 3, (c); subst. suffix, 312,
 14.
 felber, felbft, 42, 3, and R.

felbig, 136, N. felbit; see felber.

Sentences, construction of, 292-306; essential parts of, 292; construction of assertive principal, 20, 26, 59, N., 293, (b), 294, (b), 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 301, 2, 306; of dependent, 32, 33, 98, 293, (c), 294, (c), 295, 2; relative, 98, 305, 306, R. 3 and N., R. 4; interrogative, 23, 88, 293, (a), 1, 293, (c), 294, (a), 295, 2, 300; exclamatory, 293, (b), R. 3;

expressing command or wish, 293, (a), 2; conditional, 59, 293, (a), 3; position of verb in, 293; of subject, 294; of predicate, 295; of objects, etc., 296; of advs., etc., 297; of other members, 298; inverted, 301, N. 1, 2; compound and complex, 202-306.

Separable prefixes, when separated, 117; place of, 295, 3 and N., 303, 4. 'shall,' how rendered in

Germ., 201. Shifting of mutes, 325.

'since,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 12. fingen Model, 144.

Singular, see "Concord,"
"Substantives."

'so,' rendered by e8, 89, 3, 5, after conditional and adverbial clauses, 59, 289, R. 2, 267, R. 3, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 1, 2, 294, (b), R. 2; replaces fold before ein, 139, N. 2; adv. conj., 237.

fo . . . fo, 241, 9. fo ein, followed by wie, 162, 4.

fogar, adv. conj., 287, R. 2. Sohn Model, 21; origin of Umlaut in, 326, R. 2, (a). folch(er), demonstr. pron.,

132, 138; followed by wie, 162, 4; before adjs., 122, 12.

jollen, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 5, 201, 202.

'some,' how rendered in Germ., 2, 2, 150, 152, 155, 168, 173, 177, 180. [onber, 50, 1.

fonbern, 236, R. 1.

fowohl . . . als (auch), 238; 285, R. 6. spinnen Model, 158. sprechen Model, 167.

ff, \$, p. 5; in verbs, 118, R. 2, 128, R. 1, 181, O. 1, 188, R. 3.

ftatt, see anftatt.

oft. subst. suffix, 312, 1.

ftehen, with infin., 272, R. 2. Stem of verbs, 27.

Strong declension; see "Substantives, declension of." Strong conjugation; see

"Verbs, conjugation of."
Subject, definition of, 292; place of, 294; in principal sentences, 20, 59, N.; in direct questions, 23, O. 1; in dependent sentences, 33, N.; inversion of, 301, 2, N. 1, 2; expressed by nom. case, 3, 242, 1; agreement with verb, 285; repetition of, 286.

Subjective clause, 306; relative, 306, R. 3.

Subjective gentive, 243, 2.
Subjunctive Mood, use, 264-268, for conditional, 111, 263, N.; in indirect statements, 87, 265, 266; in indirect questions, 88; in hypothetical periods, 239, R. 1, 267; for imperative, 81, R. 4, 268, 1, 269; expressing a wish, 268, 2; of purpose, 268, 3; after a negative, etc., 268, 4; of possibility, 268, 5; origin of Umlaut in impf. subj., 326, (g).

Substantives, their declension, Maler Model, 16, 17; Sohn do., 21, (a), 22, App. C.; Hunb do., 21, (b), 22, App. E.; Dorf do., 36, 37; Rnabe, Graf, Blume do., 54-57, App. F.; Name, Nachbar, Ohr

do., 60-63, App. G.; with double plurals, 64. App. G.*: Summary and tables, 70: essential parts, 71; anomalous, 66-69; substs. without plural, 66; without sing.. 67; of measure, weight and number, 185; as verb prefixes, 206, 3, 212; irregular compound substs.. 68; appositive subst., 289; derivation, by internal change, 310; by suffixes, 312; by prefixes, 315; composition, 319; see also " Accentuation," under " Compound Substantives." " Foreign Substantives," "Gender."

Suffixes, of verbs, 311; of substs., 312; of adjs., 313.

Superlative degree, of adjs., relative, 127, 1; absolute, 127, 2; of advs., 190, 3-7.

εt, substs. in, gender, 89, 2,
 (δ); subst. suffix, 312, 1.
 εtαt, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (ε).

taufend, 165, 8, and 10, (c). teils . . . teils, 238.

Tense, in indirect statements, 87; in indirect questions.88; auxiliariesof, use, 25, 53; place of with anxiliaries of mood, 199, 3. Tenses, simple, how formed in weak verbs, 80; in strong, 104-107, 110; endings of, in weak verbs, 35; in strong, 107; compound, how formed, 25, 108: construction, 26, 83; sequence of tenses in indirect statements and questions not observed in Germ., 87, 2, 88, 2, 266,

4; of the indicative, how used, 257-262 (see also under the various tenses); of the conditional, 263, N.; the tense in indices statements, 87, 266; in hypothetical periods, 267.
Terminations; see "End-

ings."
'than' after the comparative, 126, 1, 241, 7.

'that,' how rendered in Germ., 140.

'the...the' before comparatives, 126, 4.

'there,' rendered by es, 39, 1, R.; 'there is, there are,' 220.

'they,' indefinite, 145, 146. sthum; see stum.

Time, expressions of, 184; place of, 11, 45, 297, 2, 306, R. 2; advs. of, 187, I.; English participial constructions of, how rendered in Germ., 284, (a); time of day, 184, 3, 285, R. 6, N. 2.

Titles of rank, 49; 76, 5, 6. 'to,' how rendered in Germ., 46, R. 4; 233.

Towns, names of, gender, 80, 3, (c); see also "Places, names of."

Transitive verbs, English, with object unexpressed, rendered by reflexive verbs in Germ., 215, 2; often intrans. in Germ., 250, R. 1, 252, R.

Trigraphs, consonantal, pp.

trog, 223, 16, and R. 2.

≥tum, substs. in, declension,

37; gender, 89, 3, (∂);

subst. suffix, 312, 16.

über, prep., 65; after interjections, 240, 4, (a); after

verbs, etc., 201, 1; prefix, 208; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1.

mu, prep., 34, 184, 3, (c), 226, (a), (b), 227, (b), 1; after verbs, 291, 4; governing an infin. of purpose, 224, 2, (b), 273, 276; prefix, 208.

um fo, before comparatives, 126, 4, 241, 2, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3. [12.

unt ... willen, 223, 22, R. 1, Umlaut, pp. 3, 6, 12, 14; in declension of substs., 17, (a), 21, (a), 22, 36, 70, R. 6, App. A., C.; in subj. mood, 107, O 2; in comparison of adjs., 125, R. 1, in strong verbs, 186, 188, 192, R. 1; in Modal Auxiliaries, 196, R. 1; in derivation, 308, N., 309, 311, 1, 2, 312, 2-4, 8, 11-13,

313, 5; origin, 326. uns, subst. prefix, 315, 4. unb, 236.

unfern, 223, 23.

sung, substs. in, gender, 89,
 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312,
 17.

ungeachtet, prep., 223, 15; conj. 239, 3, (b), 241, 21. units, before tens, 165, 7. 'unless,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 18.

unterf, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

unter, prep., 65; prefix, 208.

mnterbeisen, adv. conj., 237;subord. conj., 239, 3, (δ),241, 15.

unterhalb, 223, 6.

unweit, 223, 24. urz, subst. prefix, 315, 5. sur, substs. in, gender, 89,

Urfprache, 322.

2, (e).

Variative numerals, 182, (c).
1007e, insep. verb prefix, 35, R.
6, 204; meaning, 314, 6.
Verb, place of, 20, 32, 33,
87, 2, 88, 2, 266, R. 2,
267, R. 2, 292, 293, 301;
English periphrastic forms
of, how rendered in Ger.,
31, R. 3; tenses of, 256262, 263, 266 (see also
under the various tenses);
moods of, 256-278 (see

also under the various

moods); concord of, 285;

when omitted, 269, R. 6,

Verbs, stem of, 27; principal

287.

parts of, 28; weak conjugation of, 30, 31; endings of simple tenses, 35; verbs conjugated with fein, 53; neut., of motion, etc., 53; irregular weak, 99 : strong, 103-108, App. L. : beißen Model, 118; bleiben do., 120; fciegen do., 123; fechten do., 124; frieren do., 131; fingen do., 144; fpinnen do., 158; helfen do.,159; fprechen do., 167; effen do., 181; fclagen do., 186; fallen do., 188; table of strong verbs, 192; passive voice, 112-114; reflexive verbs, paradigm of, 41; use, 214-216; impersonal verbs, 217-220; compound verbs, insep., 35, R. 6, 109, 204, 207-209, 211-213; separable, 117. 205 - 208. 210: auxiliaries of tense, 25, 53; irregular strong, 194, 196; auxiliaries of mood,

196-202; verbs with two

nominatives, 242, 2, 3; with genitive, 245; with dative,

250; with accusative, 252,

253; verbs of choosing,

242, N.; of calling, considering, 253; verbs followed by the subjunctive, 205; by the infin. without 31, 271; with 31, 272; prepositions after, 291; derivation of, without change, 308; with internal change, 309; by suffixes, 311; by prefixes, 314.

vermittelft, 223, 9. vermöge, 223, 10.

viel, comparison of, 129; indef. pron., 145; indef. numeral, 168, 176; before adjs., 122, 11, 12.

Vocative, 242, 1.

voll, prefix, sep. and insep., 208; adj., 244.

von, prep., 46, 228, (a), 231, (b), 234; used for genitive, 46, R. 3; with passive voice, 112, R. 3; with names of places, 72, 3, 4; with names of persons, 76, 6; replaces genitive of quality, 243, 5, N.; after partitives, 243, 6, N.; after voll, 244; after verbs, 245, 2

vor, prep., 65, 184, 3, (δ) , 234; after verbs, etc., 291, 5, 11; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (δ) .

vorn, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

Vowels, modified, pp. 3, 6, 12, 14; double, pp. 4, 6, 12, 14; importance of, p. 8, bottom; long and short, pp. 9, 10; see also "Umlaut."

währenb, prep., 75, 2, 228, 17; conj., 239, 3, (b), 241, 13; replaces Engl. participle of time, 284, 1, (a).

warum, **58, 187**, I., (d). warum, **83**, R. 3, N. was, interrog. pron., declension and use, 83; sometimes = 'why,' 83, 6, 162, 3; used for etwas, 149, 1; relative pron., 92, 96; followed by bas, 162, 1; of a number of persons or things, 162, 2; not governed by preps., 83, 3, 96. 7: construction of sentences with, 98, 3.

mas für (ein). 86. 'we,' indef., 146.

Weak conjugation, "Verbs"; declension, see "Substantives," "Adjectives."

weber . . . noch, 238. megen, 75, 1, 223,2, and R.

Weight, expressions of, 185. weil, 239, 3, (b), 241, 17.

welcher, interrog. pron. and adi., 6, 81, 82, 84, 85; in exclamations, 85, 1, 2; relative pron., 92, 94, 95; indefinite pron. and numeral, used for 'some," 145, 155, 180; before adjs., 122, 13.

menia, comparison of, 129; indef. pron., 145; indef. numeral, 168, 176; before adis., 122, 12.

menn. 58, 239, 3, (b), R. 1-4, 267; omission of, 239, R. 2-4, 267, R. 2, 3, 6, N., 293, (a), 3, R. 4, N. 2, (c), R. 2, 294, (b), R.

fcon, 239, 3, (b), and R. 3. N.

menn . . . nicht, 239, 3, (b), 241. 18.

wer, interrog. pron., 81, 83; relative pron., 92, 96,135, (b). N.: followed by bcr. 162, 1; replaced by ber, 306, R. 3, N.; construction of sentences with, 98, 3

merben, pres. and impf. of, 19; conjugated with fein, 53, (a); use as auxiliary of tense, 25, 2; as auxiliary of passive voice, 112, 113; conjugation, 112; as impersonal verb, 217, 2, (c); with dat., 250, (e). 'when,' how rendered in Germ., 58.

'whether,' expressed by mos gen. 200, 3, (c).

' while, whilst,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 15. 'whole,' how rendered in

Germ., 168, 170. miber, prep., 34; prefix, 204.

mie, in comparisons, 126, 3, 241. 6, 8; after fold ein, fo ein. 162, 4; subord. conj., 239, 3, (b); in comparative clauses, 306, R. 4. N.

mieber, prefix, 208, N. 2. wievielfte, ber, 164, 166, 3, N. 2.

'will,' how rendered in Germ., 201.

wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn | Wish, expressed by the Sub- awifden, prep., 65.

junctive, 268, 2; construction of sentences expressing, 293, (a), 2.

wiffen, 196, and N. 1.

mo, 187, II., (c); before preps., replacing interrog. prons., 83, 3, and relative prons., 95, 2, 96, 7.

mohl, comparison of, 190; idiomatic use, 195, 10.

wollen, its conjugation, 196-199: its use, 200, 6, 201.

worben, for geworben, in passive voice, 112, R. 2; when omitted, 112, R. 4.

'you,' how rendered in Ger., 40; indef. pron., 146.

siehn, in compound numerals, 165, 5.

ger=, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 7. = kiq, in numerals, 165, 6,

au, prep., 46, 227, (a), 4, (b), 2. (c), 228, (c), 229, (a), 230, (c), 232, (b), 233, (b), (c), 2, (ii); with Infinitive, 272-277; place of, 109, 117, R. 2; with insep. verbs, 205, 2; followed by als bag or um zu, with verbs of choosing, 242, 3, N., 253; after adjs., 244. querft, 195, 5.

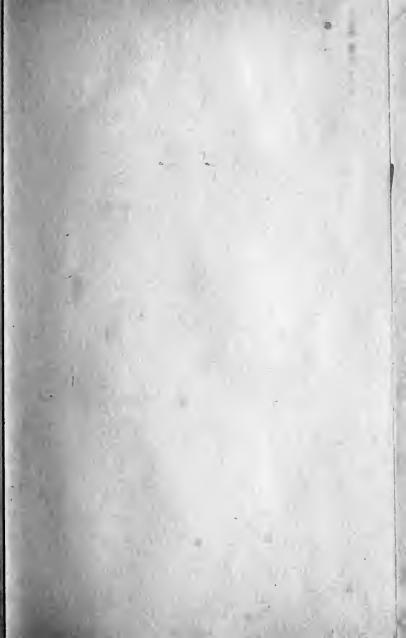
aufolge, 223, 11, R. zunächft, 51, 7.

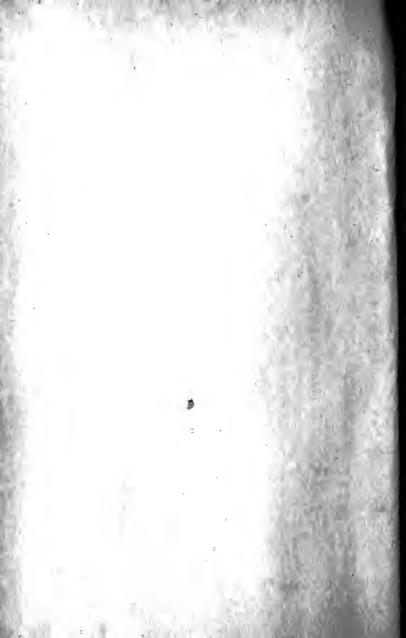
zuwiber, 51. 3. amei, declension of, 165, 2.











BINDING SEL. MAY 13 1968



DTL AT DOWNSVIEW

D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C
39 12 06 04 07 009 5